

teach
yourself

mandarin chinese

goal
all-around confidence

category
language

content

- learn to speak, understand and write chinese
- progress quickly beyond the basics
- explore the language in depth

be where you want to be with **teach yourself**

teach[®]
yourself



also available in a book/CD package

teach
yourself

mandarin chinese

elizabeth scurfield

- Do you want to cover the basics and progress fast?
- Do you want to be confident in a range of situations?
- Do you want to know how Chinese characters work?

Mandarin Chinese starts with the basics but moves at an energetic pace to give you a good level of understanding and speaking Mandarin, and reading and writing the Chinese characters that are used throughout the People's Republic. You will have lots of opportunity to practice the kind of language you will need to be able to communicate with confidence and understand Chinese culture.

Elizabeth Scurfield taught Chinese at the University of Westminster, London.

Why not try ● Mandarin Chinese Conversation
● or visit books.mcgraw-hill.com?

Cover ● ©Bohemian Nomad Picturemakers/Corbis ● Yellow Chinese lanterns

the leader in self-learning with more than 500 titles, covering all subjects
be where you want to be with **teach yourself**



ISBN-13: 978-0-07-143032-6
ISBN-10: 0-07-143032-6



5 1 6 9 5
\$16.95 USA

\$22.95 CAN

9 780071 430326



chinese
elizabeth scurfield .

For over 60 years, more than 50 million people have learnt over 750 subjects the **teach yourself** way, with impressive results.

be where you want to be
with **teach yourself**

For UK order enquiries: please contact Bookpoint Ltd, 130 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4SB. Telephone: +44 (0) 1235 827720. Fax: +44 (0) 1235 400454. Lines are open 09.00–17.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour message answering service. Details about our titles and how to order are available at www.teachyourself.co.uk

For USA order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Customer Services, PO Box 545, Blacklick, OH 43004-0545, USA. Telephone: 1-800-722-4726. Fax: 1-614-755-5645.

For Canada order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Ryerson Ltd, 300 Water St, Whitby, Ontario, L1N 9B6, Canada. Telephone: 905 430 5000. Fax: 905 430 5020.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning – with more than 50 million copies sold worldwide – the **teach yourself** series includes over 500 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, business, computing and education.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data: a catalogue record for this title is available from the British Library.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: on file.

First published in UK 1999 by Hodder Education, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH.

First published in US 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.

This edition published 2003.

The **teach yourself** name is a registered trade mark of Hodder Headline.

Copyright © 1999, 2003 Elizabeth Scurfield

In UK: All rights reserved. Apart from any permitted use under UK copyright law, no part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information, storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited. Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction) may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, of Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London, EC1N 8TS.

In US: All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Typeset by Graphicraft Limited, Hong Kong.

Printed in Great Britain for Hodder Education, a division of Hodder Headline, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH, by Cox & Wyman Ltd, Reading, Berkshire.

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher and the author have no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content will remain relevant, decent or appropriate.

Hodder Headline's policy is to use papers that are natural, renewable and recyclable products and made from wood grown in sustainable forests. The logging and manufacturing processes are expected to conform to the environmental regulations of the country of origin.

Impression number 15 14 13 12 11 10
Year 2010 2009 2008 2007

introduction	the Chinese language, romanization, general introduction to sounds and tones, working through the book.	x
list of abbreviations		xxiii
01	making friends (i) saying <i>hello</i> , observing basic courtesies, saying <i>please</i> and <i>thank you</i> , the order of names in Chinese.	1
02	making friends (ii) making simple introductions, exchanging greetings, addressing people correctly, making simple apologies, measure words, numbers 0–99.	6
03	making friends (iii) asking someone if they have children, asking how old the children are, asking if someone is married or has a boyfriend/girlfriend, inviting someone to your home, telling the time, question words and their position in the sentence.	13
04	at the Lis' (i) saying where you come from and what nationality you are, Chinese equivalents	25

- of foreign names, making appropriate remarks and responses during a meal. **37**
- 05 at the Lis' (ii)**
- describing the rooms in an apartment/house, thanking your hosts for their hospitality and understanding their responses, asking questions in the form of alternatives, expressing direction towards or away from the speaker, auxiliary verbs.
- 06 in the house** **51**
- describing the appearance of a house and garden in simple terms, describing the furniture and appliances in each room, describing the most common items in each room.
- 07 my family** **57**
- talking about yourself and your family, saying how old you are, comparing and contrasting.
- 08 my home** **68**
- describing your living conditions, more about directional endings, using the conjunctions *before*, *when* and *after*, saying where places and things are.
- 09 hotels** **80**
- breakfast vocabulary for staying in a Chinese hotel, asking people if they have ever done something, using question words in a non-question way.
- 10 weather, dates and seasons** **93**
- the weather and seasons in Beijing, what Chinese people do when the weather is fine or when it is freezing, saying that something is happening, the months of the year, the days of the week, expressing the duration of something.
- 11 in the restaurant** **108**
- guānxi** in China, expressing approximate numbers, saying *first*, *second*, *third*, etc., the difference between **cái** and **jiù**.

12	grammar review	122
	common measure words, denominations of money, time words and expressions, resultative verbs, directional endings or complements, auxiliary verbs, conjugations.	
13	an introduction to Chinese characters	132
	the earliest characters, the evolution of characters, how characters are composed, radicals or significs, how Chinese children learn to write characters, some basic rules for writing characters, recognizing some useful public notices and signs.	
14	shopping	149
	asking for things in shops, asking the price, Chinese money, the stroke order of useful Chinese characters and their radicals.	
15	buying tickets (i)	160
	buying tickets for entertainments, giving the date, more about the stroke order of characters, China's main dynasties.	
16	buying tickets (ii)	168
	telephone numbers, describing the characters in your Chinese name, saying something is going to happen soon, more about radicals.	
17	directions and transport	177
	famous places of interest in and around Tiananmen Square, asking for and understanding directions, the points of the compass, expressing the distance between two points, place words, more about the stroke order of difficult characters.	
18	at the post office	189
	buying stamps, sending letters and parcels, moving the direct object in front of the verb using bǎ , more about the stroke order of difficult characters.	

19	at the railway station	200
	buying railway tickets, Chinese trains, expressing similarities, expressing percentages and fractions, Chinese festivals, more about foreign names expressed in Chinese.	
20	change money?	214
	changing money, opening an account in China, exchange rates, emphasizing that something has to be done.	
21	traveller's notes	225
	expressing two actions going on simultaneously, Chinese proverbs, abbreviations in Chinese, similarities and dissimilarities, expressing the passive, when to use chuān and when to use dài for <i>to wear</i> , yīn and yáng .	
22	farewell to all that!	241
	making a toast, giving presents and making appropriate remarks when receiving them, exclamations, the Chinese zodiac, more about Chinese proverbs, classical Chinese poetry.	
	key to the exercises	259
	Chinese–English vocabulary	284
	English–Chinese vocabulary	325
	character texts for chapters 1–5 and 7–11	343
	index	354

Acknowledgements

My grateful thanks to all those who with their encouragement, criticism and help in all forms (from typing to welcome cups of tea) have made this publication possible.

My special thanks to Paula Jervis who willingly gave hours of her expertise on the text and recording and without whose hard work the Vocabularies would never have appeared.

About the author

Elizabeth Scurfield graduated with a First Class Honours degree in Chinese from the School of Oriental and African Studies in London. She has over 30 years' experience of teaching Chinese to beginners successfully. She is former Chair of the Department of Modern Languages at the University of Westminster in London.

The first question you may ask is Why learn Chinese? The answers could vary enormously based on your particular interests but I offer a few tentative suggestions here. The Chinese are the largest single ethnic grouping in the world, so a *form* of Chinese is spoken by more people than any other language. Chinese is also the world's oldest language, its written records stretching back about 3500 years. Surely a good reason for more people to learn it? Most people imagine Chinese must be a very difficult language to learn. However, after shedding some of the possible preconceptions about language that you may have, you may well find that spoken Chinese is not as difficult as you had thought – you may even find it comparatively easy! The written language is a different kettle of fish entirely, being made up of individual characters which do have to be memorized but hopefully Chapter 13 will whet your appetite and make you eager for more.

China's cultural and philosophical heritage is enormous, a rich storehouse of knowledge and wisdom waiting to be tapped and although it would be foolish to pretend that by working through this book you will have access to very much of it in the original, it will, at the very least, have given you the possibility of seeing a little into that inscrutable Oriental mind and of making interesting and valuable comparisons with your own culture and way of thinking. I have found these reasons stimulating enough to go on studying Chinese for over 30 years and propose to go on doing so for at least another 30 or so! The Chinese have a saying:

Xué dào lǎo, huó dào lǎo, hái yǒu sānfēn xué bu dào.

Study reach old, live reach old, still have three-tenths study not reach.

This is certainly true as far as Chinese is concerned, but the rewards are great. It will take time, but if you can keep your mind open you will be surprised at the results.

Zhù nǐ xuéxí yúkuài!

Wish you study happy!

You will find out what the 'accents' over the words mean on pp. xiii and xvi-xx.

The Chinese language

Some of you will have heard of the term 'Mandarin' or 'Mandarin Chinese' which was how the West referred to the language spoken by the officials or 'mandarins' at the Imperial Court. It was then broadened to refer to the northern dialect, a version of which is spoken by over 70% of the Chinese or Han people and has become the *lingua franca* for the whole of China. This national language is known in China as *putonghua* 'common speech' which is now sometimes referred to in the West as Modern Standard Chinese although the term Mandarin still lingers on. Beijing (Peking) pronunciation is taken as the standard but there are many regional variations, some not easy to cope with. Try and find someone who claims to have a fairly standard accent to practise with in the first instance and listen hard to the recording which is available with this book. *Putonghua* is taught in schools and used in universities and colleges all over China. The majority of TV and radio programmes as well as films for the cinema are also made in *putonghua*. This means that hopefully you will be understood all over China although you will sometimes have difficulty in understanding non-standard accents. Chinese have this problem too!

Putonghua is known as *huayu* in overseas Chinese communities and as *guoyu* 'national language' in Taiwan, but it is all the same language. There are many different dialects in Chinese, some of which are as different from one another as say English is from French, although they all have the same written language. The Cantonese dialect *guangdonghua* is spoken in Canton, Hong Kong and the New Territories and by many of the Chinese you will find in Britain. Many more Hong Kong Chinese are now learning *putonghua* so this is the one to go for!

Romanization

The written language does not have a phonetic alphabet but various systems have been devised for transcribing Chinese sounds into the Latin script. The standard form in use today is known as *pinyin* (literally 'spell sound') which was adopted as the official system of the People's Republic of China in 1958. It has now been almost universally adopted in the West for transliterating Chinese personal and place names, replacing the Wade-Giles system which had been used previously. A few examples using the two different systems are given below.

<i>Pinyin</i>	<i>Wade-Giles</i> (and earlier)
Deng Xiaoping	Teng Hsiao-p'ing
Mao Zedong	Mao Tse-tung
Beijing	Peking
Guangzhou	Kwangchow (Canton)
Tianjin	Tientsin

Pinyin is used as a tool to teach the correct pronunciation of the Chinese language to children starting elementary school and to enable them to write little essays in Chinese before they have mastered enough characters. It is taught for a relatively short time in the north where *putonghua* is widely spoken as a first language but for a longer period in the south where many children speak a different dialect at home. Difficult characters in children's books often have the *pinyin* in brackets next to them as an aid to learning. Many street signs in big cities are written in *pinyin* as well as characters, which can be quite useful when you are trying to find your way around!

Mao Zedong once expressed the aim of eventually turning the Chinese written language into an alphabetic system of writing but this idea seems to have been quietly dropped. Aesthetically and visually pleasing, Chinese characters are too much part of the Chinese national heritage to disappear without a very long struggle, if ever.

The Chinese language is essentially still based on the character, which is *per se* monosyllabic (one character representing one idea) so the single-syllable morpheme is the basic unit in Chinese. As a result, there is still discussion in China as to what units of speech should be written together in *pinyin*. In general I have tried to keep to the system adopted by the Beijing Language

[and Culture] University for its textbooks, using the *Xiandai Hanyu Cidian* (Modern Chinese Dictionary) produced by the Chinese Academy of Social Sciences as a definitive reference. Thus 'syllables' are written separately except where they are seen as being one idea. I have, however, kept verb-objects separate for clarity.

Sounds and tones: general introduction

There are just over 400 basic monosyllables in Chinese which seems an incredibly small number and must be the result of sound-simplification over a few thousand years. It is not surprising therefore that the language has so many homophones, but the difficulty is alleviated somewhat by the fact that Chinese is a tonal language. Tones are obviously one way of coping with this phonetic poverty. There are four tones in *putonghua*, so by multiplying 400 by four we get a total of approximately 1600 separate items, although not all basic sounds exist in all four tones. The other way is by combining two syllables with a similar meaning into one 'word'. For example, *ài* and *qíng* mean 'love' and 'feelings' respectively and could be confused with other 'words' if used separately, but together they can only mean 'love' *àiqíng*. This makes communication considerably easier all round.

What we mean by 'syllable' in Chinese is usually composed of an initial and a final. The initial, if there is one, is a consonant at the beginning of the syllable and the final is the rest of the syllable, e.g. *hang* in which *h* is the initial and *ang* is the final.

Initials

Modern Chinese has 21 initials, 23 if you count 'w' and 'y' which some people regard as semi-vowels. There is also a sound 'ng' which only occurs at the end of a syllable as in English. These include six pairs (i.e. 12 initials of which six are aspirated and six are not). These 12 are all voiceless. (Aspirated means that the air is puffed out strongly when you make these sounds.) If you hold a piece of paper in front of your mouth it should move when you make an aspirated sound, but not when you make an unaspirated one. Voiceless means that the vocal chords do not vibrate. The six pairs are listed on the next page.

Unaspirated	Aspirated	Description (all voiceless)
'b' like b in <i>bore</i>	'p' like p in <i>poor</i>	labial plosive
'd' like d in <i>door</i>	't' like t in <i>tore</i>	alveolar plosive
'g' like g in <i>guard</i>	'k' like c in <i>card</i>	velar plosive
'z' like ds in <i>adds</i>	'c' like ts in <i>its</i>	blade-alveolar affricate
'zh' like j in <i>jelly</i>	'ch' like ch in <i>chilly</i>	blade-palatal (or retroflex) affricate <i>The tongue must be curled back</i>
'j' like g in <i>genius</i>	'q' like ch in <i>chew</i>	front-palatal affricate <i>Tongue flat, corners of lips drawn back as far as possible</i>

Other small groups could be:

'm' like m in <i>me</i> 'n' like n in <i>need</i> 'ng' like ng in <i>sing</i>	voiced, labial, nasal voiced, alveolar, nasal voiced, velar, nasal
'sh' like sh in <i>shy</i> 'r' like r in <i>ray</i>	voiceless blade-alveolar fricative <i>The tongue must be curled back</i> voiced, blade-palatal fricative <i>The tongue must be curled back with only slight friction</i>
's' like s in <i>say</i> 'x' like sh in <i>sheet</i>	voiceless blade-alveolar fricative <i>Tongue flat, corners of lips drawn back</i> voiceless, palatal fricative <i>Tongue flat, corners of lips drawn back as far as possible</i>
'f' like f in <i>fan</i> 'h' like ch in <i>loch</i> 'l' like l in <i>lie</i>	voiceless labio-dental fricative voiceless velar fricative <i>Arch the back of the tongue towards the roof of the mouth</i> voiced alveolar lateral
'w' like w in <i>way</i> 'y' like y in <i>yell</i>	voiced labial-velar approximant voiced palatal approximant

- i 'c', 'q' and 'x' bear little resemblance to Western alphabetic values so take particular care with them.
- ii Pay attention to the retroflexes 'zh', 'ch', 'sh' and 'r' which are made with the tongue curled back. Southern Chinese have difficulty with them too!

The above examples are only approximate equivalents. Purchase of the accompanying recording is strongly recommended.

Difficult initials

▶ 'z', 'c', 's' as in 'za', 'ca', 'sa'	'zh', 'ch' as in 'zhu', 'chu'
'j', 'q', 'x' as in 'jian', 'qian', 'xian'	'sh', 'r' as in 'she', 're', 'he'

▶ 'a' like a in father 'ai' like i in bite 'ao' like ow in cow 'an' like an in man 'ang' like ang in bang	'o' like ore in more 'ou' like o in go 'ong' like ung in Jung
'e' like ur in fur 'ei' like ay in play 'en' like un in under 'eng' like ung in dung	'u' like oo in moo 'ua' like ua in suave 'uo' like war in war 'uai' like wi in swipe 'ui' like weigh in weigh 'uan' like wan in wangle 'un' like won in wondrous 'uang' like w-ong in wrong without the 'r' (very approximate)
'i' (after z, c, s, zh, ch, sh and r only) like er in wonder 'i' like ea in tea 'ia' like ja in German ja 'iao' like eow in meow 'ie' like ie in French Pierre 'iu' like yo in yo-yo 'ian' like yen in yen 'in' like in in bin 'iang' like yang in yang 'ing' like ing in ring 'iong' like Jung in Jung (the psycho-analyst)	'ü' like eu in pneumonia 'üe' like eu of pneumatic plus air said quickly 'üan' like eu of pneumatic plus end said quickly 'ün' like eu of pneumatic plus pun said quickly
('y' replaces 'i' at the beginning of syllables if there is no initial consonant)	(Written as <i>yu</i> , <i>yue</i> , <i>yan</i> and <i>yun</i> as complete syllables)
	<i>er</i> as in <i>err</i> making the 'r' retroflex

Finals

There are 36 finals in Chinese. A final is a simple or compound vowel or a vowel plus a nasal consonant. A few 'syllables' may have no initial consonant but every one has to have a vowel. The tables above should be of some assistance in guiding you, although the recording is essential if you are to attempt more than an approximate pronunciation of the sounds.

- i The '-i' in *zi, ci, si, zhi, chi, shi* and *ri* is quite different from the '-i' with all the other consonants which is a long '-i'. This 'i' is more or less only there for cosmetic reasons because no syllable can occur without a vowel. Say the consonant and 'sit on it' and you have the sound.
- ii 'e' is made by dropping the jaw straight down. Get hold of your jaw, pull it down and make the sound!
- iii 'a', 'i', 'o', 'u' and 'ü' – the degree to which the mouth is opened gets narrower and narrower as the lips get rounder and rounder. (Look in a mirror!)
- iv 'ang', 'eng', 'ong' are nasalized vowels. The mouth aperture gets narrower, the lips rounder. Hold your nose as you practise these sounds. You should be able to feel the vibration!
- v '-ian' is pronounced as '-ien'.
- vi 'ü' occurs only with the consonants 'n', 'l', 'j', 'q' and 'x'. As 'j', 'q' and 'x' cannot occur as *j+u*, *q+u* or *x+u*, the Chinese in their wisdom have seen fit to omit the umlaut (¨) over the 'u' in *ju, qu* and *xu*! *N* and *l*, however, occur as both *nu* and *nü*, *lu* and *lü* so the umlaut has been retained.
- vii The '-r' suffix may be added to some words e.g. *bian* → *bianr*, *wan* → *wanr*, *hai* → *hair*, *tian* → *tianr* and is used extensively in the Beijing dialect. Normal 'spelling' practice is to add the '-r' but you can choose whether or not to say it. I have sometimes used it so that you can become familiar with it.

Tones

The tone is the variation of pitch whether it be rising, falling or continuing. In speech we move smoothly from one tone to another, not in leaps and bounds. Every syllable in Chinese has its own definite tone and so tones are as important as vowels and consonants in forming syllables. *Putonghua* has four distinct tones so almost every basic monosyllable can be rendered in four different ways. These four tones all fall within your natural voice range, so some people speak Chinese at a higher or lower pitch than others because their voices are naturally higher or

lower. You don't have to have a particular type of voice to speak Chinese. Now to the four tones themselves.

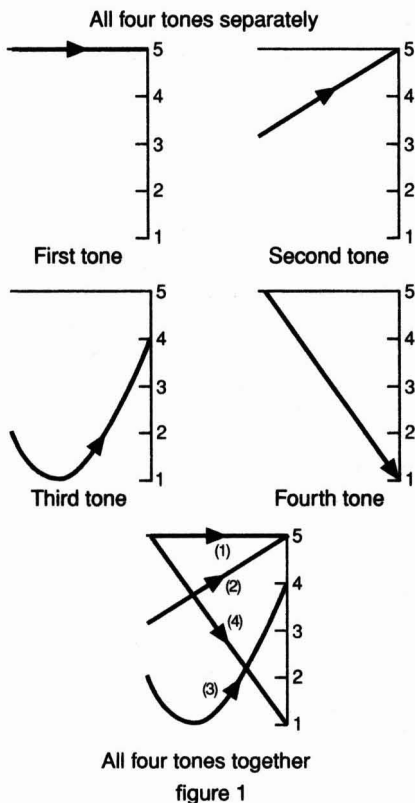
The first tone is a high, level tone and is represented as $\bar{\quad}$. The tonemark is placed over the vowel (if there is only one vowel) e.g. *zhōng* 'middle' or on the main vowel of a syllable where there are two or three vowels, e.g. *gāo* 'tall', but *tiē* 'to stick'.

The second tone is a high, rising tone and is represented by the tonemark $\acute{\quad}$, e.g. *guó* 'country'.

The third tone is a falling and rising tone. It descends from below the middle of the voice range to nearly the bottom and then rises to a point somewhere near the top. It is represented by the tonemark $\check{\quad}$, e.g. *jiǎn* 'to cut'.

The fourth tone is a falling tone. It falls from high to low and is represented by the tonemark $\grave{\quad}$, e.g. *zhù* 'to live'.

Figure 1 may help to make this clearer:



The common problems that occur are:

- a pitching the first tone too high,
- b getting the second and fourth tones confused,
- c getting down on the third tone but not being able to get up again.

Below are the solutions and how to practise the tones (you may need a mirror):

First tone: Pitch it where *you* feel comfortable. Say 'oo' as in 'zoo' and keep going for as long as you can. You should be able to keep it up for maybe half a minute. When you have got used to that, change to another vowel sound and practise that in the same way and so on.

Second tone: Raise your eyebrows every time you attempt a second tone until you get used to it. This is infallible!

Third tone: Drop your chin onto your neck and raise it again. Then practise the sound doing the movement at the same time.

Fourth tone: Stamp your foot gently and then accompany this action with the relevant sound.

Try saying two third tones together. Difficult isn't it? When this happens, the first one is said as a second tone but it is still marked as a third in the text, otherwise you may think that the syllable in question is always a second tone, which it is not: *Nǐ hǎo* is said as *Ní hǎo* 'How are you?' If *three* third tones occur together, the first two are said as second tones: *Wǒ yě hǎo* is said as *Wó yé hǎo* 'I'm OK too'.

Bù (不) is *fourth* tone but it becomes second before another fourth tone. As this is a straightforward rule I have marked *bu* as second tone when it occurs before a fourth in the text.

Yī (一) is first tone as an ordinary number: *yī* 'one', *shíyī* 'eleven', *yīyuè* 'January' but when it precedes other syllables it is fourth tone before first, second or third tones and becomes second tone before another fourth tone: *Yìxiē* 'some', *yìqǐ* 'together', *yìlù* 'all the way'. It has been so indicated in the text. (Many dictionaries always list *bu* and *yi* as fourth tone and first tone respectively.)

Note that in the phrase *yí ge rén* 'one measure word person' the *ge* is said without a tone, although it is actually fourth, but it still carries enough weight to change the *yi* into a second tone.

Neutral tone: some syllables in Chinese are toneless or occur in the neutral tone.

- i Particles are always in the neutral tone.
- ii The second half of a reduplicated word is often in the neutral tone: *gēge* 'elder brother', *māma* 'mum', *bàba* 'dad', *mèimei* 'younger sister'.
- iii Syllables such as *zi* that only have a 'fill-in' function (i.e. to make the word disyllabic) are toneless: *bēizi* 'cup', *bèizi* 'duvet', *zhuōzi* 'table', *yǐzi* 'chair'.
- iv The second syllable in compound words is sometimes toneless and is so indicated in the text. In another context it may have a full tone. Some people may pronounce certain words with a tone, some without, as in the word *dōngbiān* 'east side' which may also be pronounced as *dōngbian* particularly when 'r' is added: *dōngbian(r)*.

In actual speech, tones are rarely given their full value but they have to be learnt as if they were. Stress and intonation are also very important but this is best learnt by imitating the speakers on the recording as closely as possible without thinking too much about individual tones, and by listening to any Chinese native speaker. Intonation does not *remove* tones, it only modifies them. Learn the tone which goes with a word and as you listen and speak more you will hopefully find that you increasingly pick up the correct tones and intonation.

Just as a final word on tones, it's amazing how much most Chinese understand even if your tones are largely wrong so don't give up just because you think you haven't got the right ear! The Chinese love punning so I expect they enjoy lots of jokes at our expense, but does it really matter? Tones come with practice, listening and imitating – don't try too hard with them.

The following ten sounds, each written in the four different tones and therefore represented by four different characters, should serve to illustrate some of the points I have been making.

四声 (Four tones)

1 一 <i>yī</i> (one)	姨 <i>yí</i> (aunt)	椅 <i>yǐ</i> (chair)	亿 <i>yì</i> (hundred million)
2 屋 <i>wū</i> (house)	无 <i>wú</i> (none)	五 <i>wǔ</i> (five)	雾 <i>wù</i> (fog)
3 烟 <i>yān</i> (cigarette)	盐 <i>yán</i> (salt)	眼 <i>yǎn</i> (eye)	燕 <i>yàn</i> (swallow)
4 妈 <i>mā</i> (mother)	麻 <i>má</i> (hemp)	马 <i>mǎ</i> (horse)	骂 <i>mà</i> (scold)
5 八 <i>bā</i> (eight)	拔 <i>bá</i> (to pull up)	把 <i>bǎ</i> (to hold)	爸 <i>bà</i> (father)
6 靴 <i>xuē</i> (boot)	学 <i>xué</i> (study)	雪 <i>xuě</i> (snow)	血 <i>xuè</i> (blood)
7 汤 <i>tāng</i> (soup)	糖 <i>táng</i> (sugar)	躺 <i>tǎng</i> (to lie down)	烫 <i>tàng</i> (scalding hot)
8 腰 <i>yāo</i> (waist)	摇 <i>yáo</i> (shake)	咬 <i>yǎo</i> (to bite)	药 <i>yào</i> (medicines)
9 枪 <i>qiāng</i> (gun)	墙 <i>qiáng</i> (wall)	抢 <i>qiǎng</i> (to rob)	呛 <i>qiàng</i> (irritate the throat)
10 书 <i>shū</i> (book)	熟 <i>shú</i> (ripe)	鼠 <i>shǔ</i> (a rat)	树 <i>shù</i> (tree)

Working through the book

A few sentences introduce the text of each chapter. By Chapter 20 this introduction is also written in Chinese. Almost all the texts are dialogues which allow scope for good, colloquial Chinese to be used, but the continuous passages used in

Chapters 7–10 mean that a great deal of useful vocabulary can be introduced in a fairly natural way.

Chapters 1–5 are in *pinyin* romanization with a literal translation directly underneath to enable you to see how the ‘nuts and bolts’ of the language work. There is an idiomatic translation on the right.

Chapter 6 shows many of the objects to be found in a house and lists the vocabulary for them. This can be used for reference at a later stage.

Chapters 7–10 are in *pinyin* with an English translation directly underneath. The beginning and end of each sentence in Chinese and English is indicated with a ‘/’ to enable you to mentally ‘line up’ the two more easily.

Chapter 11 has the dialogue in *pinyin* with an English translation following. This will give you a real chance to see how much you have learnt without referring to the English as soon as you hit a problem!

Chapter 12 is a small reference grammar, expanding on a few of the points referred to in the chapters themselves. Some of them are presented in tabular form for ease of reference.

Chapter 13 gives an introduction to Chinese characters, their background and how to write them, with many useful examples.

The characters used in this book are always in the simplified script. Simplified characters are used in the People’s Republic of China, Singapore and increasingly in overseas Chinese communities. They are commonly taught to foreign students learning Chinese. Full-form characters are used in Taiwan and Hong Kong (although this may change in the future in the case of Hong Kong).

Chapters 14–18 are in characters with the *pinyin* romanization underneath. The vocabularies show all the new characters used in that chapter even if they have appeared in *pinyin* in previous chapters. In addition the vocabularies of 14 and 15 show the radicals or significs of all the characters introduced in that particular chapter. 14–18 also contain tables showing the stroke order of Chinese characters.

Chapters 19–22 have the character text in a block followed by the *pinyin* also in a block. You can decide to work in *pinyin* or characters or both.

Some of you may not want to get too involved in the learning and writing of characters, so I have made it possible to work through the entire book almost solely in *pinyin*, but do still read the introductory chapter on characters (Chapter 13) to understand how they work, as this is essential background knowledge as well as good fun. Conversely, those who are particularly interested in characters can go back to Chapters 1–11 and write out the texts in Chinese characters for extra practice. You will find the character texts for Chapters 1–5 and 7–11 at the back of the book, pp.343–53.

Within each chapter, the text appears first followed by the vocabulary in the order in which it appears. In the vocabularies I have sometimes split up a word by means of a dash to show how the different parts fit together but have kept to the orthodox system in the text, grammar points and exercises. The grammar section deals with the new grammar points, also in the order in which they appear in the text. Any exercise relating to a particular grammar point follows on directly after that grammar point. Each chapter also contains at least one item of interest about the Chinese way of life (i). It should be noted, however, that China is changing so fast that some situations and any prices or figures and percentages that occur in the book should not be taken as accurate.

At the end of each chapter are exercises of a more general kind. Both these and the information passages often contain useful supplementary vocabulary. The new words in the exercises which do not appear in the vocabulary proper of a subsequent chapter *are* included in the Vocabularies at the back of the book, but without a chapter number. This is to avoid confusion with the new words which occur in the texts. (It was impossible to include *all* supplementary vocabulary for reasons of space.)

A Key to the Exercises precedes the Chinese (*pinyin*)–English Vocabulary and the English–Chinese (*pinyin*) Vocabulary which give all the vocabulary items (*pinyin* and English) which have occurred in the texts in alphabetical order. Note that in the English–Chinese (*pinyin*) Vocabulary, entries beginning with ‘be’ have been listed under the second item for ease of reference so that ‘be willing’ for instance will be found under ‘willing’, ‘to be engaged’ under ‘engaged’ and so on. This also applies to similar entries such as ‘feel jealous’ which are glossed under ‘jealous’. Do remember that variations are possible in some of the answers to the exercises so don’t assume you’re always

wrong. Bear in mind too that the exercises are there to help you to learn as well as to practise what you have learnt, so not all the answers will be immediately obvious.

A final note regarding Chinese grammar. Over 30 years of experience have taught me that I should never be too categorical as far as Chinese grammar is concerned and always to preface remarks with 'nearly', 'always', 'almost invariably', etc. If I have forgotten to do so at any point in this book please regard it as said. *Putonghua* is still developing as a language so that even Chinese linguistics experts may, for example, hold a three-day meeting to discuss 'le'. It is as exciting to be in on this as it is to be learning a language with its roots 3500 years in the past – with Chinese you have both!

List of abbreviations

adj.	adjective	n	noun
adv.	adverb	N	proper name
aux. v.	auxiliary verb	num.	numeral
CDE	compound	o	object
	directional ending	pp	pronoun plural
coll.	colloquial	ps	pronoun singular
conj.	conjunction	PW	place-word
DE	directional ending	prep.	preposition
dem. adj.	demonstrative	QW	question word
	adjective	RV	resultative verb
dem. p.	demonstrative	RVE	resultative verb
	pronoun		ending
interj.	interjection	s	subject
MW	measure word	TW	time word
neg.	negative	v	verb
		v-o	verb-object

Note: I have chosen what I feel to be the most helpful grammatical descriptions. Other people may well use another term for auxiliary verb, resultative verb and so on.

01

making friends (i)

In this chapter you will learn

- how to say *hello*
- how to observe basic courtesies
- how to say *please* and *thank you*
- the order of names in Chinese

▶ Mr King (*Wáng xiānsheng*) has come to China to teach English at Beijing University. Mr Li (*Lǐ xiānsheng*) is a friend and colleague of Mr King's Chinese teacher in Britain. The meeting takes place in Mr Li's office.

- | | | |
|-------------|---|---|
| Lǐ | <i>Wáng xiānsheng, nǐ hǎo!</i>
King/first-born/you/good/ | How do you do, Mr King. |
| Wáng | <i>Lǐ xiānsheng, nǐ hǎo!</i>
Li/first-born/you/good/ | How do you do, Mr Li. |
| Lǐ | <i>Qǐng zuò.</i>
Invite/sit/ | Please, sit down. |
| Wáng | <i>Xièxie.</i>
Thank/ | Thank you. |
| Lǐ | <i>Qǐng hē kāfēi.</i>
Invite/drink/coffee/ | Have some coffee. |
| Wáng | <i>Xièxie, wǒ bù hē kāfēi.</i>
Thank/I/not/drink/coffee/ | No thanks, I don't drink coffee. |
| Lǐ | <i>Nàme, Zhōngguó chá</i>
So/middle country/tea/
<i>xíng bu xíng?</i>
be OK/not/be OK/ | Would you like some China tea then? |
| Wáng | <i>Xíng, xièxie nǐ! Wǒ hěn</i>
Be OK/thank/you/I/very/
<i>xǐhuan hē Zhōngguó chá.</i>
like/drink/middle country/tea/ | Yes, thank you, I'm very fond of China tea. |

xiānsheng (n)	<i>Mr, gentleman</i>
nǐ (ps)	<i>you</i>
hǎo (adj.)	<i>good</i>
qǐng (v)	<i>to invite</i>
zuò (v)	<i>to sit</i>
hē (v)	<i>to drink</i>
kāfēi (n)	<i>coffee</i>
xièxie (v)	<i>to thank</i>
wǒ (ps)	<i>I, me</i>
bù (neg.)	<i>not</i>
nàme	<i>in that case, so</i>
Zhōngguó (N)	<i>China</i>
chá (n)	<i>tea</i>
xíng (v)	<i>to be all right</i>
hěn (adv.)	<i>very</i>
xǐhuan (v)	<i>to like</i>

Grammar

1 Names

In Chinese, names always appear in the following order: surname, given name (Christian name), title (when used), e.g. *Máo Zédōng tóngzhì*, where *Máo* is the surname, *Zédōng* the given name and *tóngzhì* 'comrade'.

2 *Nǐ hǎo*

Some Chinese adjectives can also function as verbs so *hǎo* means 'to be good' as well as 'good'. (Some people call such adjectives stative verbs.) Thus no separate verb for 'to be' is used. Note word order in '*Wáng xiānsheng, nǐ hǎo*'. Mr King comes first in Chinese.

3 Use of *qǐng*

Qǐng means 'to invite or to request somebody to do something'. Do not think of it as 'please' as this will create problems with word order later on. Note also that Chinese verbs are invariable, the same form is used throughout.

4 Negation with *bù*

With one exception (the verb 'to have' *yǒu*), all verbs are negated by putting *bù* in front of them.

5 Questions '*xíng bu xíng?*'

One common way of asking a question in Chinese is to put the positive and negative forms of the verb together in that order: *Xíng bu xíng?* 'Is it all right (or not)?' The answer is not 'yes' or 'no' but either the positive form of the verb, in this case *xíng* or the negative form, i.e. *bù xíng*. (This construction is often referred to as the choice-type question form.) Note that the second half of the question, i.e. *bù* plus the verb, is sometimes written without tones as it is normally said unstressed in everyday speech. I have followed this convention at times to familiarize you with it.

6 Position of adverbs

Most adverbs in Chinese precede the verb, e.g. 'I like you very much' is *Wǒ hěn xǐhuan nǐ*.

7 Tone of *bù*

Bù is normally fourth tone (ˋ) but changes to second tone (ˊ) when followed by another fourth tone, e.g. *bú zuò* not *bù zuò*. Also note that in *Xíng bu xíng?*, *bu* is toneless.

Exercise 1.1

Make the following sentences negative:

Wǒ hē kāfēi → *Wǒ bù hē kāfēi*. (Check the tone-mark on *bu* is correct).

- 1 *Wǒ zuò*.
- 2 *Nǐ hǎo*.
- 3 *Wǒ hē chá*.
- 4 *Nǐ xǐhuan Zhōngguó*.
- 5 *Lǐ xiānsheng xièxie wǒ*.
- 6 *Wáng xiānsheng qǐng nǐ hē Zhōngguó chá*.

Exercise 1.2

Make the following statements into questions and then answer them first in the positive and then in the negative:

Nǐ hē chá. → *Nǐ hē bu hē chá?* → *Wǒ hē chá*.
Wǒ bù hē chá.

- 1 *Wǒ xǐhuan hē kāfēi*.
- 2 *Nǐ xièxie wǒ*.
- 3 *Wáng xiānsheng qǐng wǒ zuò*.
- 4 *Lǐ xiānsheng xǐhuan hē shuǐ* (water).

Exercise 1.3

Translate into colloquial English:

- 1 *Wáng xiānsheng qǐng wǒ hē Zhōngguó chá*.
- 2 *Lǐ xiānsheng hěn bù xǐhuan Wáng xiānsheng*.
- 3 *Wáng xiānsheng yě* (also) *bù hěn xǐhuan Lǐ xiānsheng*.
- 4 *Nǐ bú xièxie wǒ, nàme wǒ yě bú xièxie nǐ*.

Exercise 1.4

Translate into Chinese:

- 1 How do you do, Mr King. Please sit down.
- 2 I don't drink tea.

- 3 In that case, will coffee do?
- 4 Thank you, coffee would be marvellous.
- 5 I like you very much.
- 6 Please have [some]* China tea.
- 7 He (*tā*) doesn't like me either. (Use *yě*.)

* English words in square brackets should *not* be translated into Chinese.

i On meeting people

On meeting somebody for the first time on a formal occasion, the Chinese will usually shake hands and incline the head a little at the same time in greeting. This will probably be accompanied by such questions as *Nín guìxìng?* 'What is your surname?' (*Lit.* you [polite form] expensive surname) or *Qǐng wèn dànmíng?* 'May I ask your (famous) name?' or *Jiǔyǎng, jiǔyǎng.* 'I'm very pleased to meet you' (*Lit.* long time raise head looking for you to come).

In less formal situations, an older person may pat a younger one on the shoulder, close friends of the same sex may hug each other and pat each other on the back a few times and say for instance, *Nǐ hái huózhe?* 'You're still alive!' or *Shénme fēng bǎ nǐ chuī lái?* 'What wind blew you here?'. Secondary school students still stand up when the teacher comes in and chorus out *Lǎoshī hǎo!* 'How do you do teacher' (*Lit.* teacher good!) and the teacher will normally answer *Tóngxuémen hǎo!* 'How do you do students' (*Lit.* fellow students good).

Hopefully this will give you a few guidelines which you can then supplement from your own observations.

02

making friends (ii)

In this chapter you will learn

- how to make simple introductions
- how to exchange greetings
- how to address people correctly
- how to make simple apologies
- what measure words are
- numbers 0–99

▶ Mr King has invited Mr and Mrs Li (*Lǐ tàitai*) to his room for a drink.

- | | | |
|----------------|--|---|
| Lǐ | <i>Wáng xiānsheng, wǒ gěi nǐ</i>
King/first-born/I/give/you/
<i>jièshào yíxià, zhè shì wǒ</i>
introduce/*this/be/I/
<i>àiren, Zhōu Déjīn.</i>
love person/Zhou/Dejin/ | Mr King, may I introduce my wife, Zhou Dejin? |
| Wáng | <i>Lǐ tàitai, nín hǎo!</i>
Li/Mrs/you/good/ | How do you do, Mrs Li. |
| Lǐ (t.) | <i>Wáng xiānsheng, nín hǎo!</i>
King/first-born/you/good/
<i>Rènshi nín, wǒ zhēn gāoxìng.</i>
Know/you/I/really/happy/ | How do you do, Mr King. I'm really pleased to meet you. |
| Wáng | <i>Qǐng zuò, qǐng zuò. Hē</i>
Invite/sit/invite/sit/Drink
<i>yì bēi jiǔ ba.</i>
one/cup/alcohol// | Please sit down. How about a drink? |
| Lǐ | <i>Xièxie, wǒ hē yì bēi.</i>
Thank/I/drink/one/cup | Thanks, I'll have one. |
| Wáng | <i>Lǐ tàitai ne?</i>
Li/Mrs// | What about you, Mrs Li? |
| Lǐ (t.) | <i>Xièxie, wǒ bú huì</i>
Thank/I/not/know how to/
<i>hē jiǔ.</i>
drink/alcohol/ | No thanks. I don't drink. |
| Wáng | <i>Nàme, júzīhī hǎo ma?</i>
So/orange juice/good// | What about an orange juice then? |
| Lǐ (t.) | <i>Hǎo, xièxie nín.</i>
Good/thank/you/ | Fine, thank you. |

* Extra obliques (//) signify the existence of a Chinese word which has no simple English equivalent.

gěi (prep.; v)	<i>for; give</i>
jièshào (v)	<i>to introduce</i>
yíxià	<i>see Exercise 2.2</i>
zhè (dem. p./adj.)	<i>this</i>
shì (v)	<i>to be</i>
àiren (n)	<i>husband, wife</i>
tàitai (n)	<i>Mrs, wife</i>
nín (ps)	<i>you (polite form)</i>
rènshi (v)	<i>to know, recognize</i>

zhēn (adv.; adj.)	really; true, real
gāoxìng (adj.)	happy
yī (num.)	one
bēi (MW)	cup (ful)
jiǔ (n)	alcohol
ba	particle indicating suggestion
ne	question particle
huì (aux. v.)	to know how to; can; will
júzi-zhī (n)	orange juice
ma	question particle

Grammar

1 Use of gěi

Gěi may be used in several ways. Its basic meaning is as a verb meaning 'to give': *Wǒ gěi nǐ júzīzhī* 'I'll give you orange juice' or it can stand with a personal noun or pronoun *before* the verb with the meaning of doing the action of the verb *for* that person: *Wǒ gěi nǐ hē* 'I'll drink (it) for you'. 'To introduce A to B' is *gěi B jièshào A* in Chinese.

2 Yíxià

The subtlety of the Chinese language lies in the way it conveys nuances of meaning. In this context *yíxià* softens the abruptness of *Wǒ gěi nǐ jièshào* without having any specific meaning, although in other contexts it can mean 'on one occasion' or 'have a little go at doing the action of the verb'.

3 Use of shì

The verb 'to be' is used much less in Chinese than in English. It is mostly to be found in A=B sentences: *Lǐ tàitai shì nǐ àiren* 'Mrs Li is your wife'. The test of whether *shì* has been used correctly is to turn the sentence round and if it still makes sense (albeit clumsily) then the *shì* is correct: *Nǐ àiren shì Lǐ tàitai* 'Your wife is Mrs Li'. Note that *shì* is unstressed unless the speaker wishes to emphasize it: *Tā (she) shì nǐ àiren* 'She is your wife'. (Doubt having been cast as to whether or not she was.)

4 Nín

Nín is the polite form of *nǐ* but it is not used frequently. It is used to indicate respect, e.g. when addressing one's 'elders and betters'. It is *not* used in the plural. The table below lists the other personal pronouns.

Personal pronouns

wǒ	<i>I, me</i>	wǒmen	<i>we, us</i>
nǐ	<i>you (sing.)</i>	nǐmen	<i>you (pl.)</i>
nín	<i>you (sing. polite)</i>	tāmen	<i>they, them</i>
tā	<i>he, she, it</i>		

5 Topic construction

The Chinese are very fond of this construction and use it frequently. It consists of stating what you are going to talk about *first*, often in the very broadest sense, and *then* going on to state your view or reaction to it.

Rènshi nín, wǒ zhēn gāoxìng.
topic reaction

6 Measure words

In Chinese something called a measure word has to be used between a number and its noun. Different measure words are used with different categories of nouns. For example *běn* is used for books and magazines whereas *zhāng* is used for rectangular, flat objects such as tables, beds, maps, but is not a true measure as to length or anything else. Some measure words like *bēi* are actual indicators of quantity. The noun accompanying the number and measure word is often omitted when it is clear from the context what this is. For example, Mr Li says in answer to Mr King's question that he will *hē yì bēi* (*jiǔ* 'understood'). For a more comprehensive table of measure words see Chapter 12, pp.123-4.

7 Ba

Ba is placed after a verb or phrase to denote a suggestion or to ask for confirmation of a supposition: *Hǎo ba* 'Is that all right then?'

8 Ne

When the same question is put to two or more people consecutively *ne* is usually used to replace the question which has been put to the first person. For example, Mr King suggests to Mr Li that he might like a drink and then turns to Mrs Li and asks: *Lǐ tàitai ne?*

9 Hui

One of several auxiliary verbs expressing 'to be able to, can'. *Hui* conveys the idea of 'knowing how to, having learnt it'. It is used to express knowledge of a foreign language: *Wǒ huì Yīngwén* 'I know English' and ability to smoke or drink, etc. 'I don't drink (alcohol)' becomes *Wǒ bú huì hē jiǔ* ('I don't know how to drink alcohol') in Chinese. Its other meaning is to express the possibility that something 'will happen in the future': *Tā huì lái* 'He will come'. Both meanings are used in the exercises.

10 Question particle

The addition of *ma* at the end of any statement makes it into a question. For example: *Júzhīhǎo* becomes *Júzhīhǎo ma?*

11 Numbers 0–99

0 líng	8 bā	16 shíliù
1 yī	9 jiǔ	17 shíqī
2 èr	10 shí	18 shíbā
3 sān	11 shíyī (10 + 1)	19 shíjiǔ
4 sì	12 shí'èr (10 + 2)	20 èrshí (2 × 10)
5 wǔ	13 shísān	30 sānshí
6 liù	14 shísì	65 liùshíwǔ
7 qī	15 shíwǔ	99 jiǔshíjiǔ

An apostrophe (') is used to show where the break comes between two syllables if there is any possible ambiguity in pronunciation, so it is *shí'èr* and not *shíèr*.

i Female equality

In the People's Republic of China (PRC) *àiren* means 'husband' or 'wife', but in overseas Chinese communities such as Singapore and Hong Kong it can still mean 'lover', so be careful how you use it! A Chinese woman, married to a Mr Zhang is seldom, if ever, addressed as Mrs Zhang (*Zhāng tàitai*), unless she is an overseas Chinese or is being addressed by a foreigner. She keeps her maiden name and when being introduced, this will be given together with her 'Christian or given name', e.g. *Zhōu Déjīn*. A foreigner married to a Mr King may be variously addressed as *Wáng tàitai* or *Wáng fūrén*.

Exercise 2.1

True or false?

- 1 *Lǐ xiānsheng bù hē jiǔ.*
- 2 *Lǐ tàitai hē júzīzhī.*
- 3 *Lǐ xiānsheng gěi Wáng xiānsheng jièshào tā àiren.*
- 4 *Lǐ tàitai rènshi Wáng xiānsheng bù gāoxìng.*
- 5 *Zhōu Déjīn huì hē jiǔ.*

Exercise 2.2

Re-arrange the words given to produce the meaning in brackets:

Yì bēi hē huì wǒ jiǔ. [I (can) drink a little alcohol.]
→ *Wǒ huì hē yì bēi jiǔ.*

- 1 *Gāoxìng Lǐ tàitai nín rènshi zhēn wǒ.* [I'm really happy to meet you, Mrs Li.]
- 2 *Ba júzīzhī nàme hǎo.* [How about an orange juice, then.]
- 3 *Hē wǒ xǐhuan hěn jiǔ.* [I adore drinking.]
- 4 *Bù hē sì huì bēi pútáojiǔ (grape alcohol) nín.* [You won't drink four glasses of wine.]
- 5 *Gěi wǒ àiren Lǐ xiānsheng wǒ jièshào.* [I introduce my wife to Mr Li.]

Exercise 2.3

Translate into colloquial English:

Wáng xiānsheng qǐng Lǐ xiānsheng hē jiǔ. Lǐ xiānsheng hěn gāoxìng. Tā hěn huì hē jiǔ. Tā àiren Zhōu Déjīn ne? Tā àiren bú huì hē jiǔ. Tā hē júzīzhī. Tā yě hěn bù xǐhuan Lǐ xiānsheng hē jiǔ.

Exercise 2.4

Translate into Chinese:

- 1 Do you drink?
- 2 I'm a teetotaler. What about you? (Use *nín*.)
- 3 Mr Zhou, may I introduce you to my wife?
- 4 Does she know him?
- 5 [When]* my husband smokes (*xī yān* v-o), I'm very cross.
- 6 How about [some]* coffee? (Use *ba*.)
- 7 Mr Zhang (*Zhāng*) doesn't know English (*Yīngyǔ*).
- 8 You won't drink seven glasses of wine.

* NB The English words in square brackets should not be translated into Chinese.

30

making friends (iii)

In this chapter you will learn

- how to ask someone if they have children
- how to ask how old the children are
- how to ask if someone is married or has a boyfriend/ girlfriend
- how to invite someone to your home
- to tell the time
- about question words and their position in the sentence

▶ Mr King continues his conversation with Mr and Mrs Li.

- Wáng** *Lǐ xiānsheng, nǐmen yǒu*
Li/first-born/you (pl)/have/
xiǎoháir ma?
children//
Do you have any children, Mr Li?
- Lǐ** *Yǒu, wǒmen yǒu liǎng ge –*
Have/we/have/two/MW/
yí ge nánháir, yí ge
one/MW/male child/one/MW/
nǚháir.
female child/
Yes, we have two; a boy and a girl.
- Wáng** *Nánháir jǐ suì?*
Male child/how many/years/
Nǚháir jǐ suì?
Female child/how many/
years/
How old are they?
- Lǐ** *Nánháir shísi suì, nǚháir*
Male child/14/years/female
jiǔ suì.
child/9/years/
The boy is 14, the girl is 9.
- Lǐ (t.)** *Wáng xiānsheng,*
King/first-born/
jié hūn le ma?
tie marriage//
Are you married, Mr King?
- Wáng** *Méi yǒu.*
Not/have/
No, I'm not.
- Lǐ (t.)** *Yǒu duìxiàng ma?*
Have/facing image//
Do you have a steady girlfriend?
- Wáng** *'Duìxiàng' shì shénme*
Facing image/be/what/
yìsì?
meaning/
What does the word *duìxiàng* mean?
- Lǐ** *'Duìxiàng' shì nǚ*
Facing image/be/female/
péngyou de yìsì. Nǐ yǒu
friend//meaning/You/have/
nǚ péngyou ma?
female/friend//
Duìxiàng means girlfriend.
Do you have a girlfriend?

- Wáng** *Yǒu.*
Have/
- Lǐ** (t.) *Tā zài nǎ? Tā yě*
She/be at/where/She/also/
zài Zhōngguó ma?
be at/middle country//
- Wáng** *Duì, tā yě zài Zhōngguó.*
Correct/she/also/be at/
middle country/
- Lǐ** *Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nǐmen*
I/feel like/invite/you (pl)/
qù wǒmen jiā wánr, hǎo ma?
go/our/home/play/good//
- Wáng** *Nà tài hǎo le.*
That/too/good//
- Lǐ** (t.) *Nǐmen míngtiān*
You (pl)/tomorrow/
wǎnshang yǒu kòng ma?
evening/have/space//
- Wáng** *Yǒu kòng.*
Have/space/
- Lǐ** *Nàme, qǐng nǐmen liǎ*
So/invite/you (pl)/two/
míngtiān wǎnshang qù
tomorrow/evening/go/
wǒmen jiā chī fàn ba.
our/home/eat/cooked rice//
- Wáng** *Nà tài xièxie nǐmen le!*
That/too/thank/you (pl.)//
Jǐ diǎn zhōng qù ne?
How many/point/clock/go//
- Lǐ** (t.) *Liù diǎn zěnmeyàng?*
6/point/how about it/
- Wáng** *Xíng, jiù liù diǎn ba.*
Be all right/then/6/point//
- Yes, I do.
- Where is she? Is she in
China too?
- Yes, she is.
- I'd like to invite you both
over to our home. What
do you say?
- That would be great.
- Are you free tomorrow
evening?
- Yes, we are.
- Then how about you both
coming over for a meal
tomorrow evening?
- Thank you very much
indeed. What time shall
we come?
- How would 6 o'clock suit
you?
- Fine, 6 o'clock then.

yǒu (v)	<i>to have</i>
xiǎoháir (n)	<i>child (small)</i>
liǎng (num.)	<i>two</i>
gè (MW)	<i>see 3.1*</i>
nán (adj.)	<i>male</i>
nǚ (adj.)	<i>female</i>
jǐ (QW)	<i>how many (less than ten)</i>
sui (n)	<i>year (of age)</i>
jié hūn (v-o)	<i>to marry, to get married</i>
le	<i>modal particle</i>
méi (neg.)	<i>not (only used with yǒu)</i>
duìxiàng (n)	<i>steady boy- or girlfriend</i>
shénme (QW)	<i>what</i>
yìsi (n)	<i>meaning</i>
péngyou (n)	<i>friend</i>
de	<i>marker</i>
zài (v; prep.)	<i>to be at; at</i>
nǎr (QW)	<i>where</i>
yě (adv.)	<i>also, too</i>
duì (adj.)	<i>correct</i>
xiǎng (aux. v.; v)	<i>to feel like doing something; to think</i>
qù (v)	<i>to go</i>
jiā (n)	<i>home; family</i>
wán(r) (v)	<i>to have fun</i>
nà (dem. p./adj.)	<i>that</i>
tài (adv.)	<i>too</i>
míngtiān (TW)	<i>tomorrow</i>
wǎnshang (TW)	<i>evening</i>
yǒu kòng (v-o)	<i>to have free time</i>
liǎ (num + MW)	<i>two</i>
chī fàn (v-o)	<i>to eat (meal)</i>
diǎn zhōng (MW + n)	<i>o'clock</i>
zěnmeyàng (QW)	<i>what about (it)?, how?</i>
jiù (adv.)	<i>then; just, only, merely</i>

* i.e. Chapter 3, grammar point 1.

Grammar

1 More on measure word *ge*

Gè is by far the most common measure word in Chinese and is used with a whole range of nouns which do not have their own specific measure word. When in doubt as to which measure word to use, use *gè* – not all Chinese get their measure words right every time either! When said in normal speech, *gè* is usually toneless (see p.xix).

2 More on numbers *èr* and *liǎng*

Liǎng (two of a kind) is used with measure words instead of *èr*, so ‘two children’ is *liǎng ge xiǎoháir* not *èr ge xiǎoháir*. Some people find it helpful to think of *liǎng* as the bound form ‘two of a kind’. *Liǎ* (an abbreviated form for *liǎng ge*) is often used with personal pronouns we, you (plural), they, instead of *liǎng ge*, thus ‘the two of us’ may either be *wǒmen liǎ* or *wǒmen liǎng ge*.

3 Question words and their position

In Chinese, question words such as *jǐ* ‘how many’ (generally expecting an answer less than ten), which is always used with a measure word, *duōshao* ‘how many’ (indicating any number), *shénme* ‘what’, *shénme shíhou* ‘when’ (*Lit.* what time), *shéi* ‘who’ (also pronounced *shuí*), *nǎr* ‘where’, *jǐ diǎn (zhōng)* ‘what time’ (*Lit.* what o’clock), *zěnmeyàng* ‘what about it, how’, appear in the sentence in the same position as the word which replaces them in the answer. *Tāmen jǐ suì?* ‘How old are they?’ *Nánháir shísì suì, nǚháir jiǔ suì.* (Note that no verb is necessary when stating age in terms of years.) *Tā zài nǎr? Tā yě zài Zhōngguó.*

The particle *ne* is often to be found at the end of the sentence containing a question word and has a softening effect. It also helps to make the sentence feel more balanced. Try saying such sentences with and without *ne* and hear the difference:

Jǐ diǎn zhōng qù?
Tā zài nǎr?

Jǐ diǎn zhōng qù ne?
Tā zài nǎr ne?

Note that sentences containing question words do not take *ma*.

Exercise 3.1

Replace the **bold** words with an appropriate question word:

Nánhái r wǔ suì → *Nánhái r jǐ suì?*

- 1 *Wǒmen hē júzìzhī.*
- 2 *Lǐ xiānsheng hé (and) Lǐ tàitai yǒu liǎng ge xiǎohái.*
- 3 *Pútáojiǔ hěn hǎo.*
- 4 *Wáng xiānsheng de nǚ péngyou zài Běijīng.*
- 5 *Tāmen míngtiān wǎnshàng qī diǎn zhōng qù chī fàn.*
- 6 *Wáng xiānsheng qǐng tāmen chī fàn.*

4 Verbal suffix -le

Le is the delight of all Chinese grammarians, but only its more straightforward aspects will be dealt with in this book. Here it is put *after* the verb to indicate that the action of the verb has been completed:

Wáng xiānsheng jié hūn le ma? If he had been married the answer would have been: *Jié hūn le*. The negative form of this construction is *méi yǒu + verb* where the *yǒu* may be omitted. The *verb* may be omitted when answering a question with *-le* in the negative but *yǒu* then has to be retained, so Mr King could equally well have replied: *Méi yǒu jié hūn* or *Méi jié hūn* instead of *Méi yǒu*. There is no completed action indicated in the negative so there is no *-le*. Note that the negative form of *yǒu* is *méi yǒu* not *bù yǒu*. This is the one exception to the rule that all verbs are negated by *bù*. (See 1.4.)

The question form is made by adding *ma* to the statement or *méi yǒu* after it:

Wáng xiānsheng jié hūn le ma? or *Wáng xiānsheng jié hūn le méi yǒu?* This is identical to the choice-type question form found in 1.5 except that the verb is not repeated. (*Yǒu* is never omitted in this type of question form.) Another alternative question form is: *Wáng xiānsheng jié hūn méi jié hūn?*, the answers, whether positive or negative, being as before.

5 Marker de

Two nouns may be linked by *de*, the first being subordinate to the second. Whatever comes *after de* is the main idea, i.e. what is being talked about, and what precedes *de* gives additional information about that main idea. Thus the sentence: *Duìxiàng shì nǚ péngyou de yìsi* tells us that the *yìsi* 'meaning' of *duìxiàng*

is *nǚ péngyou*. In *péngyou de xiǎoháir* we are told that the *xiǎoháir* is 'a friend's' (*xiǎoháir*).

De is also used with pronouns in the same way: *Nǐ de jiā* 'your home'; *wǒ de bēizi* 'my cup'. For obvious reasons some students tend to regard this *de* as being possessive, but as can be seen from the first example this may be misleading. One way out of this difficulty might be to regard *wǒ de*, *nǐ de*, etc. simply as possessive adjectives meaning 'my', 'your' and not as *wǒ + de*, etc.

In close personal relationships: *tā māma* 'his mum', *nǐ àiren* 'your husband/wife', *wǒ péngyou* 'my friend' the *de* may be omitted. A Chinese newspaper article or official spokesman will also refer to China and to the Chinese government as *Wǒ guó* ('my country' – 'China') and *Wǒ zhèngfǔ* ('my government' – 'the Chinese government').

6 Answering questions

Although questions in Chinese are not answered with 'yes' or 'no' (see 1.5) the answer is sometimes prefaced with a *duì* 'correct' or a *bú duì* (which is often reduced to a simple *bù*). The text provides a good example of this: Mr Li asks if Mr Wang's girlfriend is in China too and he replies: *Duì, tā yě zài Zhōngguó*. If the answer had been negative, he might well have replied: *Bù, tā bú zài Zhōngguó* or *Bù, tā zài Yīngguó* (Britain).

7 Tàì verb le

As *le* is Chinese grammar's *bête noire*, any hints on its usage are indispensable. For example, it is almost invariably to be found together with the adverb *tài* 'too' as in *tài hǎo le* 'great', *tài xièxie nimen le* 'thank you very much indeed'. Don't ask me why!

8 Adverbial phrases of time (time when)

As is stated in 1.6, most adverbs in Chinese precede the verb. Adverbs of 'time when' are no exception to this rule (for adverbs of 'time how long' see 10.12), so that in *Qǐng nǐmèn míngtiān lái* 'Please come tomorrow' *míngtiān* precedes *lái*. This is the reverse of normal English usage. Such adverbs can also precede the subject or topic for emphasis. For example *Wǒ jīntiān lái, míngtiān wǒ bù lái* 'I'll come today, (but) I am not coming tomorrow'.

9 Verb-object constructions

This construction is a feature of the Chinese language so that whereas an English speaker is quite happy with simply stating that 'He likes eating' or that 'She is going to eat', a Chinese will normally say that he likes 'eating cooked rice' or that she is 'going to eat cooked rice' (*chī fàn*), where *chī* is the verb 'to eat' and *fàn* the object 'cooked rice'. There are numerous examples of this construction, some of the most common are given in the following table.

<i>chī fàn</i> cooked rice	<i>to eat</i>	<i>shuì jiào</i> sleep sleep	<i>to sleep</i>
<i>dú shū</i> read books	<i>to study</i>	<i>shuō huà</i> speak speech	<i>to speak, talk</i>
<i>huà huà</i> draw drawings paint paintings	<i>to draw, paint</i>	<i>tán huà</i> chat speech	<i>to chat</i>
<i>jiāo shū</i> teach books	<i>to teach</i>	<i>xī yān</i> smoke tobacco/ cigarettes	<i>to smoke</i>
<i>kāi chē</i> drive vehicle	<i>to drive</i>	<i>zǒu lù</i> walk road	<i>to walk</i>
<i>kàn shū</i> read books	<i>to read</i>	<i>zuò chē</i> sit vehicle	<i>to go (by some form of transport)</i>
<i>lù yīn</i> record sound	<i>to record</i>		
<i>qǐng kè</i> invite guest	<i>to invite somebody for a meal</i>		

Even *jié hūn* (tie marriage) is strictly speaking a verb-object construction and not a compound verb. The test is whether *le* can be inserted between the two parts or not. If it can, (and only finding or hearing examples can sometimes tell you this) then it is a verb-object construction, so we can say *chī le fàn* but we cannot say *xiè le xie* (*xièxie*) or *xǐ le huan* (*xǐhuan*). Classical Chinese is monosyllabic (one-syllabled), whereas modern Chinese has become increasingly disyllabic (two-syllabled) so the verb-object construction can be seen as conforming to this trend. Of course if the verb in question already has an object, then these 'fill-in' objects are not used.

NB There is great confusion as to whether these verb-objects should be written as one or two words in *pinyin*. I have kept them separate in the interests of clarity.

10 Telling the time

Question: *Xiànzài (now) jǐ diǎn (zhōng)?* (lit. Now/how many/points/clock)

Answer: *Xiànzài yì diǎn zhōng.* (lit. Now/one/point/clock)

Zhōng is normally omitted except when asking the time or on the hour, where it is optional.



liǎng diǎn (zhōng)



*sān diǎn (líng)
wǔ fēn (minute)
líng 'zero' is
optional*



*sì diǎn shíwǔ fēn
or sì diǎn yí kè
(one quarter)*



*wǔ diǎn sānshí fēn
or
wǔ diǎn bàn (half)*



*liù diǎn sìshíwǔ fēn
or liù diǎn sān kè
(three quarters) or
chà yí kè qī diǎn
(lack/one/quarter/7/
point)*



*qī diǎn wǔshí fēn or
chà shí fēn bā diǎn
(lack/10/unit/8/point)*

For more information on time in general see Chapter 12, pp.124-5.

Exercise 3.2

What time is it on each of the clocks below?

1



5



2



6



3



7



4



8



11 The adverb *jiù*

Jiù is used in many different ways, some of which you will meet in this book. Here it is used to link two clauses together and at the same time show acceptance: *Xíng, jiù liù diǎn ba*. As an adverb, *jiù* can never precede a noun or pronoun. Note that *ba* also expresses agreement or approval here (cf. 2.7).

i Chinese straight talking

The Chinese love to know everybody else's business and do not feel at all inhibited about enquiring how much you paid for your house, your car, your CD-player, your television, your clothes or anything else. They are always particularly interested in your age, marital status and whether you have children and if not why not! Although customs are changing gradually, it is still extremely unusual for a Chinese adult in his or her 30s to be unmarried or childless. Conversely it is quite in order for you to ask the same sort of questions. Being of a 'curious' disposition myself I have always felt very much at home in China. Of course, as contact with the outside world increases, many more Chinese are learning that some foreigners regard such questions as impolite and therefore may, on occasions, restrain their natural curiosity (and genuine openness) on such matters.

Exercise 3.3

The following sentences are incorrect, they contain common errors (the Chinese call such sentences *bìngjù* 'sick sentences'). Give the correct version. *Tā jié hūn míngtiān* → *Tā míngtiān jié hūn*

- 1 *Wǒ yǒu èr ge xiǎoháir.*
- 2 *Tā bù yǒu nǚháir.*
- 3 *Nǐmen yǒu liù péngyou.*
- 4 *Zhōngguó shì nǎr?*
- 5 *Jǐ suì tāmen?*
- 6 *Wǒmen qù shí diǎn zhōng.*
- 7 *Zěnmeyàng hē lǜ (green) chá?*
- 8 *Zhōu Déjīn méi yǒu jié hūn le.*
- 9 *Wáng tàitai bù chī fàn wǎnshang.*
- 10 *Zhāng xiānsheng xiǎng qǐng wǒmen, jiù wǒmen bù qǐng tā.*

Exercise 3.4

Translate the following passage into colloquial English:

Wǒmen yǒu sì ge xiǎoháir, sān ge nǚháir, yí ge nánháir. Wǒ de péngyou hěn duō (many). Wǒ qǐng liǎng ge péngyou míngtiān wǎnshàng lái (come) wǒmen jiā chī fàn. Wǒ àiren hěn bù gāoxìng yīnwèi (because) tā bú rènshi tāmen.

Exercise 3.5

Translate into Chinese:

- 1 The girl is three years old, the boy is two.
- 2 Is he married? No, he isn't.
- 3 Are you (plural) going to his home for a meal tomorrow evening?
- 4 Where is she now (*xiànzài* TW)? She is in London (*Lúndūn*).
- 5 Do you (singular) have a steady boyfriend? No I don't. I am only (use *cái*) 15!
- 6 The two of us are really fond of coffee.
- 7 What time will you be at home?/How about 7 o'clock?/Fine, 7 it is then. (Use *jiù*.)
- 8 My wife is smashing, but (*dànshi*) she doesn't like talking much (*shuō huà*).
- 9 Where is your friend? I'd like to invite him for a meal.

04

at the Lis' (!)

In this chapter you will learn

- how to say where you come from and what nationality you are
- the Chinese equivalents of foreign names
- to make appropriate remarks and responses during a meal

▶ Mr King and his girlfriend Miss Scurfield (*Shǐ xiǎojie*) have arrived at the Lis' for dinner.

- Wáng** *Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào yíxià,*
I/give/you/introduce//
zhè wèi shì wǒ de nǚ
this/MW/be/my/female/
péngyou, Shǐ Àilǐ. Zhè wèi
friend/Shi Aili/This/MW/
shì Lǐ xiānsheng, zhè wèi
be/Li/first-born/this/MW/
shì Lǐ tàitai.
be/Li/Mrs/
- May I introduce you to my girlfriend, Shi Aili? This gentleman is Mr Li and this is Mrs Li.
- Lǐ** } *Shǐ xiǎojie, nín hǎo!*
Lǐ (t.) } Shi/Miss/you/good/
Shǐ } *Lǐ xiānsheng, Lǐ tàitai,*
Li/first-born/Li/Mrs/
nǐmen hǎo!
you/good/
- How do you do, Miss Scurfield.
How do you do, Mr and Mrs Li.
- Lǐ** *Qǐng suǐbiàn zuò ba.*
Invite/follow convenience/sit//
- Please make yourselves comfortable.
- Lǐ (t.)** *Shǐ xiǎojie, nín yě shì cóng*
Shi/Miss/you/also/be/from/
Yīngguó lái de ma?
hero country/come///
- Are you from Britain too, Miss Scurfield?
- Shǐ** *Shì, wǒ yě shì cóng*
Be/I/also/be/from/
Yīngguó lái de.
hero country/come//
- Yes, I am.
- Lǐ** *À, nǐmen liǎng dōu shì*
Ah/you/two/both/be/
Yīngguó rén.
hero country people/
- Ah, you are both British.
- Lǐ (t.)** *Shǐ xiǎojie, nín zài zhèr zuò*
Shi/Miss/you/at/here/do/
shénme?
what/
- What are you doing here Miss Scurfield?
- Shǐ** *Wǒ zài zhèr xuéxí Hànyǔ.*
I/at/here/study/Chinese
language/
- I'm studying Chinese language here.
- Lǐ** *Nín zài nǎ ge xuéxiào*
You/at/which/MW/school/
xuéxí Hànyǔ?
study/Chinese language/
- Which school are you (studying Chinese language) at?

- Shǐ** *Wǒ zài Běijīng Dàxué xuéxí*
I/at/Beijing/big study/study/
Hànyǔ.
Chinese/
I am studying (Chinese language) at Beijing University.
- Lǐ** *Xuéxiào lǐ shēnghuó*
School inside/life/
zěnmeyàng?
how/
What's it like there?
- Shǐ** *Hěn búcuò!*
Very/not wrong/
It's great!
- Lǐ (t.)** *Nǐmen yídìng hěn è le.*
You/definitely/very/hungry//
Wǒmen chī fàn ba. Jīntiān
We/eat/meal//Today/
wǎnshàng chī Zhōngguó cài
evening/eat/China/dish(es)/
xíng ma?
be OK//
You must be ravenous.
Let's eat. We are going to eat Chinese tonight, if that's all right with you?
- Wáng** *Hǎo jíle!*
Good/extremely/
Marvellous!
- Lǐ** *Bié kèqǐ, zìjǐ lái ba.*
Don't/be polite/self/come//
Nǐmen huì yòng kuàizi ma?
You/know/use/chopsticks//
Make yourselves at home.
Do help yourselves. Can you use chopsticks?
- Wáng** *Huì yòng, dànshi yòng de bù hǎo.*
Know/use/but/use/not/
good/
Yes, but not very well.
- Lǐ** *Méi guānxi . . . Ñg, nǐmen*
Not/concern/Hm/you/
dōu yòng de búcuò a!
both/use/not bad//
It doesn't matter . . . Hm, you are both pretty good.
- Lǐ (t.)** *Wǒ zuò cài, zuò de bù hǎo, qǐng yuánliàng.*
I/make/dish/make/not
good/invite/forgive/
Sorry, I'm not much of a cook.
- Shǐ** *Nín zuò cài, zuò de hěn hǎo.*
You/make/dish/make/very/
good/
You cook very well.
- Lǐ (t.)** *Shǐ xiǎojiě huì zuò cài ma?*
Shi/Miss/know/make/dish//
Can you cook, Miss Scurfield?
- Shǐ** *Huì yìdiǎnr, dànshi*
Can/one drop/but/
A little, but I am a very plain cook.

	<i>jìshù bù gāo!</i> technique/not/tall/	
Wáng	<i>Tā Yīngguó cài</i> She/hero country/dish/ <i>zuò de fēicháng hǎo.</i> make/extremely/good/	She cooks wonderful English food.
Lǐ	<i>Zhōngguó cài zuò de</i> Middle country/dish/make/ <i>zěnmeyàng?</i> how/	What about Chinese food?
Shǐ	<i>Wǒ Zhōngguó cài</i> I/middle country/dish/ <i>zuò de bù zěnmeyàng.</i> make/not/how/	I'm not much good at making Chinese food.
Lǐ (t.)	<i>Nǐmen zuìhǎo shǎo shuō</i> You/most good/less/speak/ <i>huà, duō chī fàn ba,</i> speech/more/eat/meal// <i>yàobùrán cài dōu liáng le!</i> /otherwise/dish/all/cool//	You'd better talk less and concentrate more on your food, otherwise it'll all get cold!

wèi (MW)	<i>for persons (polite)</i>
xiǎojiē (n)	<i>Miss, young lady</i>
suíbiàn	<i>do as one pleases</i>
shì . . . de	<i>see 4.4</i>
cóng (prep.)	<i>from</i>
Yīngguó (N)	<i>Britain, England</i>
lái (v)	<i>to come</i>
à (interj)	<i>ah, oh</i>
dōu (adv.)	<i>both, all</i>
Yīngguórén (n)	<i>British (person)</i>
zhèr (PW)	<i>here</i>
zuò (v)	<i>to do, to make</i>
xué(xí) (v)	<i>to study</i>
Hànyǔ (n)	<i>Chinese language</i>
nǎ (QW)	<i>which?</i>
xuéxiào (n)	<i>school</i>
Běijīng Dàxué (N)	<i>Beijing University</i>
(n +) lǐ	<i>inside (+ n)</i>
shēnghuó (n, v)	<i>life; to live</i>
búcuò	<i>pretty good</i>
yíding (adv.)	<i>certainly, definitely</i>
è (adj.)	<i>hungry</i>

le	<i>new situation</i>
jīntiān (TW)	<i>today</i>
cài (n)	<i>dish; vegetable</i>
(adj. +) jíle	<i>extremely (+ adj.)</i>
bié (adv.)	<i>don't</i>
kèqǐ (adj.)	<i>polite (lit. guest air)</i>
zìjǐ (p)	<i>oneself</i>
yòng (v)	<i>to use</i>
kuàizi (n)	<i>chopsticks</i>
dànshi (conj.)	<i>but</i>
-de	<i>see 4.8</i>
méi (yǒu) guānxi	<i>it doesn't matter</i>
ng (interj.)	<i>hm</i>
yuánliàng (v)	<i>to forgive</i>
yìdiǎn(r) (n)	<i>a little</i>
jìshù (n)	<i>technique</i>
gāo (adj.)	<i>tall, high</i>
fēicháng (adv.)	<i>extremely</i>
bù zěnmeyàng	<i>not up to much</i>
zuì (adv.)	<i>most</i>
zùihǎo (adv., adj.)	<i>had better; best</i>
shǎo (adv., adj.)	<i>less; few</i>
shuō huà (v-o)	<i>to speak, talk</i>
duō (adj., adv.)	<i>more; many</i>
yàobù(rán) (conj.)	<i>otherwise</i>
liáng (adj.)	<i>cool</i>

Grammar

1 More on measure words

When *zhè* 'this' and *nà* 'that' occur with a noun in the singular or as pronouns (with a singular noun understood) or with a number, then the appropriate measure word must be inserted:

zhè wèi xiǎojié 'this MW (unmarried) young lady'

nà wèi xiānsheng 'that MW gentleman'

zhè wèi 'this MW one (person understood)'

nà liǎng ge rén 'those two MW people'

This rule applies equally well to such question words as *jǐ* 'how many' and *nǎ* 'which': (both of which must be followed by measure words):

Question: *Tā gěi nǐ jǐ bēi jiǔ?*

'How many glasses of alcohol did he give you?'

Answer: *Tā gěi wǒ sān bēi jiǔ.*

'He gave me three.'

Question: *Nǐ zài nǎ ge xuéxiào xuéxí Hànyǔ?*

'Where do you study Chinese?'

Answer: *Wǒ zài Běijīng Dàxué xuéxí Hànyǔ.*

'I study Chinese at Beijing University.'

Note that *wèi* is normally used with more formal nouns such as *xiānsheng*, *xiǎojie*, etc. but not with nouns such as *rén*. The *xiǎo* in *xiǎojie* is pronounced second tone in practice, as *jiě*, though neutral here, still carries enough weight to turn *xiǎo* into a second. Convention has us write it as third tone however.

Exercise 4.1

Insert the missing measure words in the following sentences:

Nà xuéxiào búcuò → *Nà ge xuéxiào búcuò.*

- 1 *Zhè xiǎojie zài Běijīng Dàxué xuéxí Hànyǔ.*
- 2 *Nǎ xiānsheng shì nǐ àiren?*
- 3 *Wáng tàitai yǒu jǐ xiǎoháir?*
- 4 *Nà wǔ rén dōu shì nǐ péngyou ma?*
- 5 *Tāmen jǐ zhōng lái wǒmen jiā chī fàn?*

2 Foreign names (I)

Certain very common and/or very well-known foreign surnames and Christian/given names have set equivalents in Chinese, e.g. Smith: *Shǐmìsī* (*Shǐ mì sī*), John: *Yuēhàn* (*Yuē hàn*). Thus John Smith would be written *Yuēhàn·Shǐmìsī*, the '·' between the two indicating that the name is foreign. Since the majority of Chinese names consist of three characters or 'syllables', most foreigners who regularly come into contact with Chinese people often adopt a three syllable name. Sometimes all three syllables are an approximate transliteration of the foreign surname, otherwise the Chinese practice of generally having one syllable for the surname and two for the given or Christian name is adopted. Thus Miss Scurfield has adopted the Chinese surname *Shǐ* 'history' and the given name *Àilǐ* (*ài lǐ*) 'loves principle'. Almost all Chinese given names have a meaning, hence the origin of such names as 'Beautiful Jade' and 'Flowering Plum Blossom' which appear in some English translations of Chinese literature and a good transcription of a foreign name should follow this practice.

3 Adverbial phrases of place

Adverbial phrases of place usually consist of a preposition and a place-word and are generally put before the verb as in:

Wǒ zài zhè xuéxí Hànyǔ. 'I study Chinese here.'

Other prepositions such as *cóng* 'from' and *dào* 'to' also function in this way:

Tā cóng Zhōngguó lái. (Lit. He/from/China/comes)
'He comes from China.'

Wǒmen dào Měiguó qù. (Lit. We/to/beautiful country/go)
'We go to America.'

When an adverbial phrase of 'time when' (see 3.8) and an adverbial phrase of place both occur before the verb, the rule is time before place:

Nǐmen jīntiān zài wǒ jiā
chī fàn. 'You are eating at my home
today.' (Lit. You/today/at/my/
home/eat/cooked rice/.)

Note that words such as *-lǐ* 'inside', 'on', 'under', etc. occur after the noun to which they refer. These will be dealt with in more detail in Chapter 17.

4 Shì . . . de

An adverbial phrase of time, manner or place is emphasized by putting *shì* in front of it and *de* after it. This construction can only be used where the action of the verb has been completed, it cannot be used for present or future actions:

Question: Shǐ xiǎojie, nín yě shì cóng Yīngguó lái de ma?

Answer: Shì, wǒ yě shì cóng Yīngguó lái de.

A negative answer might have been:

Bù, wǒ shì cóng Déguó (Germany) lái de.

The stress does not always show in the English translation but the following examples may illustrate the point more clearly:

Question: Nǐ shì bā diǎn zhōng lái de ma? Did you come at 8?
(Was it at 8 that you came?)

Answer: Bù, wǒ shì qī diǎn bàn lái de. 'No, at 7.30' (It was at 7.30 that I came.)

Question: Nǐ shì zuò chē (sit vehicle) lái de ma? 'Did you come by bus/car?' (Was it by bus/car that you came?)

Answer: *Bù, wǒ shì zǒu lù lái de.* 'No I came on foot.' (It was on foot that I came.)

5 Abbreviations

You might be forgiven for thinking that given the nature of the Chinese language, abbreviations would be out of the question, but you would be wrong. The Chinese love abbreviations, the pithiness of which has echoes of their classical past. Hence *Běijīng Dàxué* 'Beijing University' becomes *Běidà*, *Nánjīng Dàxué* 'Nanjing University' becomes *Nándà* and so on. As you can see the first syllable from each word has been picked out to form the abbreviation. The most likely targets for abbreviations are institutions and political movements.

6 The particle *le*

When *le* occurs at the end of a sentence it is often referred to as the 'modal particle *le*'. In this text it is used to indicate that a new state of affairs or situation has appeared:

Nǐmen yídìng hěn è le 'You must be starving' (whereas previously you weren't);

Cài dōu liáng le 'All the food is getting/will get cold' (whereas previously it was piping hot!)

You might find it helpful to think of this as the 'new situation' *le* or the 'change of state' *le*. This has to be accepted in its very broadest sense as the Chinese almost always use it with such questions as:

Xiǎoháir jǐ suì le? 'How old is the child?' (*Lit.* Child/how many/years/become)

Xiànzài jǐ diǎn le? 'What time is it?' (*Lit.* Now/how many/o'clock/become)

where the concept of a change of state has been stretched to its limits.

7 Don't! *bié*

The negative imperative is formed by putting *bié* in front of the verb or adjective acting as a verb:

Bié kèqì! 'Don't stand on ceremony!'

Bié shuō huà! 'Don't speak!'

If *le* is added after the verb or adjective acting as a verb, the command is softened and sounds much less like an order:

Bié hē jiǔ le! 'Now, now, no drinking!'

8 De with the complement of degree

The Chinese character for this *de* is quite different from the *de* in Chapter 3, but they are identical in *pinyin* because they are the same sound and are both toneless. The function of this *de* is to indicate what the Chinese call the complement of degree, i.e. it is used with a word indicating manner or degree as in the following pattern:

Yòng de hěn hǎo 'to use something (very) well'.

The table below shows the essential workings of the complement of degree.

a	Positive form:	<i>S V de CD</i> <i>Tā yòng de hěn hǎo.</i>	He uses it (very) well.
b	Negative form:	<i>S V de bu CD</i> <i>Tā yòng de bù hǎo.</i>	He doesn't use it well.
c	Question form with <i>ma</i> :	<i>S V de CD ma?</i> <i>Tā yòng de hǎo ma?</i>	Does he use it well?
d	Question form without <i>ma</i> :	<i>S V de CD bu CD</i> <i>Tā yòng de hǎo bu hǎo?</i>	
e	Question form using <i>zěnmeyàng</i> :	<i>S V de zěnmeyàng?</i> <i>Tā yòng de zěnmeyàng?</i>	How does he use it?
f	With an object:	<i>S V₁ O V₁ de CD</i> <i>Tā yòng kuàizi yòng de hěn hǎo.</i>	He uses chopsticks well.
g	With an object omitting the first verb:	<i>S O V de CD</i> <i>Tā kuàizi yòng de hěn hǎo.</i>	
h	With object as topic:	<i>O S V de CD</i> <i>Kuàizi tā yòng de hěn hǎo.</i>	i As for chopsticks he uses them (very) well. ii He uses chopsticks (very) well.

Note that:

- 1 It is the complement of degree and **not** the verb which has things done to it when we use this construction in the negative or question form (see table above a–e).
- 2 The complement of degree marker *de* must always directly follow its verb. If there is an object then the construction is as in f or g above.
- 3 If we wish to emphasize the **object** this may be put before the subject and the first verb is omitted as in h. This has the effect of making the object into a kind of topic which the speaker then goes on to talk about (see 2.5).
- 4 When adjectives such as *hǎo* act as verbs and are standing alone, they are normally preceded in the affirmative by the adverb *hěn* ‘very’. Although in these cases *hěn* does not have the full force of the English word ‘very’ its function is to indicate that the statement is absolute. Without *hěn* some kind of contrast or comparison is implied:

Tā hǎo. ‘He is nice’ (implying that someone else isn’t)

Tā hěn hǎo. ‘He is (very) nice’ is complete in itself and has no such overtones.

The same rule applies when these adjectives are used as complements of degree in the positive form (see a, f, g and h above); but not in the negative or question forms (see b, c, d and e).

Exercise 4.2

Make the following statements into sentences using the complement of degree given in brackets. Give more than one form where appropriate:

Tā chī fàn (hěn duō) → *Tā chī fàn, chī de hěn duō.*
→ *Tā fàn chī de hěn duō.*
→ *Fàn tā chī de hěn duō.*

- 1 *Wǒmen xuéxí (hěn shǎo)*
- 2 *Nǐmen shuō Hànyǔ (búcuò)*
- 3 *Tā shēnghuó (bù zěnmeyàng)*
- 4 *Nà ge rén zuò Zhōngguó cài (hěn hǎo)*
- 5 *Zhè ge péngyou shuō huà (bù duō).*

Exercise 4.3

Turn the following statements into questions (three forms) and then answer them in the negative:

Nà ge xiǎoháir zuò de hěn hǎo.

→ Nà ge xiǎoháir zuò de hǎo ma?

→ Nà ge xiǎoháir zuò de hǎo bu hǎo?

→ Nà ge xiǎoháir zuò de zěnmeyàng?

Negative → Nà ge xiǎoháir zuò de bù hǎo.

- 1 Tā shuō Hànyǔ shuō de hěn hǎo.
- 2 Wǒ yí ge péngyou (my one MW friend = one of my friends) hē jiǔ hē de hěn duō.
- 3 Shǐ xiǎojie xuéxí de hěn màn (slow).
- 4 Gōngrén (worker) jīntiān lái de hěn shǎo.
- 5 Yīngguó rén zuò Yīngguó cài, zuò de hěn hǎo.

9 Duō/shǎo + verb

Duō or *shǎo* before the verb conveys the idea of doing more or less of the verb: *shǎo shuō huà* 'speak less', *duō chī fàn* 'eat more'. This construction can only be used with full verbs and not with adjectives used as verbs. (*Shǎo gāo* does not mean 'to be less tall'. This phrase would be meaningless.)

i Interrogation – Chinese style?

Mr and Mrs Li have not previously met Miss Scurfield so they are anxious to find out who she is and what she does where. This is very typical of a first meeting – somewhere, you are being fitted into an imaginary filing system!

Modesty

When talking to a second party, the Chinese have a long cultural tradition of denigrating themselves and their achievements but of praising the other party. They will do this both spontaneously and in response to compliments paid. As food is a major topic of conversation for the Chinese, this cultural tendency is often very pronounced when the quality and quantity of a meal are under discussion. Remarks by the host and the hostess that it is only 'a very simple meal' *yí dùn biàn fàn* (Lit. one/MW/simple/cooked rice) and 'there are no dishes worth speaking of' *méi shénme cài*, are almost *de rigueur* even though guests know they have gone to enormous trouble and expense to prepare the meal. Good examples of this modesty are Mrs Li's *Wǒ zuò cài, zuò de bù hǎo*, *qǐng yuánliàng* and Miss Scurfield's very Chinese answer to the question as to her own cooking ability: *Huì yìdiǎnr, dànshi jìshù bù gāo*. Of

course it is common practice for the listener to follow up such remarks with a compliment to the speaker as occurs here. Mrs Li's cooking is delicious *Nǐ zuò cài, zuò de hěn hǎo*, and Miss Scurfield cooks wonderful English food *Tā Yīngguó cài zuò de fēicháng hǎo!*

Exercise 4.4

Answer the following questions on the text:

- 1 *Wáng xiānsheng de nǚ péngyou shì shéi* (who)?
- 2 *Shǐ xiǎojie shì bu shì Yīngguó rén?*
- 3 *Shǐ xiǎojie zài Zhōngguó zuò shénme?*
- 4 *Zài Běijīng Dàxué shēnghuó hǎo ma?*
- 5 *Tāmen jīntiān wǎnshang chī shénme cài?*
- 6 *Wáng xiānsheng hé* (and) *Shǐ xiǎojie kuàizi yòng de hǎo bu hǎo?*
- 7 *Lǐ tàitai zuò cài zuò de zěnmeyàng?*
- 8 *Shǐ xiǎojie huì bu huì zuò Yīngguó cài?*

Exercise 4.5

Translate the following passages into colloquial English:

- 1 *Wǒ huì zuò cài dànshi zuò de bù hǎo. Wǒ de nǚ péngyou shuō wǒ de jìshù bù gāo. Wǒmen yǒu hěn duō Zhōngguó péngyou, tāmen zuò Zhōngguó cài zuò de búcuò. Tāmen yòng kuàizi yě yòng de hěn hǎo. Nǐ ne?*
- 2 *Wǒ yí ge péngyou qù Fǎguó* (France) *gōngzuò* (to work). *Fǎguó cài hěn hǎo chī-tā chī de hěn duō. Xiànzài tā hěn pàng* (fat) *le. Tā àiren shuō: 'Nǐ shǎo chī fàn, duō gōngzuò zěnmeyàng?'. Wǒ péngyou shuō: 'Shǎo chī fàn hǎo dànshi duō gōngzuò bù hǎo!'*

Exercise 4.6

Translate into Chinese:

- 1 I myself (*zìjǐ*) can't cook but my husband cooks marvellously.
- 2 Are you French? We are both French too.
- 3 Did that gentleman come at 2.30? No, he came at 3. (Use *shì . . . de*)
- 4 Where are you studying Chinese? How are you getting on?
- 5 He came from America. He is working here.
- 6 What's the time? You must be starving!
- 7 I've got no free time today but I'm not working tomorrow. Would 10 o'clock suit you? (Use *xíng*.)
- 8 She's not very good at using chopsticks but she cooks really good Chinese food.

05

at the Lis' (II)

In this chapter you will learn

- how to describe the rooms in an apartment/house
- how to thank your hosts for their hospitality and to understand their responses
- how to ask questions in the form of alternatives
- how to express direction towards or away from the speaker
- about auxiliary verbs

▶ Mr King and Miss Scurfield are just finishing their meal at the Lis'.

- | | | |
|----------------|---|---|
| Lǐ | <i>Bié kèqǐ, zài duō</i>
Don't/polite/again/more/
<i>chī yìdiǎn(r)</i> .
eat/a little/ | Don't stand on ceremony,
go on, eat a bit more. |
| Wáng | <i>Chī bǎo le, cài dōu hěn</i>
Eat/full/dishes/all/very/
<i>hǎo chī</i> .
good/eat/ | I've had enough, it was
delicious. |
| Lǐ (t.) | <i>Nǐmen yuànyì hē kāfēi háishi</i>
You/want/drink/coffee/or/
<i>hē chá?</i>
drink/tea/ | Would you like tea or
coffee? |
| Wáng | <i>Wǒ suǐbiàn</i> .
I/follow convenience/ | I'm easy. |
| Shǐ | <i>Hē chá ba</i> .
Drink/tea//
<i>(Hē wán le chá)</i>
Drink finish//tea/ | Let's have tea.

(After having tea) |
| Lǐ (t.) | <i>Shǐ xiǎojiē, kànyikàn wǒmen</i>
History/Miss/look look/we/
<i>de xiǎo fángzi ba?</i>
/little/house// | Would you like to have a
look round our little house,
Miss Scurfield? |
| Shǐ | <i>Hǎo, xièxie nín</i> .
Good/thank/you/
<i>Yǒngshòu, nǐ</i>
Eternal longevity/you/
<i>péi Lǐ xiānsheng tán huà</i>
accompany/Li/Mr/chat/
<i>ba . . .</i>
speech// | Yes, please. Yongshou, you
chat to Mr Li. |
| Lǐ (t.) | <i>Zhè shì chúfáng, dìfang hěn</i>
This/be/kitchen/place/very/
<i>xiǎo, suǒyǐ bīngxiāng</i> ,
small/therefore/ice box/
<i>xǐyījī dōu</i>
wash clothes machine/both/
<i>fàng zài wàimiàn tīng lǐ</i> .
put/in/outside/hall inside/
<i>Wǒmen zhǐ yǒu sān ge</i>
We/only/have/3/MW/
<i>fángjiān, érzi yì jiān, nǚ'ér yì</i>
room/son/1/MW/daughter/ | This is the kitchen, it's very
small so we have put the
fridge and the washing
machine in the hall outside.
We only have three rooms,
one for our son, one for
our daughter . . . |

jiān . . .

1/MW/

- | | | |
|----------------|--|--|
| Shǐ | <p><i>Háizimen yǒu zìjǐ de fángjiān</i>
Children/have/own//room/
<i>kěyǐ ānānjìngjìng de dú shū.</i>
can/quiet//read/book(s)/</p> | <p>Children can study in
peace if they have their
own room.</p> |
| Lǐ (t.) | <p><i>Wǒ hé lǎo Lǐ de fángjiān zhǐ</i>
I/and/old/Li//room/only/
<i>hǎo yòu dāng</i>
good/again/serve as/
<i>wòshì yòu dāng</i>
bedroom/again/serve as/
<i>kètīng.</i>
living-room/</p> | <p>Old Li's and my room has
to serve both as bedroom
and living-room.</p> |
| Shǐ | <p><i>Nǐmen de kètīng bùzhì de</i>
You//living-room/decorate/
<i>hěn piàoliang. Diànshì</i>
very/beautiful/Television/
<i>shì cǎisè de háishì</i>
be/coulor//or/
<i>hēi-bái de?</i>
black and white//</p> | <p>Your living-room is
beautifully furnished.
Is it a colour TV or black
and white?</p> |
| Lǐ (t.) | <p><i>Shì cǎisè de. Yào bu yào</i>
Be/coulor//Want/not/want/
<i>kàn yíxià?</i>
look//</p> | <p>It's colour. Would you like
to watch something?</p> |
| Shǐ | <p><i>Bú yòng le. Shíjiān bù zǎo le,</i>
Not/use//Time/not/early//
<i>wǒmen (yīng)gāi huí qu le.</i>
we/ought to/return/go//</p> | <p>No, thanks. It's getting late,
we ought to be getting back.</p> |
| Wáng | <p><i>Shíjiān guò de zhēn kuài. Lǐ</i>
Time/pass/really/fast/Li/
<i>xiānsheng, Lǐ taitai, wǒmen</i>
Mr/Li/Mrs/we/
<i>děi zǒu le, xièxie nǐmen de</i>
must/leave//thank/you//
<i>rèqíng zhāodài.</i>
warm-hearted/hospitality/
<i>Wǒmen wánr de fēicháng</i>
We/have fun/extremely/
<i>gāoxìng, gěi nǐmen tiān le bù</i>
happy/for/you/add//not/
<i>shǎo máfan.</i>
few/trouble(s)/</p> | <p>The time's flown. Mr and
Mrs Li, we must be on our
way, thank you for your
marvellous hospitality.
We've had a wonderful
time and caused you no end
of trouble.</p> |

Lǐ	<i>Méi shénme, huānyíng</i> Not have/what/welcome/ <i>nǐmen zài lái wánr.</i> you/again/come/have fun/	Not at all, feel free to come again.
Wáng/ Shǐ	<i>Yídìng lái. Xièxie nǐmen.</i> Certainly/come/Thank/you/ <i>Zàijiàn.</i> Again see/	Thank you, we certainly will. Goodbye.
Lǐ	<i>Màn zǒu, màn zǒu.</i> Slow/go/slow/go/	Mind how you go.

From Chapter 5 onwards, the appropriate measure word (MW) is placed in square brackets after its noun unless it is *ge*, in which case it is omitted. Some nouns have two measure words, *ge* and a more formal one. Where this is so, both have been indicated.

zài (adv.)	<i>again</i>
chī-bǎo (RV)	<i>to eat one's fill</i>
hǎo chī (adj.)	<i>tasty, delicious</i>
yuànyì (aux. v)	<i>to be willing; to want</i>
háishi	<i>or (used in questions)</i>
-wán (RVE)	<i>to finish verb + -ing</i>
kàn (v)	<i>to look; to see; to watch; to read</i>
xiǎo (adj.)	<i>small</i>
fángzi (n) [suǒ, ge]	<i>house</i>
péi (v)	<i>to accompany</i>
tán huà (v-o, n)	<i>to chat; conversation</i>
chúfáng (n) [jiān, ge]	<i>kitchen</i>
dìfang (n)	<i>place</i>
suǒyǐ (conj.)	<i>therefore</i>
bīngxiāng (n)	<i>refrigerator</i>
xǐyījī (n) [tái]	<i>washing machine</i>
fàng (zài) (v)	<i>to put (in)</i>
wàimiàn (PW)	<i>outside</i>
tīng (n)	<i>hall</i>
zhǐ (adv.)	<i>only</i>
fángjiān (n)	<i>room</i>
érzi (n)	<i>son</i>
jiān (MW)	<i>for room</i>
nǚ'ér (n)	<i>daughter</i>
háizi (n)	<i>child</i>
kěyǐ (aux. v)	<i>can, may</i>
ānjìng (adj.)	<i>quiet</i>

... de	see 5.6
dú shū (v-o)	to study
hé (conj.)	and
lǎo (adj.)	old
zhǐ hǎo (adv.)	have to
yòu ... yòu	both ... and ...
dāng (v)	to serve as; be
wòshì (n)	bedroom
kètīng (n)	living-room, lounge
bùzhì (v)	to decorate
piàoliang (adj.)	beautiful
diànshì (jī) (n) [tái]	television
cǎisè (n)	colour, multicoloured
hēi-bái (adj.)	black and white
yào (aux. v, v)	want to, must, to want
bù ... le	not ... any more
shíjiān (n)	time
zǎo (adj.)	early
(yīng)gāi (aux. v)	ought, should
huí (v)	to return
guò (v)	to pass, to cross
kuài (adj.)	quick, fast
děi (aux. v)	must, need
zǒu (v)	to leave, to walk, to go
rèqíng (adj.)	warm-hearted, enthusiastic
zhāodài (n, v)	hospitality, to entertain
tiān (v)	to add, increase
máfan (n/v, adj.)	trouble, troublesome
méi (yǒu) shénme	it's nothing
huānyíng (v)	to welcome
zàijiàn	goodbye
màn (adj.)	slow

Grammar

1 Resultative verbs (I)

Not all compound (two syllable) verbs are resultative, e.g. *rènshi*, *jièshào* and *xuéxí* are not. At this stage the easiest way to recognize resultative verbs is by their endings. We have three examples of common resultative verb endings (or complements of result) in this chapter viz. *-bǎo*, *-wán* and *-qù*. *Chī bǎo* means to 'eat one's fill' where *chī* is the verb and *bǎo* is the resultative

verb ending expressing satisfaction of appetite. *Bǎo* can only be used with *chī* in this way but it can stand on its own, meaning 'to be full'.

Wǒ bǎo le 'I'm full' (change of state *le*). *Hē wán* means 'to finish drinking' where *hē* is the verb and *wán* is the resultative verb ending expressing completion. Unlike *-bǎo*, *-wán* may be found with many different verbs, e.g. *kān*, *zuò*, *shuō*, *chī*.

Resultative verbs (II): Simple directional endings

...-*qù* is a directional ending indicating direction away from the speaker or point of reference and is used with verbs of motion and transference of something or somebody from one place to another. Thus *huí qù* means to go back:

Wǒmen gāi huí qù le 'We ought to be going back' (change of state *le*), i.e. previously we didn't have to go back, now we do... -*lái* is used in exactly the same way but to indicate direction towards the speaker or point of reference. *Huí lái* would mean 'to come back', the point of reference being where the speaker is when using it. For other common resultative verb endings of both types see the relevant sections in Chapter 12, pp.126-7. NB *Lái* and *qù* are normally toneless when used as simple directional endings.

Exercise 5.1

Insert *lái* or *qù* in the following sentences depending on the position of 'the speaker' which is given in brackets:

Zhào xiānsheng huí dàxué ____ *le*. (We all stayed in town) →
Zhào xiānsheng huí dàxué qù le.

- 1 *Dèng xiǎojie yào huí Zhōngguó* _____. (Point of reference is where she is now, i.e. *Yīngguó*)
- 2 *Érzi jìn* (enter) *kètīng* ____ *le*. (Everybody is in the lounge)
- 3 *Tā jìn wòshì* ____ *le*. (Everybody is in the lounge)
- 4 *Nǐmen yīnggāi huí jiā* _____. (Parents to children on the phone)
- 5 *Wǒ xiǎng huí Yīngguó* _____. (Speaker is in China).

2 Háishi in questions

Háishi 'or' is placed between two statements thereby making them alternatives from which the listener must choose one:

Nǐmen yuànyì hē kāfēi háishi hē chá? 'Would you like tea or coffee?'

If the subject or object in both halves is the same it need not be repeated (this holds true for any two clauses, not just ones using *háishi*, and is a feature of Chinese), but there must be a verb in both halves even if it is the same verb:

Nǐ mǎi (buy) bīngxiāng háishi tā mǎi? 'Are you buying the fridge or is he?'

Note in another example from the text:

Diànshì shì cǎisè de háishi hēi-bái de? The *shì* in *háishi* is allowed to stand for the verb *shì* in the second half – this is the only exception to the rule. Try saying *háishi shì* and you'll understand why.

Exercise 5.2

Make the two statements into one question using *háishi*:

Nǐmen kàn diànshì.
Nǐmen kàn shū (v-o read). } → Nǐmen kàn diànshì háishi kàn shū?

- 1 Tāmen xǐhuan chī fàn.
Tāmen xǐhuan shuō huà.
- 2 Dèng tàitai yào mǎi (buy) bīngxiāng.
Dèng tàitai yào mǎi xǐyījī.
- 3 Zhōu xiānsheng qù Fǎguó.
Zhāng xiānsheng qù Fǎguó.
- 4 Shíjiān guò de kuài.
Shíjiān guò de màn.
- 5 Wǒ péngyou de fángzi méi yǒu chùfáng.
Wǒ péngyou de fángzi méi yǒu yùshì (bathroom).
- 6 Nǐ xuéxí Hànyǔ.
Nǐ xuéxí dìlǐ (geography).

3 Reduplication of verbs

In much the same way as *yíxià* in 2.2, repeating the verb has the effect of softening the suggestion, question or statement. Monosyllabic verbs often have *yi* inserted between the two parts when they are repeated e.g. *kànyikàn*. Disyllabic verbs cannot be treated in this way so *jièshàoyijièshào* would be incorrect. Again, like *yíxià*, repeating the verb can also convey the meaning of 'having a little go' at doing the action of the verb in both the sense of a trial and in doing something fairly quickly. It

can also indicate repetition of the action with verbs such as *fùxí* 'to revise'.

4 Fàng + zài

Zài + Place-Word is used after certain verbs such as *fàng* 'to place', *xiě* 'to write', *jì* 'to record', *zhù* 'to live', *shuì* 'to sleep', *zuò* 'to sit' and *zhàn* 'to stand'. As we have seen in 4.3, adverbial phrases of place generally occur before the verb so these are exceptions to that rule. Some people say that *zài* is acting as a resultative verb ending in such cases, i.e. that something or somebody comes into existence at some place as a result of the action of the verb. (It may just be simpler to memorize these verbs separately when they are used in this way.)

5 Pluralizer suffix *-men*

We have already met *-men* used after pronouns in the singular to make them plural, *wǒ* becomes *wǒmen*, etc. Where it is deemed necessary to avoid ambiguity it can also be used after nouns indicating people to show that these are plural, although it is used quite sparingly and often only under certain conditions. The suffix *-men* is commonly used when addressing people in a speech.

Péngyoumen! 'Friends', *Tóngzhìmen!* 'Comrades' (This could be thought of as the Friends, Romans and Countrymen use of *-men!*) or when making a statement about people in general as in the text:

Háizimen yǒu zìjǐ de fángjiān . . .

but is not used when the people are specified in any way:

Chúfáng lǐ de háizi 'The children in the kitchen' (and not *Chúfáng lǐ de háizimen*). It is probably best avoided unless you are sure of your ground.

6 Adverbs + *de*

Certain adjectives can be used both **before** verbs as adverbs (adverbial adjuncts) and **after** verbs as complements of degree. Such adverbs indicate the manner or state of an action and are used with the particle *de* before the verb:

Tā hěn gāoxìng de qù tāmen jiā wánr 'He went off very happily to their home (to enjoy himself)'.

The Chinese character for this *de* is again quite different from the *de* we met in Chapters 3 and 4 but it is identical in *pinyin*. *De* may be omitted if the adverb is not itself modified, i.e. if there is no *hěn*, *fēicháng*, etc. in front of it:

Tā nǚlì xuéxí Hànyǔ 'She studies Chinese hard'.

7 Adjectives

Monosyllabic adjectives generally occur directly before the noun they refer to but as soon as they are modified by *hěn*, *fēicháng*, etc., the marker *de* (see 3.5) must be inserted between the adjective and its noun:

Hǎo rén 'Good person/people' but *Hěn hǎo de rén* 'Very good person/people'.

8 Reduplication of adjectives

Some adjectives can also be repeated to indicate some degree of intensification:

hóng liǎn '(a) red face' but *hónghóng de liǎn* 'a really red face'.

With disyllabic adjectives the first syllable is repeated and then the second:

gāogāoxìngxìng (not *gāoxìnggāoxìng*) with the fourth syllable being stressed. Adjectives are often reduplicated when used as adverbs as in 5.6, with reduplicated disyllabic adjectives generally taking *de* before the verb. The *de* is optional with reduplicated monosyllabic adjectives:

Háizimēn gāogāoxìngxìng de qù xuéxiào 'The children go happily to school'.

Nǐmen gāi hǎohāor (de) xuéxí 'You ought to study hard'.

Note that in spoken Chinese, the second syllable of a reduplicated monosyllabic adjective is often pronounced in the first tone and takes an 'r' on the end. Not all adjectives can be reduplicated or used as adverbs in this way so it is advisable to learn them as you go along. In addition to *hǎo*, monosyllabic adjectives such as *kuài*, *màn* and *zǎo* frequently occur in this capacity.

9 Hé

Hé 'and' cannot be used nearly so frequently as 'and' in English. It can only be used to join two noun constructions or pronouns, but not to join two verbs or two verbal clauses:

Wǒ hé Lǐ xiānsheng 'Mr Li and I' (in Chinese *wǒ* normally comes first).

Zhōngguó rén hé Fǎguó rén dōu xǐhuan chī fàn. 'The Chinese and the French both enjoy eating'.

Now, however, some intellectuals who have been exposed to European languages may use *hé* to join two verbs or two verbal clauses.

10 Lǎo and xiǎo

Instead of using the Chinese equivalent of Christian or given names when addressing colleagues or people in your peer group on an informal basis, *lǎo* or *xiǎo* is often put before the surname depending on whether the person in question is older or younger than you. Thus an older colleague with the surname *Zhāng* would become *lǎo Zhāng*, whereas a younger colleague called *Dīng* would be *xiǎo Dīng*. There is no hard and fast rule about this, however, and some people in the same peer group who become *xiǎo* or *lǎo* will still be *xiǎo* or *lǎo* even in their fifties, sixties and beyond within that peer group. The choice of which one to use largely depends on your own judgement, but normal practice is to follow the form of address used by your colleagues who have been there longer. It also conveys a feeling of intimacy, note that *Lǐ tàitai* refers to her husband as *lǎo Lǐ*. It is not generally used when addressing foreigners.

11 Yòu ... yòu ...

Yòu ... yòu ... is used with two verbs or with two adjectives acting as verbs to express the meaning 'both ... and ...'

Tā yòu gāo yòu hǎokàn. 'He's both tall and good-looking' (good look/see).

Wǒ hé lǎo Lǐ de fángjiān zhǐ hǎo yòu dāng wòshì yòu dāng kètīng. 'Lao Li's and my room has to serve both as bedroom and sitting-room.'

12 The nominalizer *de*

- a Following on from 3.5 we see that *de* placed after a pronoun or adjective makes it into a noun:

Diànshì shì cǎisè de háishi hēi-bái de? 'It is a colour TV or (a) black and white (one)?'

Nán de sì suì. 'The boy (*Lit.* the male one) is 4.'

Xiǎoháir shì tā de. 'The child is his/hers.'

Thus *wǒ de* on its own means 'mine', *nǐ de* 'yours', etc.

- b Where an adjective and a noun form one idea, *de* is omitted:

Rèqíng zhāodài 'kind hospitality'.

Fǎwén zázhi 'French magazines'.

13 *Bù* verb *le*

The negated form of the change of state *le* (see 4.6) is *bù* verb . . . *le* which conveys the meaning that the subject (if there is one) no longer does the action of the verb or that the situation as stated by the verb is no longer the case:

Shíjiān bù zǎo le (*Lit.* time not early any more) 'It's getting late'.

Wǒ bù hē jiǔ le (*Lit.* I not drink wine any more) 'I've given up drinking'.

This is the only case in which *bù* can occur with *le*. Note that if the verb is *yǒu* then *méi* has to be used instead of *bù*:

Wǒ méi yǒu diànshì le 'I no longer have a TV'.

14 Auxiliary verbs

There are several examples of auxiliary verbs in the text, viz. *yuànyì*, *kěyǐ*, *yào*, *gāi* and *děi*. (We have already met *xǐhuan* and *xiǎng* in previous chapters.) These occur **before** action verbs or verbal expressions and cannot take verbal endings or verbal suffixes. Compare the seven examples below:

Wǒ yuànyì hē kāfēi 'I'm for coffee' (as opposed to anything else).

Wǒ xiǎng hē kāfēi 'I'd like some coffee' (now or in the near future).

Wǒ xǐhuan hē kāfēi 'I like (drinking) coffee' (permanent state of mind).

Wǒ yào hē kāfēi 'I want some coffee' (now or in the near future, expressing a stronger desire than *xiǎng*).

Wǒ (yīng)gāi hē kāfēi 'I ought to drink coffee' (it is less fattening, etc.).

Wǒ děi hē kāfēi 'I must drink coffee' (necessity).

Wǒ kěyǐ hē kāfēi 'I can drink coffee' (capability or permission).

For further information on auxiliary verbs see Chapter 12, pp.127–30.

15 Duō and shǎo + noun

Duō and *shǎo* are exceptions to the rule that monosyllabic adjectives directly precede their nouns or that when modified they must take *de*. They cannot stand on their own before the noun but occur with *hěn* and without *de*:

Hěn duō rén 'many people'.

Shǎo is more likely to occur with *bù* with the meaning of 'quite a lot of' or 'quite a few':

Bù shǎo máfan 'quite a lot of trouble'.

It is important to note, however, that Chinese usage differs from the English in that a sentence such as 'many people go/want' is much more likely to be expressed as *qù de rén hěn duō* rather than *hěn duō rén qù*, although both are grammatically correct.

16 Punctuation

In a list, even if it only consists of two items, e.g. *bīngxiāng*, *xǐyījī*, the Chinese use a form of pause-mark or *dùnhào* (、) between the items and not a comma. A comma is reserved for longer pauses.

i Polite talk

The Chinese have a whole series of expressions for almost every social occasion ranging from *Chī bǎo le ma?* 'Have you eaten your fill?' or *Chī fàn le ma?* 'Have you eaten?' to *Huí lái le ma?* 'Have you come back?'. You might only have gone out to pump up your bicycle tyres but are still asked if you are back when you return five minutes later! Such expressions serve as a means of phatic communion between individuals, giving a feeling of community at very little cost

to the individuals themselves. Mr King's little speech as he and Miss Scurfield are about to leave contains several typical examples of this 'polite talk' which we would consider as clichés but which appear very natural to the Chinese. *Gěi nǐmen tiān le bù shǎo máfan* is a wonderful example of this. *Màn* 'slow' features quite widely in polite talk with such exhortations as *Nǐmen màn mǎnr chī* 'Take your time (over eating)' if somebody has finished eating and he or the host does not wish the others to feel they have to follow suit. *Nǐmen màn mǎnr zuò ba* 'Sit slowly' you are told when the person you have come to see is nowhere to be seen and you are in for a long wait! When taking leave of somebody, the standard parting remark is 'go slowly' (usually repeated) *Màn zǒu, màn zǒu*. (If you are on your bicycle [or horse] it becomes *Màn qí, màn qí* 'Ride (astride) slowly!').

Exercise 5.3

Correct the word order in the following sentences:

Nǐ kàn diànshì zài zhèr → *Nǐ zài zhèr kàn diànshì*.

- 1 *Difang xiǎo, bīngxiāng, xǐyījī dōu zài zhèr fàng.*
- 2 *Xiǎoháir hē niú'nǎi* (milk) *zài chūfáng xiànzài.*
- 3 *Tā yuànyì qù zǎozāo.*
- 4 *Wǒ tiān le hěn duō máfan gěi nǐmen.*
- 5 *Lǐ lǎoshī* (teacher) *huí gāogāoxìngxíng de dàxué qu le.*
- 6 *Rén de wàimiàn dōu shì nán de.*

Exercise 5.4

Translate into colloquial English:

Jǐntiān wǎnshang xiǎoháir qù wǒ māma nàr (my mum's place).
Dìfang hěn dà, bīngxiāng, xǐyījī tā dōu yǒu. Háizi xǐhuan wánr,
wǒ māma yě xǐhuan dài (to take) *tāmen qù kàn diànyǐng* (film)
dànshi tā yòu méi yǒu qián (money) *yòu méi yǒu shíjiān; zhǐ hǎo*
ràng (let) *tāmen zài dà huāyuán* (garden) *lǐ wánr. Wánr wán le*
tāmen kěyǐ zuò zài chūfáng lǐ tán huà, chī fàn. Chī wán fàn
tāmen kěyǐ kàn (cǎisè) *diànshì*.

Exercise 5.5

Translate into Chinese:

- 1 My friend and I (5.9) would like to go to America (*Měiguó*).
- 2 Where is he watching TV? In the bedroom or in the sitting-room? (Leave out *lǐ*.)
- 3 Father (*Fùqīn*) says he doesn't recognize you any more.
- 4 (When) he got old, (he) (*jiù*) gave up drinking. (Use *jiù* in the second clause and change of state *le* in both clauses.)

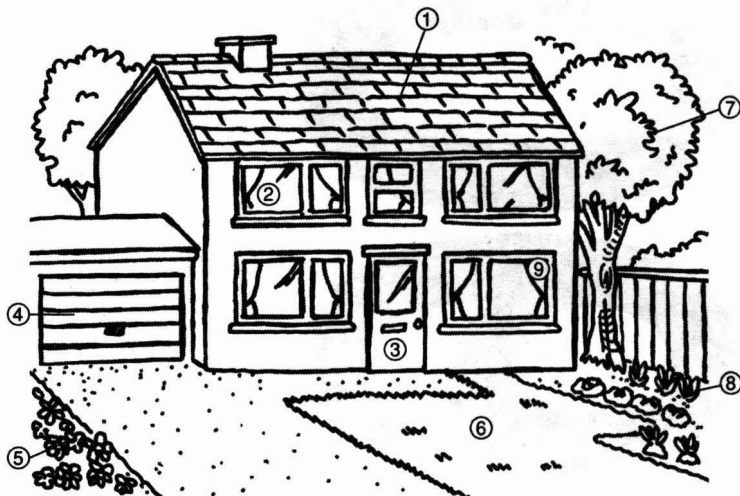
- 5 She likes teaching and studying. (Use *yòu* . . . *yòu* plus v-o constructions.)
- 6 He's no alternative but to stand (*zhàn*) there. (Use *zhǐ hǎo*.)
- 7 I'll finish decorating the living-room and then (*jiù*) quietly read a book.
- 8 Thank you for your wonderful hospitality. I'll certainly come again.

06

in the house

In this chapter you will learn

- how to describe the appearance of a house and garden in simple terms
- how to describe the furniture and appliances in each room
- how to describe the most common items in each room



- 1 roof
2 window
3 door
4 garage
5 flowers
6 garden

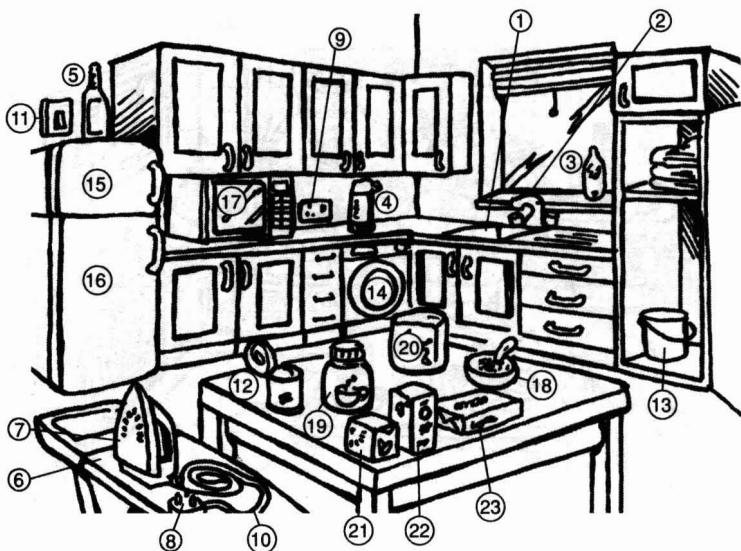
wūdǐng
chuānghu
mén
chēkù
huā [duǒ]
huāyuán

- 7 tree
8 vegetables
9 curtain
ground floor
first floor

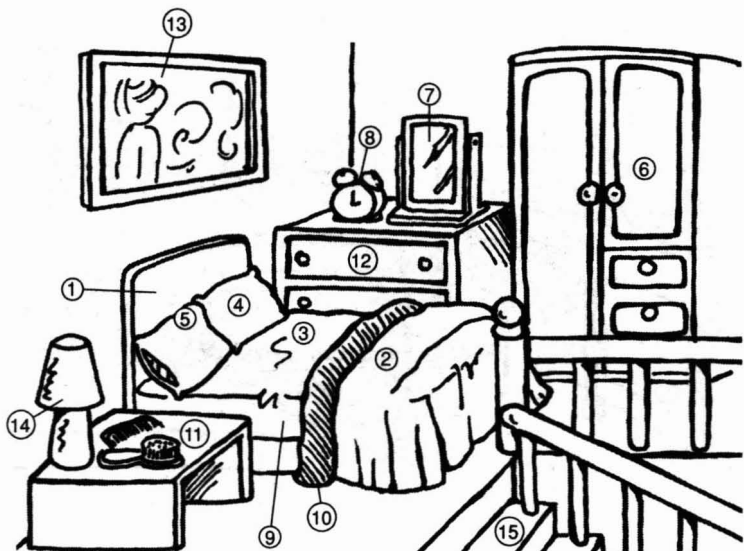
shù [kē]
shūcài
chuānglián
yìlóu
èrlóu



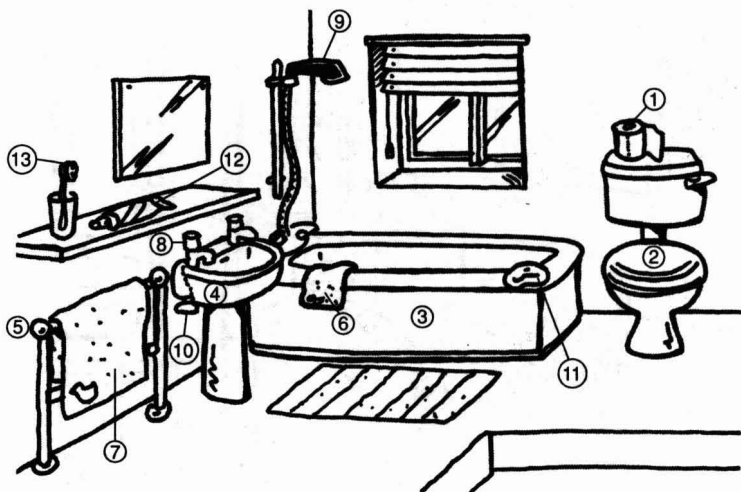
1 sofa	shāfā	18 radio	shōuyīnjī
2 chair	yǐzi [bǎ]	19 CD player	[tái, ge]
3 window	chuānghu	20 DVD player	guāngpán
4 curtain	chuānglián	21 coffee	bōfàngjī
5 carpet	dītǎn	table	shùzishipán
6 electric fan	diànshàn	22 table	bōfàngjī
7 picture	huà	23 knife	chájī
8 bookcase	shūjià	24 fork	[zhāng, ge]
9 vase	huāpíng	25 spoon	zhuōzi
10 dictionary	zìdiǎn [běn]	26 salt	[zhāng]
11 novel	xiǎoshuō	27 pepper	dāozǐ [bǎ]
12 book	shū [běn]	28 mustard	chāzǐ [bǎ]
13 telephone	diànhuà(jī)	29 glass	sháozi
14 television	diànshì(jī)	30 vinegar	yán
15 table lamp	táidēng	31 soya sauce	hújiāo
16 electric light	diàndēng	32 cup	jièmo
17 ashtray	yānhuīgāng	33 radiator	bōlibēi
		(central heating	cù
			jiàngyóu
			bēizi
			nuǎnqìpiàn
			nuǎnqì)



1 sink	<i>xǐwǎnchí,</i> <i>chízi</i>	12 tin/can	<i>guàntóu</i>
2 tap	<i>lóngtóu</i>	13 pail, bucket	<i>shuǐtǒng</i>
3 bottle	<i>píngzi</i>	14 washing machine	<i>xǐyījī</i> [<i>tái</i>]
4 Thermos flask	<i>rèshuǐpíng</i>	15 freezer	<i>bīngguì</i>
5 wine bottle	<i>jiǔpíng</i>	16 refrigerator	<i>bīngxiāng</i>
6 ironing board	<i>tàngyījià</i>	17 microwave oven	<i>wēibōlú</i>
7 iron	<i>yùndǒu</i>	18 sugar	<i>táng</i>
8 plug	<i>chātóu</i>	19 coffee	<i>kāfēi</i>
9 socket	<i>chāzuò</i>	20 flour	<i>miànfěn</i>
10 electric cable	<i>diànxiàn</i> [<i>gēn</i>]	21 Indian tea	<i>hóngchá</i>
11 switch	<i>kāiguān</i>	22 Chinese tea	<i>lǜchá</i>
		23 Jasmine tea	<i>huāchá</i>



- | | | | | | |
|---|--------------|---|----|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | double bed | shuāngrén-
chuáng
[zhāng]
(single bed,
dānrén-
chuáng) | 7 | mirror | jìngzi [kuài] |
| 2 | duvet, quilt | bèizi
[chuáng] | 8 | alarm clock | nàozhōng |
| 3 | sheet | chuángdān | 9 | mattress | chuángdiàn |
| 4 | pillow | zhěntou | 10 | blanket | tǎnzi [zhāng] |
| 5 | pillow case | zhěntào | 11 | brush or
comb | shūzi [bǎ] |
| 6 | wardrobe | yīguì | 12 | chest of
drawers | wǔdǒuchú,
wǔdǒuguì |
| | | | 13 | picture | huà [zhāng] |
| | | | 14 | table lamp | táidēng |
| | | | 15 | stairs, staircase | lóutī |

bathroom, *xǐzǎojiān* or *yùshì*

1	toilet paper	<i>wèishēngzhǐ</i> [juǎn]	7	bath towel	<i>yùjīn, dà máojīn</i> [kuài]
2	toilet	<i>cèsuǒ</i>	8	tap	<i>lóngtóu</i>
3	bath	<i>xǐzǎopén, yùpén</i>	9	shower	(<i>lín yù</i>) <i>pēntóu</i>
4	washbasin	<i>xǐliǎnpén</i>	10	plug	<i>sāizi</i>
5	towel rail	<i>máojīnjià</i>	11	toilet soap	<i>xiāngzào</i> [kuài]
6	face flannel	<i>miànjīn, máojīn</i> [kuài]	12	toothpaste	<i>yágāo</i> [tǒng]
			13	toothbrush	<i>yáshuā</i> [bǎ]

Although an increasing number of Chinese possess some modern appliances, some of the washing machines, showers, toilets and such like that you will see in less affluent homes, hotels or work units definitely belong to another era.

07

my family

In this chapter you will learn

- how to talk about yourself and your family
- how to say how old you are
- how to compare and contrast

▶ Zhang Zhanyi is an attendant at the Beijing Hotel. In this lesson he introduces himself and his family:

Wǒ jiào Zhāng Zhànyī. / Wǒ jiā zài Běijīng. / Wǒ jiā yǒu wǔ kǒu rén /—
My name is Zhang Zhanyi. / My home is in Beijing. / There are 5
people in my family /—

bàba、māma、gēge、jiějie hé wǒ. / Wǒ méi yǒu dìdì, yě méi yǒu
mèimei. /

Mum, Dad, an elder brother, an elder sister and me. / I haven't got
any younger brothers or sisters. /

Wǒ jiějie sānshí suì, hái méi yǒu zhǎo dào duìxiàng ne (= hái méi
yǒu jié hūn ne),

My elder sister is 30 and still hasn't got a steady boyfriend (i.e. is still
unmarried),

zhè zhǒng qíngkuàng zài Zhōngguó hěn shǎo. / Gēge bǐ jiějie xiǎo
liǎng suì,

this is very unusual in China. / My brother is 2 years younger than my
sister,

bǐ wǒ dà yí suì bàn. /

but 1¹/₂ years older than me. /

Bàba、māma niánjì bǐjiào dà le. / Bàba jīnnián liùshíyī suì, shì (yí) ge
lǎo jiàoyuán,

Mum and Dad are getting on a bit. / Dad is 61 this year, he has been
a teacher for many years,

zài Běijīng Yǔyán Xuéyuán jiāo wàiguó liúxuéshēng Hànyǔ. /

and teaches foreign students Chinese at the Beijing Languages
Institute.* /

Māma bǐ bàba xiǎo sān suì, yǐqián shì ge gōngrén,

Mum is 3 years younger than Dad, she used to be a (factory) worker
xiànzài yǐjīng tuìxiū le. / Tāmen liǎ shēntǐ fēicháng hǎo. /

but she's (already) retired now. / They are both in excellent health. /

Jiějie zài yīyuàn dāng yīshēng, gēge zài bùduì dāng bīng,

My sister is a doctor in a hospital, my elder brother is in the army,

suǒyǐ tāmen bù cháng(cháng) zài jiā. /

so they are not at home very much. /

Wǒ zài Běijīng Fàndiàn dāng fúwùyuán, gōngzuò yǒu yìdiǎn(r)
dāndiào

I am an attendant at the Beijing Hotel, my work is a bit monotonous

dànshi wǒ hé tóngshìmen de guānxi hěn hǎo, suǒyǐ hái guò de qù. /

but my workmates and I all get along very well so it's not too bad. /

Wǒmen yì jiā rén gǎnqíng yě dōu hěn hǎo, rìzi guò de hái búcuò! /

We're a very close family too, so life is pretty good on the whole! /

* Now known as Běijīng Yǔyán Dàxué (Beijing Language [and
Culture] University).

jiào (v)	<i>to be called, to call</i>
kǒu (MW)	<i>for family members</i>
bàba (n)	<i>daddy, dad</i>
māma (n)	<i>mummy, mum</i>
gēge (n)	<i>elder brother</i>
jiějie (n)	<i>elder sister</i>
dìdi (n)	<i>younger brother</i>
mèimei (n)	<i>younger sister</i>
zhǎo (v)	<i>to look for</i>
-dào (RVE)	<i>to manage to do the action of the verb, up to</i>
zhǒng (MW)	<i>sort, kind</i>
qíngkuàng (n)	<i>situation</i>
bǐ (prep.)	<i>compared with</i>
dà (adj.)	<i>big, grown up</i>
bàn (num)	<i>half</i>
niánjì (n)	<i>age</i>
bǐjiào (adv.)	<i>relatively</i>
jīnnián (TW)	<i>this year</i>
jiàoyuán (n)	<i>teacher (as a profession, not a title)</i>
Běijīng Yǔyán Xuéyuàn* (N)	<i>Beijing Languages Institute*</i>
jiāo (v)	<i>to teach</i>
wàiguó (adj., n)	<i>foreign (country)</i>
liúxuéshēng (n)	<i>student studying abroad</i>
yǐqián (adv., conj.)	<i>previously, before</i>
gōngrén (n)	<i>worker</i>
xiànzài (TW)	<i>now, at present</i>
yǐjīng (adv.)	<i>already</i>
tuìxiū (v)	<i>to retire</i>
shēntǐ (n)	<i>health, body</i>
yīyuàn (n)	<i>hospital</i>
yīshēng (n)	<i>doctor (as a profession, not a title)</i>
bùduì (n)	<i>army</i>
bīng (n)	<i>soldier</i>
cháng (cháng) (adv.)	<i>often</i>
Běijīng Fàndiàn (N)	<i>Beijing Hotel</i>
fúwùyuán (n)	<i>attendant</i>
gōngzuò (n, v)	<i>work, to work</i>
dāndiào (adj.)	<i>monotonous, dull</i>
tóngshì (n)	<i>colleague, fellow worker</i>
guānxi (n)	<i>relation(ship)</i>
hái (adv.)	<i>still, in addition</i>
gǎnqíng (n)	<i>feeling, emotion</i>
rìzi (n)	<i>day, date</i>

* Běijīng Yǔyán Xuéyuàn is now known as Běijīng Yǔyán Dàxué (Beijing Language [and Culture] University).

Grammar

1 More on names

A Chinese wishing to know your name can either ask for your surname *Nǐ xìng shénme?* (*Lit.* You surnamed what?) ‘What is your surname?’, to which the reply is *Wǒ xìng Zhāng/Lǐ/Wáng*, etc. or for your given name, which in the reply is almost invariably prefaced by the surname. Thus *Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi?* (*Lit.* You called what given name) ‘What is your name?’ normally elicits the response *Wǒ jiào* or *Wǒ (de) míngzi jiào* Surname (one character) + given name (normally two characters though single ones do exist).

2 ‘Mum and dad’ or ‘Dad and mum’?

Note the word order of the following: *bàba* precedes *māma*, *gēge* precedes *jiějie* and *dìdi* precedes *mèimei*.

3 Use of *yě*

Yě joins two verbal clauses here and although its basic meaning remains unchanged it may be translated as ‘either’ or ‘and’ when used in this way. The example from the text: *Wǒ méi yǒu dìdi yě méi yǒu mèimei* could also have read *Wǒ méi yǒu dìdi hé mèimei*. (NB *hé* can only join two noun constructions or pronouns). To an English speaker the latter appears neater but the Chinese seem to like the construction with *yě* and use it frequently:

Wǒ jiāo Yīngyǔ, yě jiāo Fǎyǔ ‘I teach English and French’ although *Wǒ jiāo Yīngyǔ hé Fǎyǔ* would be equally correct.

Note that when *dōu* and *yě* occur together *yě* always precedes *dōu*. (See the example in the text.)

4 *Hái méi yǒu . . . ne*

Méi yǒu (*Lit.* not have) precedes the verb to indicate that the action of the verb has not taken place. *Yǒu* may be omitted:

Tā méi (yǒu) jié hūn ‘He/she isn’t/hasn’t married’.

The addition of *hái* before *méi* and *ne* at the end of the clause convey the idea that the situation is ongoing, thus in:

Wǒ jiějie . . . *hái méi yǒu zhǎo dào duìxiàng ne*

the expectation appears to be that she will or that at least she's still in with a chance!

5 The comparative with *bǐ*

The simplest form of comparative is A *bǐ* B + appropriate adjective:

Gēge *bǐ* jiějie *xiǎo* (Lit. Elder brother/compared with/elder sister/small)
'Elder brother is younger than elder sister.'

Gēge *bǐ* wǒ *dà* (Lit. Elder brother/compared with/me/big)
'Elder brother is older than me.'

The amount by which B is older or younger than A comes after *dà* or *xiǎo*:

Gēge *bǐ* jiějie *xiǎo liǎng suì* 'Elder brother is two years younger than elder sister.'

Gēge *bǐ* wǒ *dà yí suì bàn* 'Elder brother is 1½ years older than me.'

Exercise 7.1

Make each of the two statements below into one comparative sentence using *bǐ*:

Wǒ sānshí suì.
Wǒ péngyou èrshíliù suì. } → Wǒ *bǐ* wǒ péngyou *dà sì suì*.

1 Èrzi shísì suì.

Nǚ'ér jiǔ suì.

2 Jiějie sānshíwǔ suì.

Mèimei èrshíjiǔ suì.

3 Shǐ Àilǐ èrshíyī suì.

Wáng Yǒngshòu èrshísān suì.

4 Lǐ tàitai sìshíqī suì.

Lǐ xiānsheng wúshí suì.

5 Zhōngguó chá hǎo hē.

Zhōngguó jiǔ bù hǎo hē.

6 Zhōngguó cài hǎo chī.

Yīngguó cài bù hǎo chī.

7 Tā de shēntǐ hǎo.

Nǐ de shēntǐ bù hǎo.

8 Wǒ nán péngyou gāoxìng.

Wǒ bù gāoxìng.

6 *Dà* and *xiǎo*

With the basic meaning 'big' and 'small', respectively, *dà* and *xiǎo* are used here to express age, usually in the comparative sense even if this is not explicit. When asking a child her/his age the question form *Nǐ jǐ suì le?* is used but for adults it is:

Nǐ niánjì duō dà le? (Lit. You/year record/how/big!) or
Nǐ duō dà niánjì le? (Lit. You/how/big/year record!)

the modal particle *le* being used to convey the idea that the record of years has become big. *Duō* is used in a similar way with other adjectives such as *cháng* 'long', *kuān* 'wide' to ask the degree of length, width, etc. and is translated as 'how' in such cases as above: *Duō cháng?* 'How long?' Other compounds with *dà* and *xiǎo* are: *dàrén* (big person) 'adult'; *dàxué* (big study) 'university'; *xiǎoxué* (small study) 'primary school'; *dàjiā* (big home) 'everybody'. NB *xiǎorén* (small person) 'a mean person'! As a verb, *dà* conveys the idea of growing up:

Háizi dà le 'The child(ren) has/have grown up' (Lit. got big).

When stating that an adult is old or young in absolute terms then the adjectives *lǎo* (old) and *niánqīng* (years light) are used not *dà* and *xiǎo*.

7 Yi + measure word

When *yi* occurs with a measure word in the spoken language, the *yi* is often omitted:

Wǒ yǒu (yí) ge hǎo tóngshì 'I have a good colleague!
Bāba . . . shì (yí) ge lǎo jiàoyuán 'Dad's been a teacher for many years.'

8 Job + *yuán*

In post-1949 China many job descriptions were changed to convey a greater sense of equality. *-yuán* was added to the end of the description to indicate the person engaged in such an activity, e.g. *jiàoyuán* (teach/person) 'teacher'; *fúwùyuan* (serve/person) 'attendant'; *shòuhuòyuán* (sell/goods/person) 'shop assistant'; *shòupiàoyuán* (sell/ticket/person) 'bus conductor, booking office clerk, box-office clerk'. *Yuán* also has the meaning of 'member', e.g. *dǎngyuán* 'party member'.

9 Indirect object before direct object

This basically follows English usage:

Bàba . . . zài Běijīng Yǔyán Xuéyuàn jiāo wàiguó liúxuéshēng
 (I.O) *Hànyú* (D.O).

10 Sentence final particle *le*

Although used in the same position as the change of state *le* (see 4.6), i.e. at the end of a sentence, this *le* indicates that a certain state of affairs has already taken place. Some people call this the accomplished fact *le*. *Māma . . . xiànzài yǐjīng tuìxiū le*. Even the Chinese find it difficult to use *le* consistently so any pointers are invaluable. One such is that *le* is almost invariably found at the end of a clause with *yǐjīng* 'already' as in the example taken from the text. The question form is made by adding *ma* to the statement ending with *le* or by adding *méi yǒu* after it:

<i>Māma tuìxiū le ma?</i>	} 'Has mum retired?'
<i>Māma tuìxiū le méi you?*</i>	
<i>Māma tuìxiū méi tuìxiū?</i> is also possible.	

(Light stress only on *méi* with *yǒu* becoming toneless.)

* This is identical to the choice-type question form found in 1.5 except that the verb is not repeated. *Yǒu* is never omitted in this type of question form. The negative form is made with *méi yǒu* + verb where *yǒu* may be omitted.

<i>Māma méi yǒu tuìxiū.</i>	} 'Mum hasn't retired.'
<i>Māma méi tuìxiū.</i>	

11 More on the topic construction

In the two sentences

Tāmen liǎ shēntǐ fēicháng hǎo (Lit. [As for] they/two/body/ extremely/good) and

Wǒmen yì jiā rén gǎnqíng yě dōu hěn hǎo (Lit. [As for] our/one/ family/people/feelings/also/all/very/good)

both *tāmen liǎ* and *wǒmen yì jiā rén* are acting as topics, the subject of the two sentences being *shēntǐ* and *gǎnqíng* respectively. The direct object can also be emphasized by putting it at the beginning of the sentence as a topic which is often 'resumed' with *dōu* before the verb. In this case, *dōu* refers back to the object and not to the subject. Note that *dōu* can never refer to a direct object which follows the verb:

Bīngxiāng, xǐyījī wǒ dōu yǒu (Lit. [As for] fridge/wash clothes machine/I/both/have) 'I've got a fridge and a washing machine'.

As was said in 2.5 this is a favourite construction of the Chinese with its own distinctive flavour.

12 *Yǒu yìdiǎn(r) + adjective*

‘A little + adjective’. When the adjective used conveys a negative or derogatory sense, even if this is only subjective on the part of the speaker, then *yǒu yìdiǎn(r)* is put in front of the adjective. If no such sense is implied then the order is adjective + *yìdiǎn(r)*:

Rè yìdiǎn(r) hǎo. ‘A bit hotter would be better.’

Yǒu yìdiǎn(r) rè. ‘It’s a bit on the hot side.’

13 Potential resultative verbs

(For resultative verbs see 5.1.) A potential result is indicated by the insertion of *de* for the positive form (‘can’) and *bu* for the negative form (‘cannot’) between the verb of action and its resultative ending:

Guò qu ‘to pass’ (as of one’s days), *guò de qù* ‘able to pass’, *guò bu qù* ‘unable to pass’; *kànjiàn* ‘to see’; *kàn de jiàn* ‘can see’, *kàn bu jiàn* ‘can’t see’.

The question form can either be made by adding *ma* to the positive form of the statement or by putting the positive and negative forms together as in 1.5:

<i>Tā zhǎo de dào zhǎo bu dào duìxiàng?</i>	} Can he/she find a
<i>Tā zhǎo de dào duìxiàng ma?</i>		} marriage partner?

(Note that the tone comes back onto simple directional endings and onto the first ‘half’ of compound directional endings when they form part of a potential resultative verb.)

14 *Yī + noun*

In this context *yi + noun* conveys the idea of ‘all’, ‘whole’:

Yī jiā rén ‘the entire family’, *yì shēn hàn* (*Lit.* all/body/sweat) ‘covered in perspiration’,

yì liǎn hóng (*Lit.* whole/face/red) ‘blush to the roots’, etc.

i More polite talk

A whole series of conventional formulae used to exist in pre-1949 China for asking and replying to such questions as one's name, the state and well being of one's wife and children (note wife not husband!), etc., even one's house was elevated to the rank of 'mansion' when its whereabouts were being ascertained! Perhaps the most common of these formulae is the question *Nín guì xìng?* (*Lit.* Your/expensive/surname), often translated as 'Your honourable surname, sir?' The correct response used to be *Bǐ xìng* (*Lit.* Miserable/humble surname) whatever it was. The question form is still quite widely used today but not the response. One may also be asked about one's 'expensive country' *guì guó* or one's 'expensive school' *guì xiào*! Such terms are commonly employed in letters for instance, where the language tends to be less idiomatic and more literary in style.

Brothers and sisters

A Chinese will always tell you whether his brother or sister is younger or older than himself by using the appropriate term. If he simply wishes to tell you that there are X number of sisters in the family without specifying how many are older and how many are younger he can simply use the term *jiěmèi* combining half of *jiějie* with half of *mèimei*, but this does imply that there is at least one of each. (An alternative to *jiěmèi* is *zǐmèi*.) Similarly there is a collective term for brothers, *xiōngdì*, although in this case a more literary term for elder brother is employed. Oriental inscrutability comes into play in that *xiōngdì* is equally acceptable as *dìxiōng* but *mèijiě* and *mèizǐ* are incorrect. Members of the congregation in the Chinese Protestant Church often refer to themselves as *dìxiōng*, *zǐmèi*.

Exercise 7.2

Fill in the blanks with the number supplied in the brackets:

Zhāng xiānsheng yǒu ____ *ge jiějie* (3) → *Zhāng xiānsheng yǒu sān ge jiějie*.

- 1 *Shǐ xiǎojie yǒu* ____ *ge gēge hé* ____ *ge mèimei*. (2, 1)
- 2 *Wǒ dìdi* ____ *sui*. (27)
- 3 *Lǎo jiàoyuán* ____ *sui, shēntǐ hěn hǎo*. (80)
- 4 *Zhè ge gōngrén bǐ nà ge gōngrén xiǎo* ____ *sui*. (5)
- 5 *Tā àiren bǐ ta māma dà* ____ *sui*. (4)
- 6 ____ *ge fúwùyuán zài Běijīng Fàndiàn gōngzuò*. (99)
- 7 *Nà ge yīshēng hē* ____ *bēi jiǔ hé* ____ *bēi kāfēi*. (6, 2)

Exercise 7.3

Answer the following questions on the text:

- 1 Zhāng Zhànyī de jiā zài nǎr?
- 2 Tā jiā yǒu jǐ kǒu rén?
- 3 Tā yǒu méi yǒu dìdì, mèimei?
- 4 Tā jiějie jié hūn le méi you?
- 5 Tā gēge duō dà niánjì le?
- 6 Zhāng Zhànyī niánjì duō dà le?
- 7 Tā bàba zài nǎr jiāo Hànyǔ?
- 8 Tā jiāo shéi Hànyǔ?
- 9 Tā māma bǐ bàba dà ma? Māma niánjì duō dà le? Hái gōngzuò ma?
- 10 Tāmen liǎ shēntǐ zěnmeyàng?
- 11 Zhāng Zhànyī dāng gōngrén ma?
- 12 Tā de gōngzuò guò de qù guò bu qù?
- 13 Tāmen yì jiā rén gǎnqíng hǎo háishi bù hǎo?

Exercise 7.4

Translate the following passages into colloquial English:

- 1 Wǒ jiějie èrshíjiǔ suì, hái méi yǒu jié hūn ne. Tā zài Shànghǎi dāng yīshēng. Tā hěn xīhuan tā de gōngzuò. Wǒ māma shuō tā yīnggāi jié hūn, yí ge nǚ hái zi bù jié hūn bù xíng. Wǒ jiějie shuō, wǎn yìdiǎn(r) jié hūn méi yǒu guānxi dànshi wǒ māma bù tóngyì (agree).
- 2 Zhōu Gēngxīn shì Tiānjīn rén. Tā shì ge gōngrén. Tā jiā yǒu sì kǒu rén – bàba, māma, dìdì hé tā. Dìdì èrshíyī suì, bǐ tā xiǎo yí suì bàn. Dìdì zài Běijīng Dàxué xuéxí Yīngyǔ. Zhōu Gēngxīn yě xuéxí Yīngyǔ dànshi tā xuéxí de shíjiān hěn shǎo, suǒyǐ tā Yīngyǔ hěn bù hǎo.

Exercise 7.5

Translate into Chinese:

- 1 What's your name? My name is Shi Aili.
- 2 She has neither brothers nor sisters.
- 3 I invited two Chinese friends to come to my house for dinner (*wǎnfàn* 'late rice') tomorrow evening.
- 4 That chap (3)/studying Chinese (2)/at the Beijing Language University (1)/hasn't come yet. (Follow the word order indicated. Link 2 and 3 with *de*.)
- 5 My friend is twenty-eight but she is still unmarried.
- 6 Has that American doctor in Shanghai already retired?
- 7 That British girl (3)/studying Chinese (2)/at Beijing University (1)/is a fantastic cook. (Use complement of degree.)

- 8 My wife and her two younger sisters are very close.
- 9 Many Chinese speak English really well.
- 10 My girlfriend is one year older than I am but two years younger than my elder brother.
- 11 That person is not very nice so I haven't invited him for a drink.
- 12 We haven't got a washing machine or a colour TV but we still manage all right. (Use the topic construction with *dōu*.)

08 my home

In this chapter you will learn

- how to describe your living conditions
- more about directional endings
- how to use the conjunctions *before, when* and *after*
- how to say where places and things are

▶ Zhang Zhanyi describes his family's living conditions.

Wǒmen zhùde hěn jiǎndān, zhǐ yǒu sān jiān fáng jiā shàng chúfáng
We live very simply, we only have three rooms plus kitchen
hé cèsuǒ. / Fùmǔ de wòshì tóngshí yě dāng kètīng. /
and toilet. / My parents' bedroom also serves as the living-room. /

Wǒ hé gēge shuì(zài) yí ge fángjiān, wǒmen měi (ge) rén (dōu) yǒu
My elder brother and I sleep in one room, we each have
yí zhāng shūzhuō, zài nàr dú shū zǒng(shì) bǐ zài kètīng lǐ ānjìng de
duō. /

a desk, it's always much quieter studying there than in the
living-room. /

Jiějie de fángjiān bǐ wǒmen xiōngdì liǎ de nà jiān hái xiǎo,
My elder sister's room is even smaller than my brother's and mine,
zhǐ fàng de xià yí zhāng chuáng, yí zhāng xiǎo xiǎo de zhuōzi hé yí bǎ
yǐzi. /

it can only hold a bed, a tiny table and a chair. /

Wǒmen xiōngdì, zǐmèi cānjiā gōngzuò yǐhòu, chúle xiūxi nà tiān
yǐwài,

After my brothers and sister and I started working, we're not at home
hěn shǎo zài jiā, suǒyǐ zhù de méi yǒu yìqián nàme jǐ, fùmǔ yě bǐ
very much, apart from our day off, so we're not as cramped as we
used to be,

yìqián zhù de shūfu yìxiē. /

and my parents are also somewhat more comfortable. /

Wǒ xiǎng zài Xīfāng yìbān zhùfáng bǐ wǒmen dà xiē. / Nǐmen chúle
I think accommodation in the West is generally more spacious than
ours. / Apart

wòshì yǐwài hái yǒu kètīng, yǒude yǒu shūfáng, yǒude hái yǒu
from the bedroom(s), you also have a living-room, some people have
a study, others have a dining-room too

fàntīng, tīngshuō yǒu huāyuán de yě hěn duō. /

and there are also many with gardens. /

Wǒmen jiā jiājù bù duō, kètīng lǐ yǒu yí zhāng shuāngrénchuáng,
yí ge

We haven't got much furniture in our house, there's a double bed, a
shāfā, yí ge yīguì, yí tái diànshì(jī). / Hái yǒu yí tào zǔhéyīnxiǎng,
settee, a wardrobe and a TV in the living-room. / There is also a hi-fi
shì Riběn huò. / Fénggrènjī shì guóchǎn huò. /

which is Japanese. / The sewing-machine is made here (in China). /

Chī fàn de shíhou, dà yuánzhuō hé yǐzi dōu bān jìn lai. / Dōngtiān
We bring in the big round table and chairs when we eat. / In winter
tiānqì lěng de shíhou, dānwèi gěi wǒmen shāo nuǎnqì. / Suǐrán nǐmen

when the weather is cold, the (work) unit turns on the central heating.
/ Although

fādá guójiā gōngzī bǐ wǒmen gāo de duō, dànshi wǒmen
wages in (your) advanced countries are much higher than ours, our
fángzū, shuǐdiànfèi děng dōu bǐ nǐmen piányi duō le. /
rents, water and electricity charges, etc. are all much cheaper than
yours. /

Wǒmen jiā dìfang bú dà, kěshì àn Zhōngguó xiànzài de biāozhǔn,
Our home is quite small, but by present Chinese standards
wǒmen guò de hái búcuò. /
we're doing pretty well.

jiǎndān (adj.)	<i>simple</i>
jiā (shang) (v)	<i>to add</i>
fùmǔ (n)	<i>parents</i>
tóngshí (TW)	<i>at the same time</i>
shuì(jiào) (v[-o])	<i>to sleep, go to bed</i>
měi (p./adj.)	<i>each, every</i>
shūzhuō (n) [zhāng]	<i>desk</i>
nàr	<i>there</i>
zǒng(shì) (adv.)	<i>always</i>
xiōngdì (n)	<i>brothers</i>
-xià (RVE)	<i>have the capacity to</i>
chuáng (n) [zhāng]	<i>bed</i>
zhuōzi (n) [zhāng]	<i>table</i>
yǐzi (n) [bǎ]	<i>chair</i>
zǐmèi (n)	<i>sisters</i>
cānjiā (v)	<i>to join; attend, take part in</i>
yǐhòu (conj.; adv.)	<i>after; afterwards</i>
chúle (. . . yǐwài)	<i>except, apart from</i>
xiūxi (v)	<i>to rest</i>
tiān (n)	<i>day; sky, heaven</i>
zhù (v)	<i>to live (in, at)</i>
jǐ (adv.; v)	<i>crowded; to squeeze</i>
shūfu (adj.)	<i>comfortable</i>
(yì)xiē (adv; MW)	<i>somewhat; some, a few</i>
Xīfāng (n)	<i>the West</i>
yìbān (adv.; adj.)	<i>generally; general</i>
zhùfáng (n)	<i>housing, accommodation</i>
yǒude (p.)	<i>some</i>
shūfáng (n)	<i>study</i>
tīngshuō (v)	<i>be told, hear of</i>
jiājù (n)	<i>furniture</i>

shuāngrén-chuáng (n) [zhang]	<i>double bed</i>
zǔhényīnxiǎng (n) [tào]	<i>hi-fi</i>
Rìběn (N)	<i>Japan</i>
huò (n)	<i>goods</i>
féng rèn jī (n) [tái]	<i>sewing-machine</i>
guóchǎn (adj.)	<i>made in one's country</i>
... de shíhou	<i>when ...</i>
yuán (adj.)	<i>round</i>
bān (v)	<i>to (re)move</i>
-jīnlai (CDE)	<i>verb + in (See 8.9)</i>
dōngtiān (n)	<i>winter</i>
tiānqì (n)	<i>weather</i>
lěng (adj.)	<i>cold</i>
dānwèi (n)	<i>unit</i>
shāo (v)	<i>to burn</i>
suīrán ... dànshi	<i>although</i>
fādá (adj.)	<i>developed; advanced</i>
guójiā (n)	<i>country</i>
gōngzī (n)	<i>wages</i>
fángzū (n)	<i>rent</i>
shuǐdiànfèi (n)	<i>water and electricity charges</i>
děng (n)	<i>etc.</i>
piányi (adj.)	<i>cheap</i>
kěshì (conj.)	<i>but</i>
àn (zhào) (prep.)	<i>according to, on the basis of</i>
biāozhǔn (n; adj.)	<i>criterion, standard</i>

Grammar

1 Order of adverbs

Where more than one adverb precedes the same verb a definite word order has to be observed (see 4.4 and 7.3). Generally speaking it is the monosyllabic adverb (*yě*, *dōu*, *jiù*, etc.) which directly precedes the verb, but if it occurs with *bù* or *méi* the order is:

(adverb +) monosyllabic adverb + *bù/méi* + verb.
Wǒmen yě dōu bú qù 'None of us is going either'
Tāmen jiù méi lái 'So they didn't come'

Thus *tóngshí* precedes *yě* in: *Fùmǔ de wòshì tóngshí yě dāng kètīng*.

2 Měi ... (dōu)

One of the ways of expressing 'each, every' in Chinese is by using the pronoun *měi*. There is usually a measure word between *měi* and its noun but this may be omitted when the noun is *rén*. *Tiān* 'day' and *nián* 'year' act as measure words as well as nouns and therefore directly follow *měi*. The sentence with *měi* is often reinforced by the adverb *dōu* before the verb. In such cases *dōu* refers back to *měi*+noun which may or may not be the subject of the sentence:

Měi zhāng zhuōzi 'every table'.

Měi ge rén or *měi rén* 'everybody'.

Měi tiān 'every day'.

Měi bǎ yǐzi dōu hěn shūfu 'every chair/all the chairs is/are very comfortable'.

Tā měi tiān wǎnshàng dōu qù 'He goes every evening'.

3 More on the comparative

When we wish to extend the simple comparative (see 7.5) to denote 'much more' or 'even more' the constructions are as follows:

A *bǐ* B + appropriate adjective *de duō* (complement of degree *de*, see 4.8). Or A *bǐ* B + appropriate adjective *duō le*.

e.g. A *bǐ* B *hǎo de duō* or *hǎo duō le* means 'A is much better than B'.

The first example of this in the text is:

zài nàr dú shū zǒng(shì) bǐ zài kètīng lǐ ānjìng de duō (at/there/ study/books/always/compared with/at/sitting-room in/quiet/much). 'It's always much quieter studying there than in the living-room.'

When we wish to say that A is 'even more' or 'still more' the quality of the adjective than B, the construction is:

A *bǐ* B *hái* (or *gèng*) + adjective.

e.g. A *bǐ* B *hái hǎo* means 'A is even better than B'. The adverb *hái* has the basic meaning of 'still, in addition'. In this context it has the same meaning as the adverb *gèng* 'still more, even more'.

Jiějie de fángjiān bǐ wǒmen xiōngdì liǎ de nà jiān hái xiǎo (Lit. elder sister/room/compared with/we/brothers/two/ that room/even more/small) 'Elder sister's room is even smaller than my

brother's and mine'. Note that *hěn* 'very' can never be used in the comparative.

When we wish to say that 'A is up to B's standard of whatever the adjective is' then the construction is:

A *yǒu* B (*nàme/zhème*) adjective 'A is as adjective as B'.

Zhè tài zǔhéyīnxiǎng yǒu nà tái nàme piányi 'This hi-fi is as cheap as that one'. The negative form, which is used more frequently, depicts an inferior degree, i.e. that A is not up to B's standard of tallness, goodness, etc. See text:

suǒyǐ zhù de méi yǒu yǐqián (zhù de understood) nàme jǐ (Lit. therefore/live/ /not/have/previousy(live)/so/crowded) 'so we're not as crowded as we used to be'. *Yǒu* may be omitted in the negative form.

4 *Yǐhòu, yǐqián, de shíhou*

Yǐhòu 'after', *yǐqián* 'before' and *de shíhou* 'when' occur at the end of the clause to which they refer, the reverse of English word order:

xiūxi yǐhòu 'after having a rest'.

shuì jiào yǐqián 'before going to bed'.

dōngtiān tiānqì lěng de shíhou 'when the weather is cold in winter'.

It is common practice for the subject not to appear until the following clause although there is no fixed rule about this:

Shàng cèsuǒ de shíhou wǒmen bù yīnggāi chī fàn. (Lit. get on/toilet/when/we/not/ought to/) 'We ought not to be eating when we go to the toilet.' Note that *yǐqián* and *yǐhòu* can also act as adverbs with the meanings 'previously' and 'afterwards', respectively and as such they precede the verb.

Wǒ xiànzài qù, tā yǐhòu qù. 'I'm going now, she's going later'.

5 *Tiān* and *nián*

As we mentioned in 8.2, *tiān* and *nián* act as measure words as well as nouns so that they directly follow numbers and demonstrative adjectives such as *zhè* 'this', *nà* 'that', *nǎ* 'which?' and *měi* 'every':

nà tiān 'that day'.

yì nián 'one year'.

liǎng tiān 'two days'.

6 (Yì)xiē

When it occurs after an adjective, (yì)xiē (the yì may be omitted) has the meaning 'somewhat'. It usually appears in comparative sentences when used in this way as in the two examples from the text:

Fùmǔ yě bǐ yǐqián zhù de shūfu (yì)xiē (Lit. parents/also/compared with/previously/live/comfortable/somewhat) 'Father and mother are also somewhat more comfortable than they used to be.'

Wǒ xiǎng zài Xīfāng yìbān zhùfáng bǐ wǒmen dà xiē (Lit. I think/in/West/generally/accommodation/compared with/us/big/somewhat) 'I think that accommodation in the West is generally somewhat more spacious than ours'.

Yìxiē has another more important function as a plural measure word meaning 'some, a few':

yìxiē fādá guójiā 'some developed countries'. The yì is sometimes omitted, particularly after the verb *yǒu*:

yǒu xiē rén 'there are some people . . .' When used with *zhè*, *nà* or *nǎ* the yì is dropped and we have *zhè xiē*, *nà xiē* or *nǎ xiē* which mean 'these', 'those' or 'which(ones)', respectively. As *xiē* is in itself a measure word they are used directly before a noun:

Zhè xiē Lúndūnrén 'These Londoners'.

Nà xiē Nünyuērén 'Those New Yorkers'.

Nǎ xiē Riběnrén? 'Which Japanese?'

NB *Zhè*, *nà* and *nǎ* are also read as *zhèi*, *nèi* and *něi* respectively.

7 Yǒude

Yǒude 'some' + noun (or noun understood) may occur once, twice or even three times in a sentence:

Yǒude yǒu shūfáng, yǒude hái yǒu fàntīng (Lit. Some/have/book room/some/in addition/have/rice-room).

Wǒ de shū hěn duō, yǒude yǒu yìsi yǒude méi yǒu yìsi (Lit. My/books/very/many/some/have/meaning/some/not/have/meaning) 'I've got lots of books, some are very interesting, some aren't.'

Yǒu(de) rén xǐhuan kàn shū, yǒu(de) rén xǐhuan kàn diànshì, yǒu(de) rén xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng (Lit. Some/people/like/read/book/some/people/like/watch/TV/some/people/like/watch/

electric shadow) 'Some people like reading, some people like watching TV, while others like watching films'. (Note that when *yǒude* occurs with *rén*, the *de* may be omitted.)

Generally speaking *yǒude* + noun cannot be put in the object position. We cannot say *Wǒ bù xǐhuan yǒude shū*, the topic construction has to be used instead: *Yǒude shū wǒ bù xǐhuan* 'There are some books I don't like.'

8 X yǒu Y

Besides meaning 'to have' *yǒu* also means 'there is, there are'. The construction is normally word or phrase indicating position + *yǒu* + Noun or Nominal Phrase i.e. (*zài*) X *yǒu* Y 'there is/are Y at X'.

Lúndūn yǒu bù shǎo gōngyuán (Lit. London has not few public enclosures) 'There are quite a few parks in London'.

Zài 'at, in' is often omitted when the adverbial word or phrase of place occurs at the beginning of a clause or sentence. Of course, the sentence above could also be translated as 'London has quite a few parks', the omission of *zài* making such an interpretation possible but it is important to understand how such sentences function grammatically otherwise it is easy to come unstuck when more precision is required as in the following example taken from the text:

Kètīng lǐ yǒu yì zhāng shuāngrénchuáng, yí ge shāfā... (Lit. Guest-room inside/have/1/MW/pair people bed/1/MW/sofa...). In this case *yǒu* has to be translated by 'there is' and not by 'have'.

9 Compound directional endings

In 5.1 we met the (simple) directional markers *lái* and *qù* which indicate direction towards or away from the speaker or point of reference. Compound directional endings show even greater precision and are formed by combining verbs such as *jìn* 'to enter', *chū* 'to come or go out' with *lái* or *qù* and attaching them to verbs of motion. Thus where in English we would say 'He came running in', the Chinese for this would be *Tā pǎo jìnlái le*, (Lit. He/run/enter/come/), 'we came running out', *wǒmen pǎo chūlái le*, 'they went running in' *tāmen pǎo jìnqu le*, etc. There is a good example of this construction in the text: ... *dà yuánzhuō hé yǐzi dōu bān jìnlái* (Lit. Big/round table/and/ chair(s)/all/move/enter/come) (speaker is in the living-room).

NB Verbs with a compound directional ending (CDE) are often written as one word, e.g. *pǎochulai* and as such **both** parts of the CDE are usually indicated as toneless. For the sake of clarity I have split the verb and its CDE as above and indicated the tone on the first half of the CDE.

Where there is an object involved, this may go between the two parts of the compound directional ending or follow it:

Wǒ ná chū yīfu lai or *Wǒ ná chūlai yīfu* 'I take out clothes' (*ná* 'to take' [with the hand]).

Where there is a place-word involved, this may **only** go between the two parts of the compound directional ending:

... *dà yuánzhuō hé yǐzi dōu bān jìn kètīng lai* 'the big round table and chairs are all moved into the living-room'.

Tāmen pǎo chū huāyuán qu 'They run/ran out of the garden'. For further examples of this construction see Chapter 12, p.127.

Exercise 8.1

Make a sentence from the following groups of words using the compound directional ending indicated in brackets.

Yīshēng zǒu yīyuàn (jìnqu) → *Yīshēng zǒu jìn yīyuàn qu*.

- 1 *Fùmǔ zǒu kètīng (jìnlai)*.
- 2 *Tāmen bān shūzhuō (chūqu)*.
- 3 *Xiōngdì bān shuāngrénchuáng (jìnqu)*.
- 4 *Xiǎoháir pǎo cèsuǒ (chūlai)*.
- 5 *Jiàoyuán ná liǎng běn shū* (books) (*xiàlai* 'down', direction towards speaker).

10 Voice

The sentence from the text given in 8.9, *dà yuánzhuō hé yǐzi dōu bān jìnlai* appears to suggest that the table and chairs are moving themselves insofar as no other subject is present. This is a reflection of the fact that Chinese verbs in themselves are neither active nor passive but that it is the **context** which makes them one or the other.

11 *Zhuōzi* but *shūzhuō*

In 3.9 we saw that modern Chinese is becoming increasingly disyllabic and one feature of this is that some nouns which were

originally monosyllabic such as *zhuō*, *bēi*, *yǐ*, *píng* have become disyllabic by the addition of a 'fill-in' *zi* to become *zhuōzi* 'table', *bēizi* 'cup', *yǐzi* 'chair', *píngzi* 'bottle'. Other examples we have met are *érzi* 'son' and *háizi* 'child'. Another device to satisfy this need for disyllables is to repeat the original sound to give disyllabic nouns such as *gēge* 'elder brother', *dìdì* 'younger brother', *jiějie* 'elder sister', *mèimei* 'younger sister', etc. As soon as a noun becomes disyllabic in its own right then the *zi* or the reduplication is no longer necessary. Examples are: *shūzhuō* 'desk', *yuánzhuō* 'round table', *jiǔbēi* 'wine-glass', *dàgē* 'eldest brother' and *dàjiě* 'eldest sister'.

12 *Suīrán* . . . *dànshi*

Many conjunctions in Chinese occur in pairs as in *suīrán* 'although' . . . *dànshi* 'but'. . . . There are many more which we shall meet as we progress through the book. Sometimes one of the pair, usually the first, is omitted. The last sentence of the text could well have started with a *suīrán* but it is obviously stylistically clumsy to have two consecutive sentences beginning in the same way so it has been omitted. Note that *kěshì* and *dànshi* 'but' are interchangeable.

i The three wheels and the four machines

Until recent times it was the aspiration of every Chinese household to own at least one each of the 'three wheels' *sān lún*: 'sewing-machine' *féngrènjī*, 'wristwatch' *shǒubiǎo* and 'bicycle' *zìxíngchē*. Once the standard of living started rising the 'three wheels' were replaced by the 'four machines' *sì jī* which were initially: *diànshìjī* 'TV', *féngrènjī* 'sewing-machine', *shōuyīnjī* 'radio' and *xǐyījī* 'washing machine'. These were in turn replaced by the 'four big items' *sì dà jiàn* (MW): *diànshìjī* 'TV', *xǐyījī* 'washing machine', *lùxiàngjī* 'video recorder' and *diànnǎo* 'computer'. Even this term is no longer in general use. At one point in the not so distant past Chinese brides would demand '48 legs' *sìshíhā tiáo tuǐ* in their dowries, not more than four of which could belong to chairs! (Washing machines and televisions would count as having four legs a piece.) Now an apartment (or a house) and a car are what are wanted. The Chinese language is particularly suited to creating new idioms such as these.

As it is a language rich in homophones it also lends itself to punning which is a popular form of Chinese humour. Thus Mr King's given name in Chinese, *yǒngshòu*, means 'eternal' *yǒng*, 'longevity' *shòu*,

but could also mean 'forever skinny' as the adjective for 'thin' has exactly the same pronunciation and tone as the noun for 'longevity'! (But of course they are two totally different characters.)

The 'unit'

The term **dānwèi** usually refers to one's work unit which plays a much more important role in daily life than in the West. It is normally 'the unit' which provides its employees with housing, organizes excursions, provides them with cinema and theatre tickets, sometimes has its own holiday accommodation, buys essential train tickets, and even decides when the central heating should go on and off. Official forms almost always require you to state your work unit which, in a sense, is part of your identity, and without which everyday living is made more difficult.

Exercise 8.2

Answer the following questions on the text:

- 1 Zhāng Zhànyī de jiā yǒu jǐ jiān fáng?
- 2 Zhè bāokuò (include) bu bāokuò chufáng hé cèsuǒ?
- 3 Tā fùmǔ shuì zài nǎr?
- 4 Tā hé shéi (who) shuì yí ge fángjiān?
- 5 Tāmen xiōngdì de fángjiān dà háishi jiějie de fángjiān dà?
- 6 Jiějie de fángjiān fàng de xià shénme jiājù?
- 7 Tāmen xiōngdì, zǐmèi chángcháng zài jiā ma?
- 8 Shuāngrénchuáng zài nǎr?
- 9 Zúhéyīnxiǎng shì bu shì Yīngguóhuò?
- 10 Chúle chī fàn de shíhou yǐwài, dà yuánzhuō hé yǐzi dōu zài kètīng lǐ ma?
- 11 Zhōngguó fángzū, shuǐdiànfèi piányi háishi fādá guójiā piányi?
- 12 Àn Zhōngguó xiànzài de biāozhǔn Zhāng Zhànyī hé tā yì jiā rén guò de zěnmeyàng?

Exercise 8.3

Can you correct the following bīngjù?

Sì diǎn zhōng bú jiù xíng → Sì diǎn zhōng jiù bù xíng.

- 1 Měi fādá guójiā, fángzū dōu hěn guì (expensive).
- 2 Zhōngguó rén hǎo, Yīngguó rén dōu yě hěn hǎo.
- 3 Féngrenjī bù yǒu zúhéyīnxiǎng nàme guì.
- 4 Yìqián shuì jiào, yīnggāi shuā yá (brush teeth).
- 5 Tā nà ge tiān xiūxi le.
- 6 Wǒ bú yuànyì xǐ yōude yīfu (clothes).

- 7 *Fúwùyuan pǎo fāndiàn jìn lai.*
- 8 *Yìxiē ge Rìběnrén gōngzī hěn gāo.*
- 9 *Sūgélán (Scotland) bǐ Měiguó ānjìng de hěn duō.*
- 10 *De shíhou tiānqì hǎo, yào hǎohāo wán(r).*

Exercise 8.4

Translate the following passage into colloquial English.

Nǐ zìjǐ de fángjiān zěnmeyàng? Jiājù duō bu duo? Chule yì zhāng chuáng yǐwài nǐ hái yǒu shénme jiājù? Zǔhényīnxiǎng, xǐyījī, diànshìjī dōu yǒu ma? Bīngxiāng ne? Nǐ xiànzài zhù de bǐ yìqián shūfū yìxiē ma? Nǐ de gōngzī gāo bu gāo? Fángzū, shuǐdiànfèi guì bu guì? Shéi gěi nǐ shāo nuǎnqì? Yíding bú shì nǐ de dānwèi ba? Nǐ guò de hái hǎo ma? (Wǒ) Xīwàng (hope) nǐ guò de hěn hǎo!

Exercise 8.5

Translate the following into Chinese:

- 1 There are a table and six chairs in the dining room.
- 2 Although it's generally very quiet in a study, many people do not possess one.
- 3 When the weather is cold, everybody likes the central heating on.
- 4 When your wages are high, (1)/it doesn't matter (3)/(if) water and electricity charges are high too (2)/.
- 5 On the basis of existing criteria, Britain counts as (*suàn*) an advanced country.
- 6 It is not every sofa (which) is comfortable to sit on (*hǎo zuò*).
- 7 Hi-fis are not as expensive (*guì*) as they used to be.
- 8 The parents didn't go yesterday (*zuótiān*), my eldest sister and I are not going today either.
- 9 (A) single bed (*dānrénchuáng*) is even cheaper than a double one.
- 10 What else is there(3)/in life (1)/apart from eating (2)/?
- 11 Before (you) have a rest, please help (*bāngzhù*) me move the wardrobe out.
- 12 Although all (the) windows, doors (*mén*), etc. are very clean (*gānjìng*), (the) tables (and) chairs are all filthy (*zāng*).

60

hotels

In this chapter you will learn

- **breakfast vocabulary for when you stay in a Chinese hotel**
- **how to ask people if they have ever done something**
- **how to use question words in a non-question way**

Zhang Zhanyi talks about Chinese hotels:

Běijīng de lǚguǎn dānrénfángjiān tèbié shǎo. / Duōshù shì shuāngrénfángjiān. /

Single rooms in Beijing hotels are few and far between. / Most are double rooms. /

Yàoshi nǐ yuànyì yí ge rén zhù shuāngrén fángjiān, dāngrán yě kěyǐ, dànshi wǎngwǎng yào fù shuāngrénfángjiān de fángfèi. /
but you usually have to pay for a double. /

Wàiguó zhuānjiā hé liúxuéshēng píng gōngzuòzhèng huò (zhě) xuéshēngzhèng, píngcháng kěyǐ xiāngshòu yōudài. /
Foreign experts and students can often enjoy preferential treatment on the strength of their (employer's) ID or student cards. /

Zhù wàibīn de dà bùfen fángjiān dōu bāokuò yùshì hé cèsuǒ. / Yùshì lǐ yǒu yùpén hé línyù pēntóu, yě dōu yǒu máojīn, yùjīn, féizào, wèishēngzhǐ, bōlibēi děng. /
Most of the rooms allocated to foreign guests include (a) bathroom and toilet. / The bathrooms have bath and shower and are also all equipped with towels, bath towels, soap, toilet paper, glasses etc. /

Měi ge fángjiān lǐ dōu yǒu diànhuà, diànshì, rèshuǐpíng, cháyè, chábēi, liáng kāishuǐ shénmede. /
Every room has a telephone, a TV, a Thermos, tea, teacups, cold boiled water and so on. /
(Dà)duōshù zhù wǒmen fàndiàn de wàibīn zǎoshang chī Xīcān. /
The (great) majority of foreign guests in our hotel eat Western food in the mornings. /

Yǒude rén xiǎng yòng Hànyǔ dìng cài. / Nín yǐqián jiànguo
Some people would like to order in Chinese. / Have you ever seen

Zhōngwén càidān méi you? / Rúguǒ méi jiànguo de huà, jiù kànkan kèwén xiàbian de càidān ba. / Fúwùyuán cóngqián yòng suànpan suàn zhàng, dànshi xiànzài yòng jìsuànjī de yuè lái yuè duō le. /
a Chinese menu before? / If you haven't, then take a look at the one below the text. / Hotel staff used to use an abacus to work out bills but more and more of them are now using calculators. /

Běijīng de fàndiàn hěn duō. / Chule chéng qiān shàng wàn de yóukè yǐwài, yí bùfen wàiguó gōngsī de dàibiǎo (jí shāngrén) yě zhù fàndiàn, suǒyǐ fàndiàn de shēngyì (i.e. business people) yě zhù fàndiàn, suǒyǐ fàndiàn de shēngyì (i.e. business people) also live in hotels, so business (for the hotels)

zǒngshì hěn búcuò de. / Jiàqián què yuè lái yuè guì le,
is always very good indeed. / Prices (in hotels) are becoming
érqiě fúwù、shèbèi hái bù yíding gēn de shàng. /
increasingly expensive, however, and the service and facilities
(offered) cannot necessarily still keep pace (with them). /

Wǒ zài Běijīng Fàndiàn gōngzuò, jiēchùguo de wàiguórén
I work in the Beijing Hotel and have come into contact with
hěn duō. / Wǒmen Zhōngguórén bùdé bù chéngrèn tāmen zài
many foreigners. / We Chinese have to admit that in certain respects
mǒu xiē fāngmiàn xiǎngshòu yíding de tèquán, jíshǐ zhè xiē
they enjoy definite privileges, even if these are sometimes
tèquán yǒu (de) shíhou zhǐ xiànyú suǐshí dōu kěyǐ jìn
merely confined to being able to go into a hotel at any time
fàndiàn shàng cèsuǒ! / Qíshí shéi yòngguo Zhōngguó gōnggòng
and use the toilet! / Actually anybody who has used public toilets
cèsuǒ, shéi dōu huì tóngqíng tāmen zhè zhǒng zuòfǎ de! /
in China will sympathize with their doing this! /

Zǎocān Càidān

Breakfast Menu

Shuǐguǒzhī (*júzhī、fānqízhī*)

Fruit juice (orange juice, tomato juice)

Jīdàn (*chǎojīdàn、zhǔjīdàn、jiānjīdàn、wòjīdàn*)

Eggs (scrambled, boiled, fried or poached)

Huǒtuǐ

Ham (*Lit.* fire leg)

Kǎomiànbāo

Toast (*Lit.* roast bread)

Huángyóu

Butter (*Lit.* yellow oil)

Guǒjiàng

Jam

Suān (niú)nǎi

Yoghurt (*Lit.* sour milk)

Kāfēi、hóngchá、rè (niú)nǎi、kěkě

Coffee, tea (*Lit.* red tea), hot milk, cocoa

wàibīn (n)	foreign guest, visitor
lǚguǎn (n)	hotel
dānrénfángjiān (n)	single room
tèbié (adv.; adj.)	especially, special
duōshù (n)	majority
yàoshi (conj.)	if
dāngrán (adv.)	of course, naturally
wǎngwǎng (adv.)	more often than not; frequently
fù (v)	to pay
shuāngrénfángjiān (n)	double room
fáng-fèi (n)	room charge
zhuānjiā (n)	expert, specialist
píng (v)	to rely on, to depend on
gōngzuòzhèng (n)	(employee's) ID card
huò(zhě) (conj.; adv.)	or; perhaps
xuéshēngzhèng (n)	student card
píngcháng (adv.; adj.)	usually; ordinary, commonplace
xiǎngshòu (v; n)	to enjoy rights, etc.; treat
yōudài (n)	preferential treatment
bùfen (n)	part, section
bāokuò (v)	to include
máojīn (n) [tiáo]	towel
yùjīn (n) [tiáo]	bath-towel
féizào (n) [kuài]	soap
wèishēngzhǐ (n) [juǎn]	toilet paper
chá-yè (n)	tea(-leaves)
chá-bēi (n)	teacup
kāishuǐ (n)	boiled water
shénmede	and so on
zǎoshang (TW)	morning
Xīcān (n)	Western food
dīng (v)	to order (in advance)
jiàn (v)	to see; to meet
-guo	verbal suffix (see 9.2)
Zhōngwén (n)	Chinese language (usually written form)
càidān (n)	menu
rúguǒ ... (de huà), jiù	if ... then
kèwén (n) [kè]	text
xiàbianr (PW)	under(neath), below
cóngqián (adv.)	previously, in the past
suànpan (n)	abacus
suàn zhàng (v-o)	to make/work out the bill (fig. 'settle accounts')

jìsuànjī (n) [jià]	calculating machine; computer
yuè lái yuè	more and more
chéng qiān shàng wàn	thousands and thousands
yóukè (n)	tourist, sightseer
xiāngdāng (adv.)	quite (a bit)
gōngsī (n)	company
dàibiǎo (n)	representative
jí (adv.)	that is, viz.
shāngrén (n)	business person
shēngyì (n)	business
jiàqián (n)	price
què (adv.)	however
guì (adj.)	expensive
érgǐě (conj.)	moreover
fúwù (n; v)	service; to serve
shèbèi (n)	equipment, facilities
gēn-shang (RV)	to keep pace with
jiēchù (v)	to come into contact with
bùdé bù	cannot but, have to
chéngrèn (v)	to admit
mǒu (adj.)	certain
fāngmiàn (n)	aspect, respect
tèquán (n)	privilege
jíshǐ (conj.)	even if, even though
yǒu (de) shíhou	sometimes
xiànyú (v)	to be confined to
suíshí (adv.)	at any time
jìn (v)	to enter
shàng cèsuǒ (v-o)	to go to the toilet
qíshí (adv.)	actually, as a matter of fact
shéi (QW)	who? (also read <i>shuí</i>)
gōnggòng (adj.)	public
huì (aux. v.)	will (showing possibility)
tóngqíng (v)	to sympathize with
zuòfǎ (n)	way of doing something

Grammar

1 Huò(zhě)

Huò(zhě) 'or' is used to link statements or pronouns and nouns whereas *háishi* 'or' (see 5.2) is used to link questions:

Wàiguó zhuānjiā huò(zhě) liúxuésihēng píng gōngzuòzhèng huò(zhě) xuésihēngzhèng . . . (Lit. Outside country/special family/or/stay student/lean on/work proof/or/student proof . . .).

Wǒ xǐhuan kàn bào huòzhě kàn xiǎoshuō. (Lit. I/like/read/newspaper/or/read/small talk) 'I like reading the newspaper or novels'. *Huòzhě* is used more in spoken Chinese whereas *huò* is more formal.

2 Verbal suffix *-guo*

In Chapter 5 we met *guò* as a verb meaning 'to pass' or 'to cross'. Put **after** the verb it indicates that something happened in the indefinite past, i.e. it emphasizes a past experience and not completion as with verb + *le* (see 3.4):

Wǒ chīguo Yīndù fàn. 'I've eaten Indian food' (at some time or other). The negative is formed by putting *méi* before the verb but the *-guo* is retained as there is no idea of completion or non-completion as with the verbal suffix *-le*:

Wǒ méi qùguo hěnduō guójiā. 'I haven't visited many countries.' (General statement about past experience).

Wǒ méi qù hěnduō guójiā. 'I didn't visit many countries' (on one specific occasion, e.g. last year). Adverbs such as *yǐqián*, *cónglái* 'hither to' often appear before the negated verb to emphasize the idea of never having done the action of the verb:

Wǒ cónglái méi chīguo Yìdàlì fàn. 'I've never eaten Italian food.' The question form is made by adding *ma* to the statement or by adding *méi you* after it:

Nín yǐqián jiànguō Zhōngwén càidān ma?
Nín yǐqián jiànguō Zhōngwén càidān méi you? }

'Have you ever seen a Chinese menu before?' (Note the *pinyin* convention always shows *guo* attached to the verb.)

3 Zhōngwén, Hànyǔ and pǔtōnghuà

Zhōngwén and *Hànyǔ* can both be translated as 'the Chinese language'. *Zhōngwén* is used more in connection with the written language whereas *Hànyǔ* (the language of the Han people, China's largest nationality) is used more for the spoken language. The Chinese language has eight major dialects but of

the Chinese-speaking population, about 70% speak the northern dialect which is why it has been made the basis of *pǔtōnghuà*, 'the common spoken language' which is the *lingua franca* for the whole of China.

4 *Rúguǒ* ... (*de huà*), *jiù* ...

As we said in 8.12 many conjunctions occur in pairs and here is another example of this, *Rúguǒ* ... (*de huà*), *jiù* ... , 'If ... , then ...':

Rúguǒ tā bù lái (de huà), wǒ jiù bú qù. 'If she doesn't come, I won't go.' ... *de huà* conveys the flavour of 'assuming that X is the case' (*tā bù lái*), then Y (*wǒ bú qù*). In the example from the text we have:

Rúguǒ méi jiànguò de huà, jiù kànkan kèwén xiàbian de càidān ba. (Lit. If/not/seen/assuming/then/look look//text/below/dish list//). In this construction, *rúguǒ* may be replaced by *yàoshi* which also means 'if' and is usually regarded as being the more colloquial of the two:

Yàoshi méi yǒu dānrénfángjiān, wǒ jiù zhù shuāngrénfángjiān ba. 'If there are no single rooms, then I'll have a double.' *Yàoshi* or *rúguǒ* may sometimes be omitted and in such cases it is the *jiù* (and the context) which convey the conditional flavour. It is important to be aware of the existence of these 'hidden if' sentences as they can influence the meaning a great deal.

5 *Cóngqián* and *yǐqián*

Both *cóngqián* and *yǐqián* can act as moveable adverbs or time words meaning 'previously', 'in the past'. They normally occur before the verb and after the subject but they can be placed at the beginning of the sentence for extra emphasis:

Fúwùyuán cóngqián yòng suànpan suàn zhàng (Lit. Attendants/ in the past/use/calculate tray/calculate/bill). There is no sense of completed action or emphasis of a past experience, so no verbal suffix *-le* or *-guo* is required. The idea of the past tense is conveyed by using *cóngqián*. As we know from 8.4, *yǐqián* can also act as a conjunction, occurring at the end of the clause to which it refers; *cóngqián* cannot be used in this way. We can say *suàn zhàng yǐqián*, 'before making out the bill', but we cannot say *suàn zhàng cóngqián*.

6 Yuè lái yuè + adjective

This construction is relatively easy to use if you remember the basic formula that to express 'more and more of the adjective' is:

yuè lái yuè + adjective:

Shēngyì yuè lái yuè hǎo 'Business gets better and better'.

Yòng jìsuànjī de yuè lái yuè duō le. } Change of state *le*
Jiàqián què yuè lái yuè guì le. } in both cases.

If you wish to convey ideas such as 'the quicker the better' then the construction *yuè* adjective/verb *yuè* adjective/verb is used:

Yuè kuài yuè hǎo. 'The quicker the better'.

Wǒ yuè chī yuè pàng (le). 'The more I eat the fatter I get'. But

Wǒ yuè lái yuè pàng (le). 'I'm getting fatter and fatter'.

7 More on de

Apart from being able to nominalize a pronoun or adjective (see 5.12) and link two nouns (see 3.5), *de* may also be used to link quite complex clauses to their nouns. Again it is important to stress that it is the **main idea** which comes after *de*:

Zhù wàibīn de lǚguǎn (Lit. live/foreign guest/travel establishment).

Zhù wàibīn de dà bùfēn fángjiān (Lit. live/foreign guest/ /big part/rooms). NB *dà bùfēn* is one idea, therefore no *de*.

Chéng qiān shàng wàn de yóukè (Lit. become/thousand(s)/go up/ten thousand(s)//travelling guest).

Yí bùfēn wàiguó gōngsī de dàibiǎo (Lit. one/part/foreign/ company//representative).

8 The double negative

Whereas in English the double negative is generally avoided, it is used quite freely in Chinese:

Bú qù bù xíng (Lit. Not/go/not/be all right) 'There is no alternative but to go.'

Wǒmen Zhōngguó rén bù dé bù chéngrèn (Lit. We/China/people/ may not/not/admit).

9 Mǒu

Mǒu is used with a measure word before a noun to indicate 'a certain':

mǒu zhǒng qíngkuàng 'a certain situation'.

mǒu xiē shāngrén 'certain business people'.

zài mǒu xiē fāngmiàn 'in certain respects'.

When *mǒu* is repeated before a title such as *xiānsheng*, etc. it takes on the meaning of 'so-and-so'. No measure word is required in this case:

mǒumǒu xiānsheng 'Mr So-and-So'.

mǒumǒu xiǎojie 'Miss So-and-So'.

10 Question words used in a non-question way

- i Question words such as *shéi* (*shuí*), *shénme*, *nǎ* and *nǎr* can be used in a non-question way to mean 'anybody', 'anything', 'any' and 'anywhere':

Wǒ bú qù nǎr. 'I'm not going anywhere'. (In response to *Nǐ qù nǎr?*, it seems, in addition, to convey a slight feeling of unwillingness to communicate with the questioner!)

- ii Only *jǐ* and *duōshao* can be used in the affirmative, to indicate 'several' and 'an indefinite number' respectively:

Tāmen yǒu jǐ běn Zhōngwén shū. 'They have several Chinese books.'

In this case, intonation and context tell the listener whether they are being used as question words or not.

- iii Question words can also be used to indicate inclusiveness in the affirmative, but exclusiveness in the negative. *Dōu* or *yě* must be added before the verb to reinforce this sense of inclusiveness or exclusiveness:

Shéi dōu bú suàn (*Lit.* Who/all/not/count) 'Nobody counts'.

In this construction, the direct object is moved to a position before the verb (but after the subject):

Wǒ shénme yě bú zuò (*Lit.* I/what/also/not/do) 'I'm not doing anything'.

Tā nǎr dōu qù (*Lit.* He/where/all/go) 'He goes everywhere'.

(Note that *jǐ* and *duōshao* cannot be used in this way.)

- iv Such concepts as 'whatever (one likes)', 'whoever (one likes)', 'wherever (one likes)' are expressed by repeating the question word and the verb in a second clause and putting *jiù* before the repeated verb in the second clause:

Nǐ yào qǐng shéi, nǐ jiù qǐng shéi (Lit. You/want/invite/who/you/then/invite/who) 'Invite whoever you like'.

Wǒmen yào mǎi shénme, wǒmen jiù mǎi shénme (Lit. We/want/buy/what/we/then/buy/what) 'We buy whatever we like'.

- v *Zěnmē*, 'how?' put before the verb roughly translates as 'no matter how' or 'to what degree'. *Dōu* or *yě* must be put before the verb in the following clause. *Bù zěnmē* + adjective translates as 'not particularly' + adjective:

Nà ge xuésheng hěn rènzhēn ('conscientious'). *Tiānqì zěnmē lěng, tā dōu lái shàng kè.* (v-o attend class) 'That student is very conscientious. He comes to class no matter how cold it is'.

Tā bù zěnmē niánqīng le. 'She's no longer particularly young'.

11 *Huì... de*

The principal meaning of *huì* is 'to know how to (do), can' (Chapter 2), but it can also express the possibility or probability that something will happen and is translated as 'will': *Huì xià yǔ* (Lit. will/descend/rain) 'It will rain' or 'It's going to rain'. The addition of the modal particle *de* to such sentences introduces a note of affirmation or confirmation as well as slightly shifting the balance and rhythm of the sentence as a whole. Used in this way, it is generally to be found with such verbs as *huì*, *yào*, *shì*, etc. *Tā huì lái de.* 'He will come'. It is important to stress that *de* is not essential to the sentence but is used widely.

12 Degrees of 'muchness' (in ascending order)

(hěn)hǎo	'(very) good'
tǐng hǎo	'quite/rather good'
xiāngdāng hǎo	'quite/rather good'
shífēn hǎo	'very/rather good' (Lit. ten parts/good)
fēicháng hǎo	'extremely good'
hǎo jí le	'extremely good'
zuì hǎo	'the best'.

In some ways the order is a little arbitrary but it will at least give you some idea.

Exercise 9.1

True or false?

- 1 Běijīng de lǚguǎn yí ge rén zhù yí ge fángjiān bù kěyǐ.
- 2 Wàiguó zhuānjiā píng xuéshēngzhèng, píngcháng kěyǐ xiǎngshòu yōudài.
- 3 Zhù wàibīn de dà bùfen fángjiān lǐ dōu yǒu diànshì hé diànhuà.
- 4 Duōshù zhù fàndiàn de wàibīn zǎoshang chī Zhōngcān.
- 5 Fúwùyuán yíqián yòng suànpan suàn zhàng, xiànzài yòng de yuè lái yuè shǎo le.
- 6 Méi yǒu shāngrén zhù fàndiàn.
- 7 Fàndiàn de shēngyì fēicháng hǎo dànshi fángfèi yuè lái yuè piányi le.
- 8 Suīrán zhù fàndiàn de jiàqián yuè lái yuè guì le dànshi fúwù, shèbèi bù yíding gēn de shàng.
- 9 Zhōngguó rén bù dé bù chéngrèn zài Zhōngguó de wàiguó rén méi yǒu tèquán.
- 10 Zhōngguó gōnggòng cèsuǒ yìbān bù zěnme hǎo.

Exercise 9.2

Fill in the blanks using the words given above each passage. Each word can only be used once.

Huòzhě bù cóngqián shuǐguǒzhī jiù shuì jiào kěkě háishi zěnme

- a Zǎoshang nǐ xǐhuan chī Xīcān ____ chī Zhōngcān? Wǒ xǐhuan chī Xīcān, hē _____. ____ yíqián wǒ xǐhuan hē rè niú'nǎi _____. Wǒ ____ bù ____ xǐhuan hē kěkě, xiànzài hěn xǐhuan. Rúguǒ ràng (have somebody do something) wǒ wǎnshang hē kāfēi, wǒ ____ bù hē. Wǒ bùdé ____ chéngrèn, wǎnshang hē kāfēi shuì bu hǎo jiào.

suīrán dōu jiù zěnme tǐng mǒu nǎr

- b Wǒ hěn xǐhuan wǒ gēge. Tā qù nǎr, wǒ ____ qù _____. Tā ____ huópo (lively). ____ tā zhǐ shísi suì, dànshi zài ____ xié fāngmiàn tā xiàng (resemble) (yí) ge dàren. Tiānqì ____ lěng, tā ____ qù gěi bàba, māma mǎi dōngxi (v-o, buy things).

i 'Documents with everything'

In addition to the normal array of ID cards and passes of one sort or another, letters of introduction from one's work unit for example (or from one's embassy for foreigners) can be extremely useful in

booking accommodation, securing tickets of various kinds, obtaining leave of absence and so on. It is probably true to say that headed notepaper with an official-looking stamp goes a long way in China! On the other hand, under certain (unspecified) circumstances, the Chinese can be *amazingly* flexible!

Exercise 9.3

Correct the word-order in the following sentences:

- 1 *Rúguǒ méi yǒu càidān, jiù wǒ bù kěyǐ dìng cài.*
- 2 *Nǐmen méi zhùguo lǚguǎn cóngqián.*
- 3 *Fādá guójiā shēnghuó yuè nán (difficult) yuè lái.*
- 4 *Suàn zhàng yòng jìsuànjī hěn fāngbiàn (convenient) yǒu shíhou.*
- 5 *Chéng qiān de shàng wàn yóukè qù yóulǎn Chángchéng (visit the Great Wall) měi nián.*
- 6 *Jīntiān bú è le. Shénme wǒ bù xiǎng chī yě.*
- 7 *Tā nà ge rén jǐle hǎo, tā shuō zěnme tiānqì lěng, dōu méi guānxi.*

Exercise 9.4

Translate the following passages into colloquial English:

- 1 *Zhōngguó rén hěn xǐhuan yòng rèshuǐpíng, yīnwèi (because) tāmen yìbān hěn xǐhuan hē chá. Dà bùfen Zhōngguó rén bǐjiào xǐhuan hē lǜ chá dànshi yǒude shíhou hē hóng chá yě kěyǐ. Hē hóng chá de shíhou dàduōshù Zhōngguó rén yào jiā niú nǎi hé táng (sugar).*
- 2 *Bēizi yǒu hěn duō zhǒng. Yǒu chábēi, yǒu kāfēibēi, yǒu bōlibēi, yě yǒu jiǔbēi. Píngzi yě shì yíyàng (the same) de. Yǒu huāpíng (vase), yǒu nǎipíng (milk bottle), yě yǒu rèshuǐpíng.*

Exercise 9.5

Translate the following into Chinese:

- 1 There's no yoghurt left. You can have either hot milk or cold (use *liáng*) milk.
- 2 Have you ever been to the Great Wall? Thousands of tourists go every year to visit (it).
- 3 If there's no toilet paper, it's very inconvenient (*bù fāngbiàn*) to go to the lavatory.
- 4 Everybody ought to enjoy the same rights (*quánlì*).
- 5 We have to admit that Swiss (*Ruìshì*) chocolate (*qiǎokèlì*) is excellent.
- 6 If you want to use a calculator to work out the bill, then go ahead.

- 7 Whom are you inviting to dinner tonight? I'm not inviting anyone.
- 8 (The) texts are becoming increasingly difficult.
- 9 As a matter of fact her way of doing things is the best.
- 10 That person living in (a) double room (use *de*), is a businessman from Tokyo (*Dōngjīng*).
- 11 Although it's raining, he says he will come.
- 12 In the past (*guòqù*) there were relatively few foreign company representatives in China, but they are now becoming more and more numerous.

10

weather, dates and seasons

In this chapter you will learn

- about the weather and seasons in Beijing
- what Chinese people do when the weather is fine or when it is freezing
- how to say that something is happening
- the months of the year
- the days of the week
- how to express the duration of something

Zhang Zhanyi gives his views on Beijing's climate and describes recreational activities in the capital.

Jìnnián Běijīng de tiānqì hěn bú zhèngcháng. / Dōngtiān bù
The weather in Beijing has been very odd this year. / The winter
lěng, xiàtiān yě bú rè. / Yīnggāi xià xuě de shíhou bìng
has not been cold nor has the summer been hot. / When it should have
méi yǒu xià, yīnggāi xià yǔ de shíhou yě méi yǒu xià – zhēn
snowed it didn't, and when it should have rained it hasn't – it's
qíguài! /
really strange! /

Shì bu shì zhènggè shìjiè de qìhòu zhèngzài biàn ne? /
Is it because the climate of the entire world is in the process of
Ōuzhōu píngcháng méi yǒu Běijīng nàme lěng dànshì
changing? / Europe is usually not as cold as Beijing, but
jìnnián fǎn'ér yōude shíhou bǐ Běijīng hái lěng. /
this year on the contrary it has sometimes been even colder than
Beijing. /

Chūntiān, qiūtiān shì Běijīng zuì hǎo de jìjié, kěxī
The best seasons in Beijing are spring and autumn but it's a pity
tài duǎn le. / Yàoshi zài Zhōngguó lǚxíng de huà, wǔyuè hé
they're so short. / If you're travelling around in China, May and
jiǔyuè tiānqì zuì hǎo, qíngtiān duō, yīntiān shǎo. /
September have the best weather with many fine days and few
cloudy ones. /

Tiānqì yī hǎo, gōngyuán lǐ de rén jiù hěn duō. / Lǎorén xià
As soon as the weather brightens up, there are many people in the
parks. /

qí de xià qí, dǎ pái de dǎ pái, liáo tiān(r) de liáo
There are some old people playing chess, others playing cards and
some chatting to each other,

tiān(r), zǎoshang dǎ tàijíquán de yōudeshì. / Zhōngguó yǒu xiē
and there's plenty of them doing taijiquan (a form of exercise) in the
mornings. / In China

dìfang bǐrú Sìchuān, Guǎngdōng děng dì zài chágǎn lǐ zuòzhe
there are some places such as Sichuan and Guangdong (Canton)
where there are many of them sitting

hē chá de yě hěn duō. /
in teahouses drinking tea. /

Zhōngguó rén yìbān yí ge xīngqī gōngzuò wǔ tiān, xiàng
The Chinese generally work a five-day week like
dà bùfen Ōuzhōu guójiā xīngqīliù yě xiūxi. / Suǐrán jīguān
the greater part of Europe where Saturday is also a rest day. /
Although cadres

gànbù xīngqīliù、xīngqītiān xiūxi, yǒude gōngchǎng xīngqītiān yě
in offices have Saturdays and Sundays off, some factories work as
zhàocháng shēngchǎn, gōngrén lúnliú xiūxi. /

normal on Sundays too, with workers taking time off in turn. /

Jīntiān shì xīngqītiān, tiānqì tèbié hǎo, nánǚ lǎoshào yì
Today is Sunday and the weather is especially nice, one group after
qún yì qún dōu chū qu wánr. / Gōngyuán lǐ sànbù de sànbù,
another of men and women, old and young go out to enjoy
themselves. /

zhào xiàng de zhào xiàng, yǒude xīhuan guàng dà jiē,
Some people stroll in the parks or take photographs, some like to go
shāngdiàn lí zōngshì hěn jǐ - zhěnggè Běijīng rènào jíle. /
window-shopping, the shops are always very crowded - the whole of
Beijing is a hive of activity. /

Zài Zhōngguó yào(shì) xiǎng zhǎo yí ge ānjìng de dìfang, yí
If you wish to find a quiet place in China to be by yourself for
ge rén dāi yíhuìr, shì hěn nán bàn dào de. / Nǐ yào xiǎng
a while, it's extremely difficult to do so. / If you wish to
shài tàiyáng, jiù děi gēn chéng qiān shàng wàn de rén yìqǐ
sunbathe you have to do so with thousands of other people! /
shài! / Fǎnzhèng xīngqītiān dào chù dōu shì rén! /
In any case there are people everywhere on Sundays! /

Jīnnián dōngtiān jié bīng yǐhòu, wǒ jīngcháng qù huá bīng,
This winter after it fell below freezing I have been skating regularly,
yī xià bān jiù pǎo dào Běihǎi Gōngyuán qù huà. / Rúguǒ zài
as soon as I finish work I rush to Beihai Park to skate. / If
jiā jiù dào fùjìn de Yuánmíngyuán huò Yíhéyuán qù huá. /
I'm at home then I go to the Old Summer Palace or the
Summer Palace to skate. /

zhèngcháng (adj.)	<i>normal, regular</i>
xiàtiān (n)	<i>summer</i>
xià xuě (v-o)	<i>to snow</i>
bīng (adv.) + bù/méi	<i>see 10.1</i>
xià yǔ (v-o)	<i>to rain</i>
qíguài (adj.)	<i>strange</i>
zhěnggè (adj.)	<i>whole, entire</i>
shìjiè (n)	<i>world</i>
qìhòu (n)	<i>climate</i>
zhèngzài ... ne	<i>in the middle of -ing (see 10.3)</i>
biàn (v)	<i>to change</i>
Ōuzhōu (N)	<i>Europe</i>
fǎn'ér (conj.)	<i>on the contrary</i>

chūntiān (n)	spring
qiūtiān (n)	autumn
jìjié (n)	season
kǎixī	it's a pity that
duǎn (adj.)	short (in length)
yào (shì) ... (de huà), (jiù) ...	if ... then ...
lǚxíng (v)	to travel
yuè (n)	month
qíng (adj.)	(of weather) fine, clear, bright
yīn (adj.)	cloudy, overcast
yī ... jiù ...	no sooner ... than ... ; as soon as
gōngyuán (n)	park
lǎorén (n)	old people
xià qí (v-o)	to play chess
dǎ pái (v-o)	to play cards or mahjong
liáo tiān(r) (v-o)	to chat
dǎ tàijiquán (v-o)	to do taijiquan
yǒudeshì	to have plenty of, there's no lack of
bǐrú	for example, such as
Sìchuān (N)	Sichuan
Guǎngdōng (N)	Canton (province)
dì (n)	locality, land (as used for farming); the earth
cháguǎn (n)	teahouse
-zhe	verbal suffix (see 10.11)
xīngqī (n)	week
xiàng (v)	to resemble, to be like
jīguān (n)	offices, organization
gànbù (n)	cadre
gōngchǎng (n)	factory
zhàocháng (adv.)	as usual
shēngchǎn (v)	to produce, to manufacture
lúnliú (v)	to take turns, in turn
nánǚ	men and women,
lǎoshào	old and young
qún (MW)	group, flock
chū (v)	to come or to go out
sàn bù (v-o)	to take a walk, to stroll
zhào xiàng (v-o)	to take a picture; to have one's picture/photo taken
guàng dà jiē (v-o)	to go window-shopping
shāngdiàn (n)	shop

rènào (adj.)	<i>bustling; exciting</i>
dāi (v; coll.)	<i>to stay</i>
yíhuìr (TW)	<i>a short while, (after) a moment</i>
nán (adj.)	<i>difficult</i>
bàn-dào (RV)	<i>to get something done, to accomplish</i>
shài tàiyáng (v-o)	<i>to sunbathe</i>
gēn (prep.; conj.)	<i>with; and</i>
yìqǐ (adv.; PW)	<i>together</i>
fǎnzhèng (adv.)	<i>anyway, in any case</i>
dàochù (PW)	<i>everywhere</i>
jié bīng (v-o)	<i>to freeze, to ice over</i>
jīngcháng (adv.)	<i>regularly, frequently</i>
huá bīng (v-o)	<i>to skate (Lit. slide ice)</i>
xià bān (v-o)	<i>to finish work</i>
pǎo (v)	<i>to run</i>
Běihǎi Gōngyuán (N)	<i>Beihai Park</i>
dào . . . qù/lái	<i>to go/come to; to arrive</i>
fùjìn (n)	<i>nearby</i>
Yuánmíngyuán (N)	<i>the Old Summer Palace</i>
Yíhéyuán (N)	<i>the Summer Palace</i>

Grammar

1 Bing

Bing before *bù* or *méi (yǒu)* emphasizes the negation and conveys the idea that it is not what might have been expected: *Yīnggāi xià xuě de shíhou bìng méi yǒu xià* (Lit. Ought to/ descend/snow/when//not/have/descend).

2 Shì bu shì

Shì bu shì is used to make the question form when you wish to indicate to the listener that you are seeking confirmation of something you believe to be the case. It can be put at the beginning or end of the sentence, or after the subject with the following slight shifts in emphasis:

Shì bu shì nǐ míngtiān qù yóuyǒng (swimming)?
Nǐ shì bu shì míngtiān qù yóuyǒng?

In both of the above sentences you are confident that I am going swimming tomorrow, but using *shì bu shì* softens the tone and indicates a wish on your part to discuss the matter with me. It in no way implies an order.

Nǐ míngtiān qù yóuyǒng shì bu shì?

At the end of the sentence *shì bu shì* seeks a more direct confirmation and conveys the idea of 'Am I right?' 'Is it true?'

All three sentences can probably be roughly translated as:

'You are going swimming tomorrow aren't you?'

... *shì ma?* or ... *duì ma?* have the same meaning as *shì bu shì* used at the end of the sentence, and they too can only appear at the end of the sentence: *Sìchuān rén xǐhuan chī là de* (hot/spicy[food]), *shì ma?* 'People from Sichuan like spicy food, don't they?'. The answer to all three forms is *Shì(a)* or *Duì* if the listener agrees and *Bù* if he or she does not.

3 The progressive aspect – to be in the middle of doing something

To show that an action is in progress, one of the adverbs *zhèngzài*, *zhèng* or *zài* is placed before the verb or *ne* is placed at the end of the sentence. However, *zhèngzài*, *zhèng* or *zài* often occur together with *ne* to indicate the progressive aspect:

Shòuhuòyuán (shop assistant) *zhèngzài liáo tiān(r)* (*ne*). 'The shop assistant is/was (in the middle of) chatting'.

Tā zài dǎ tàijīquán (*ne*). 'He is/was (in the middle of) doing taijiquan'.

Gōngchǎng zhèng shēngchǎn ... (*ne*). 'The factory is/was (in the middle of) manufacturing ...'.

Tāmen zhào xiàng ne. 'They are/were (in the middle of) taking photos.'

The negative is made by putting *méi* (*yǒu*) before the verb but if the verb is omitted then *yǒu* must be used:

Nǐmen zài shài tàiyáng ma? 'Are you sunbathing?'

Wǒmen méi (yǒu) shài tàiyáng, wǒmen kàn diànshì ne. 'We're not sunbathing, we're watching TV'.

Méi yǒu, wǒmen kàn diànshì ne. 'No, we're watching TV'.

Méi yǒu. 'No'.

What the Chinese call 'aspect' is different from 'time' (past, present or future). An action in progress may take place in the past, present or future and it is the use of time-words (plus context) which tells us when the action actually takes place. (This is why it is also dangerous to think of the verb + *le* as indicating the past tense.) The following examples will illustrate this point:

Present – *Question: Nǐ xiànzài zuò shénme ne?* 'What are you doing now?'

Answer: Wǒ zài huá bīng ne (Lit. I /slide/ice/). 'I'm skating'.

Past – *Zuótiān* (yesterday) *tā lái de shíhou, wǒ zhèng shuì jiào ne.* 'I was asleep when he came yesterday'. (Note the clause sequence, the 'when' clause comes first.)

Future – *Míngtiān xiàwǔ* (afternoon) *xià bān yǐhòu qù zhǎo tā, tā yídìng zài dǎ pái ne.* '(If) you go and look for her tomorrow afternoon after work, she'll certainly be playing cards'.

4 Kěxī

A whole range of adjectives are made up of *kě* + verb to give the literal meaning of 'being worth -ing', 'able to be -ed'. Some of the more common ones are given below:

kě'ài 'lovable, lovely'

kěkào 'reliable'

kělián 'pitiable, pitiful'

kěpà 'terrifying (able to be feared)'

kěxī 'it's a pity'

kěxiào 'laughable, ridiculous'

5 Months of the year

yīyuè	January
èryuè	February
sānyuè	March
sìyuè	April
wǔyuè	May
liùyuè	June
qīyuè	July
bāyuè	August
jiǔyuè	September
shíyuè	October
shíyīyuè	November
shí'èryuè	December

Note that whereas *yī* + *yuè* means 'January' (some people say *yíyuè*), *yí* + *ge* + *yuè* means 'one month', *èryuè* means February, but *liǎng ge yuè* 'two months' and so on. If *-chū* 'at the beginning of' or *-dǐ* 'at the end of' is added to a specific month, April for instance, we get *sìyuèchū*, '(in) early April' and *sìyuèdǐ*, 'at the end of April'. This also works with *nián*, 'year', *niánchū* meaning 'at the beginning of the year' and *niándǐ*, 'at the end of the year'.

6 Omission of *hěn* implies comparison

This point has already been touched on in 4.8 but the example from the text illustrates it beautifully as well as providing another example of the balance which is such a feature of Chinese:

qíngtiān duō, yíntiān shǎo.

7 *Yī... jiù...*

Yī... jiù... are used to connect two actions which follow on closely one from another:

Wǒ yī huá xuě (slide snow 'ski') *jiù gāoxìng le*. 'As soon as I get skiing, I'm happy'.

Tiānqì yī hǎo, gōngyuán lǐ de rén jiù hěn duō...
yī xià bān jiù pǎo dào Běihǎi Gōngyuán qù huá.

It may help you to remember this construction if you think of it as *yī* verb₁, *jiù* verb₂, 'as soon as verb₁ happens, then verb₂ happens'.

8 *V₁-O de, V₁-O*

When we wish to convey the idea that amongst a specified group of people some are engaged in one activity, others in another and so on, each group and its activity is expressed by the construction *V₁-O de, V₁-O*. This is repeated as many times as there are activities, with the verb-object changing each time of course: *Lǎo(nián) rén xià qí de xià qí, dǎ pái de dǎ pái, liáo tiān(r) de liáo tiān(r)...* In other words, of the old people in the park, some are doing A (playing chess), some are doing B (playing cards) and some are doing C (chatting).

Gōngyuán lǐ sànbù de sànbù, zhàoxiàng de zhàoxiàng...
'Some people in the park are taking a stroll, others are taking photographs...'

9 Dǎ + object

In addition to the two examples from the text, *dǎ pái* and *dǎ tàijǐquán*, *dǎ* (Lit. 'to hit' or 'to strike') can appear with a whole series of different objects, some of which are given below:

<i>dǎ diànbào</i>	'to send a telegram' (Lit. hit electric newspaper)
<i>dǎ diànhuà</i>	'to make a telephone call' (Lit. hit electric speech)
<i>dǎ gē(r)</i>	'to belch'
<i>dǎ gǔ</i>	'to beat a drum'
<i>dǎ hān</i>	'to snore'
<i>dǎ hāqian</i>	'to yawn'
<i>dǎ hū(lu)</i>	'to snore (coll.)'
<i>dǎ pìgu</i>	'to spank' (Lit. hit buttocks)
<i>dǎ qì</i>	'to pump, inflate'
<i>dǎ qiú</i>	'to play ball'
<i>dǎ zhēn</i>	'to give or have an injection' (Lit. hit needle)
<i>dǎ zì</i>	'to type' (Lit. hit characters)

10 Děng + noun

We met *děng* 'etc.' in Chapter 8 and this is an extension of that meaning. 'Such people as Mr Li, Mr Wang and Miss Scurfield' translates into Chinese as *Lǐ xiānsheng, Wáng xiānsheng, Shǐ xiǎojié děng rén* (Lit. etc./people). 'Such places as Sichuan and Guangdong (Canton)' translates as *Sìchuān, Guǎngdōng děng dì* (Lit. etc./places).

11 Verbal suffix -zhe

The verbal suffix *-zhe* is placed **after** the verb to show that the action of the verb goes on for some time. It may sometimes be thought of as indicating a continuous state: *Chuānghu guānzhe*. 'The window is shut'. *Mén kāi*zhe*. 'The door is open'. *-zhe* often appears with verbs such as *zuò* 'to sit', *zhàn* 'to stand' and *děng* 'to wait' which are often prolonged. In such cases the verb + *zhe* is often translated by a continuous tense in English, 'to be -ing':

Tā zuòzhe. 'He is/was sitting'.

The negative is made by putting *méi* (*yǒu*) in front of the verb with *-zhe*: *Mén méi kāi*zhe*. 'The door isn't/wasn't open (has not remained open)'.

The question form is made by adding *ma* to the statement or by adding *méi yǒu* after it, the implication being that the speaker wishes the state of affairs indicated in his question to continue:

*Shōuyīnjī kāi *zhe ma?* 'Is the radio on?'

*Lùyīnjī kāi *zhe méi you?* 'Is the record player on?'

* *kāi* 'to open' (of doors, windows); 'to turn on' (of lights, radio, TV and so on).

Note that:

- 1 An adverbial phrase of manner is often formed with a verb + *zhe* (+ object) which then precedes the main verb: *Tā xiào zhe shuō* (Lit. he/laughing/say) 'He says/said with a smile/laugh'. *Tā qízhe zìxíngchē qù gōngyuán wán(r)* (Lit. She/riding astride/self-propelling machine/go/park/have fun) 'She's going/gone on her bicycle to the park to enjoy herself'.

In the example from the text, the adverbial phrase of manner with *zhe* and the verb-object phrase which follows it have become a nominal phrase describing the people in teahouses: *zài cháguǎn lǐ zuòzhe hē chá de yě hěn duō* (Lit. At/tea establishment inside/sitting/drink/tea/ /also/very/many) 'There are also a lot of (old - understood from previous sentence) people who sit in teahouses drinking tea'.

- 2 The continuation of an action generally implies that the action is also in progress so that *-zhe* is often to be found together with *zhèngzài*, *zhèng*, *zài* or *ne* (see 10.3). *Xiàozhǎng lái de shíhòu, wǒ zhèng dǎzhe diànhuà ne* (Lit. School head/come/when/I/in the middle of/hitting/electric speech/) 'I was on the phone when the headmaster/mistress came'.
- 3 Verbs with *-zhe* cannot take verb endings or complements of any sort. It would be incorrect to say, for instance, *Wǒ dǎzhe zì dǎ de hěn hǎo*. (Note that *pinyin* convention always shows *zhe* attached to the verb.)

12 Adverbial phrases of time ('Time how long')

As we saw in 3.8, adverbs of 'time when' precede the verb, but adverbs of 'time how long' follow the verb:

Zhōngguó rén yībān gōngzuò wǔ tiān 'The Chinese generally work five days'. (Remember that *tiān* does not require a measure word, see 8.5.)

Jīguān gàn bù měi tiān gōngzuò qī ge xiǎoshí (hour) 'Cadres in offices work a seven-hour day'. (Note that *měi tiān*, 'time when', precedes the verb.)

Where there is a direct object, the construction is:

1	S Wǒ	V ₁ chàng	O, gē,	V ₁ chàng	'time how long' liǎng ge xiǎoshí.
(Lit.	I	sing	songs,	sing	two hours.)

'I sing for two hours'.

or

2	S Wǒ	V chàng	'time how long' liǎng ge zhōngtóu	de O de gē.
(Lit.	I	sing	two hours (worth of)	songs.)

'I sing for two hours'.

De is sometimes omitted but it is helpful to beginners to think of it as always being there. (*Zhōngtóu* 'hour' is interchangeable with *xiǎoshí*.)

Exercise 10.1

Change the following pattern (i) sentences into pattern (ii) sentences:

Tā kàn diànshì, kàn liǎng ge xiǎoshí → *Tā kàn liǎng ge xiǎoshí de diànshì.*

- 1 *Tā xī yān, xī shí fēn zhōng.*
- 2 *Lǎoshī* (teacher) *jiāo shū, jiāo yí ge xiǎoshí.*
- 3 *Gēge lù yīn, lù bàn ge zhōngtóu.*
- 4 *Wǒ àiren huà huà, huà sān kè zhōng.*
- 5 *Chǎngzhǎng* (head of a factory) *kāi chē, kāi sān ge bàn* (three-and-a-half) *xiǎoshí.*

Change the following pattern (ii) sentences into pattern (i) sentences:

Tāmen xiě yí kè zhōng de zì → *Tāmen xiě zì, xiě yí kè zhōng.*

- 6 *Dìdi kàn bàn ge xiǎoshí de shū.*
- 7 *Laǒrén shuì yí ge bàn* (one-and-a-half) *xiǎoshí de jiào.*
- 8 *Wǒ yí ge péngyou zǒu qī ge zhōngtóu de lù.*
- 9 *Nà wèi xiānsheng shuō hěn cháng* (long) *shíjiān de huà le.*
- 10 *Nǎ wèi xiǎojiē néng dǎ jiǔ ge xiǎoshí de zì?*

13 Days of the week

Xīngqī (Lit. 'star period'), the Chinese word for 'week' precedes the numerals 1–6 to give the days of the week from Monday to Saturday. 'Sunday' is not *xīngqīqī*, however, but *xīngqītīān* or *xīngqīrì*. 'What day is it today?' is *Jīntiān xīngqījǐ?* (Note that no verb is necessary.)

xīngqīyī	Monday
xīngqī'èr	Tuesday
xīngqīsān	Wednesday
xīngqīsì	Thursday
xīngqīwǔ	Friday
xīngqīliù	Saturday
xīngqītiān/xīngqīrì	Sunday

Other useful vocabulary items are *běn xīngqī* or *zhè ge xīngqī* 'this week', *shàng (ge) xīngqī* 'last week' and *xià (ge) xīngqī* 'next week'. The same system applies to *yuè* 'month': *běn yuè* or *zhè ge yuè* 'this month', *shàng (ge) yuè* 'last month' and *xià (ge) yuè* 'next month'. An alternative word for 'week' is *libài*. The days of the week work in exactly the same way as for *xīngqī*. For example, 'Wednesday' would be *libàisān* and 'Sunday' would either be *libàitiān* or *libàirì*. *Libài* is often used by overseas Chinese rather than *xīngqī* and has religious connotations. *Zuò libài* (v-o) means 'to go to church'.

Exercise 10.2

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate time word or phrase

Jintiān xīngqījǐ? → *Jintiān xīngqī'èr*.

- 1 *Jintiān xīngqīsān. Míngtiān* ____.
- 2 *Zuótiān* (yesterday) *xīngqītiān. Jintiān* ____? *Jintiān* ____.
- 3 *Shàng ge yuè wǔyuè. Xià ge yuè jǐ yuè? Xià ge yuè* ____.
- 4 *Yì nián yǒu jǐ ge yuè? Yì nián yǒu* ____.
- 5 *Yí ge xīngqī yǒu jǐ tiān? Yí ge xīngqī yǒu* ____.
- 6 *Jiǔyuè yǒu duōshao tiān? Jiǔyuè yǒu* ____.
- 7 *Èryuè ne? Èryuè yǒu* ____ *huòzhě* ____.
- 8 *Yì nián yǒu duōshao tiān? Yì nián yǒu* ____ *huòzhě* ____ (*bǎi* hundred).

14 Reduplication of measure words

Repeating *yi* + measure word after the noun gives the meaning 'one after another', whether it is 'one worker after another', *gōngrén yí ge yí ge . . .*, 'one sheet of paper after another', *zhǐ yì zhāng yì zhāng . . .*, or 'one group after another', *yì qún yì qún* (made up of 'men and women, old and young' in the text), etc.

15 Position of conjunctions

We have met *suīrán . . . dànshi . . .* in 8.12 and *rúguǒ . . . (de huà) jiù; yàoshi . . . jiù* in 9.4. Two other common pairs are

yīnwèi ... *suǒyǐ* ... , 'because ... (so) ...'; and *búdàn* ... *érqiě* ... 'not only ... but also ...'. The first one of the pair can occur either at the beginning of the sentence or after the subject. *Jiù*, being a true adverb, immediately precedes the verb and therefore always comes **after** the subject if there is one: *Nǐ yào xiǎng shài tàiyáng, jiù děi gēn chéng qiān shàng wàn de rén yìqǐ shài!* Note that *yàoshi* can be reduced to *yào*. It is sometimes merely a matter of the sentence rhythm or of how it sounds which decides whether *yàoshi* or *yào* is used.

16 Gēn ... yìqǐ

Wǒ gēn nǐ qù means 'I'll go with you' (*Lit.* I/with/you/go). *Wǒ gēn nǐ yìqǐ qù* (*Lit.* I/with/you/together/go) may also be translated as above, but the addition of *yìqǐ* reinforces the idea of togetherness: *Wǒmen yìqǐ qù ba* 'Let's go together'.

17 Dào ... qù/lái

As a verb, *dào* means 'to go, to arrive (in), to reach', *Tā dào le* 'he's arrived'. If there is a place-word after *dào*, the simple directional ending *lái* or *qù* is used at the end of the clause to indicate direction towards or away from the speaker (see 5.1).

As a compound directional ending with *qù* or *lái*, *dào* can translate simply as 'to' when used with such verbs as *pǎo* 'to run', *zǒu* 'to walk' and *bān* 'to remove': *Wǒmen xiǎng míngnián (next year) bān dào Jiānádà qu* (*Lit.* We/fancy/next year/move to/Canada/go) 'We plan to move to Canada next year'.

... *yī xià bān jiù pǎo dào Běihǎi Gōngyuán qù huá.* (*Lit.* As soon as/descend/shift/then/run to/Beihai/Park/go/slide).

i Chinese togetherness

The Chinese have developed various ways of handling their enforced 'togetherness' and in general they cope with crowd situations a great deal more good-humouredly than their Western counterparts. In spite of the fact that living accommodation is generally cramped, at least in the cities, most Chinese actually find it unthinkable or even undesirable to spend much time on their own and are often surprised by some Westerners' need for privacy.

Exercise 10.3

Mark the following sentences with (+) for the correct ones and (-) for the incorrect ones.

- 1 Wǒ zhèng dǎ diànhuà, tā jīntiān lái de shíhou.
- 2 Shì ma, nǐ míngtiān qù huá xuě (to ski)?
- 3 Mèimei shuì jiào, shuì sān ge zhōngtóu.
- 4 Dìdì shuì jiào sì ge xiǎoshí.
- 5 Xià bān yìqián, tā zhèngzài shài tàiyáng ne.
- 6 Zǒnglǐ (premier) xiǎng bānyuèdǐ qù Yàzhōu (Asia).
- 7 Wǒ péngyou zhēn qíguài, yī huí jiā, jiù tā dǎ tàijíquán.
- 8 Diànshì kāizhē méi ma?
- 9 Zǒngtǒng (president) xià ge yuè qù Fēizhōu (Africa), qù èr ge yuè.
- 10 Xiàtiān rúguǒ xià dà yǔ, qù lǚxíng jiù bù hǎo bàn le!

Exercise 10.4

Translate the following passage into colloquial English:

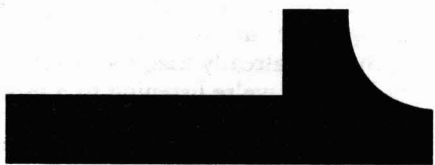
Yǒu rén xiǎng Yīngguó tiānqì bù zěnmeyàng dànsì fǎnguòlái (conversely) yě yǒu yìxiē rén juéde (feel) Yīngguó tiānqì hěn búcuò, bù lěng yě bú rè, dōngtiān yě bù yídìng xià xuě, dànsì yǒu yì diǎn bùdé bù chéngrèn, Yīngguó bùguǎn (no matter) nǐ zài nǎ dōu jīngcháng xià yǔ. Zhōngguó yìbān qíngtiān duō, yīntiān shǎo dànsì Yīngguó xiāngfǎn (opposite), yīntiān duō, qíngtiān shǎo. Yǒu rén shuō zhè ge gēn Yīngguó rén de guài (strange) píqi (temperament) yǒu guānxi, yě yǒu rén shuō zhè ge gēn Yīngguó rén kě'ài de píqi yǒu guānxi. Nǎ zhǒng shuōfǎ duì ne? Qǐng nǐ shuōshuo!

Exercise 10.5

Translate the following into Chinese:

- 1 I was in the middle of watching TV when my friend came on Sunday.
- 2 I'd like to go with you to the Summer Palace for a walk.
- 3 As soon as she starts (*kāishǐ*) snoring, I leave!
- 4 The windows were open but the door was closed.
- 5 There was a lot of activity (use *rènào*) going on in the park – some people were doing taijiquan, others were taking photographs and some people were sunbathing.
- 6 When the weather's fine, I sit outside and read a book (use *-zhe*).
- 7 We sing for half an hour every evening and then go to bed.
- 8 Because she didn't phone at all on Tuesday I don't know (*zhīdao*) whether I'm going or not (use *bìng*).

- 9 If I'm at my parents' home, I frequently go to the park nearby to play tennis (*wǎngqiú*) (use *dào . . . qù*).
- 10 She said with a smile that she was already married.
- 11 Are you listening to the radio? No, we're listening to a tape (use *lù yīn*).
- 12 You're going to see a play (*kàn xì*) tomorrow, aren't you? What a pity I can't go with you.



in the restaurant

In this chapter you will learn

- about *guānxi* in China
- how to express approximate numbers
- how to say *first, second, third* etc.
- the difference between *cái* and *jiù*

▶ Zhang Zhanyi is now working in the Western dining-room (*Xī Cāntīng*) at the Beijing Hotel where one lunch-time he encounters Mr King and Miss Scurfield.

- Zhāng** Have you ordered? *Nǐmen cài dīng hǎo le méi you?*
Shǐ *Dīng hǎo le, xièxie nǐ. Píjiǔ lái le - à, bú shì Běijīng píjiǔ ér shì Qīngdǎo píjiǔ.*
- Zhāng** *Méi guānxi, Qīngdǎo píjiǔ gèng hǎo hē. Nín pǔtōnghuà shuō de zhēn hǎo.*
- Shǐ** *Guòjiǎng, guòjiǎng, shuō de bù hǎo.*
Zhāng *Shuō de hěn hǎo. Nín shì nǎ guó rén?*
Shǐ *Nǐ cāicai ba.*
Zhāng *Bú shì Měiguó rén jiù shì Yīngguó rén.*
Shǐ *Wō shì Yīngguó rén. Nǐ zěnmē zhīdao ne?*
Zhāng *Yīnwèi gāngcái nín shì gēn nín péngyou shuō Yīngyǔ! Nín péngyou yě huì shuō Hànyǔ ma?*
Shǐ *Yě huì shuō.*
Wáng *Shuō de méi tā hǎo.*
Zhāng *À, nǐmen liǎ de Hànyǔ zhēn bàng, xué le jǐ nián le?*
Shǐ *Xué le liǎng nián le.*
Zhāng *Nín ne? (Zhǐ de shì Wáng Yǒngshòu).*
Wáng *Xué le sì nián le.*
Zhāng *Nǐmen zài Zhōngguó dāi le hěn cháng shíjiān le ba?*
Wáng *Bù cháng, lái le sān ge duō yuè le.*
Zhāng *Zhè shì nǐmen dì yí cì lái Zhōngguó ma?*
Wáng *Bù, tā shì dì yí cì, wō shì dì èr cì.*
Zhāng *Nǐmen zhēn xíng, fāyīn hěn qīngchu, méi shénme yángwèi(r), hěn biāozhǔn de pǔtōnghuà. Xué Zhōngwén bú shì hěn nán xué ma?*
- Wáng** *Nán shì nán, kěshì yě yǒu tā róngyì de dìfang, bǐfang shuō Zhōngwén fāyīn, yǔfǎ dōu bìng bù nán, nán de shì shēngdiào. Duì wǒmen Xīfāng rén lái shuō, Zhōngwén de sīhēng háishi xiāngdāng kùnnan de.*
- Zhāng** *Xiě Hànzì ne?*
Shǐ *Xiě Hànzì hěn bù róngyì, yīnwèi wǒmen wàiguó rén yìbān shì chéngniánrén cái kāishǐ xué Zhōngwén, bú xiàng nǐmen liù, qī suì jiù kāishǐ le. Dāngrán hái yǒu yì diǎn, Zhōngwén jiùshì nǐmen de mǔyǔ.*
- Zhāng** *Nà dào shì. Xiàng nǐmen zhè yàng de shuǐpíng, bàozhǐ kàn de dòng ma?*
Shǐ *Kàn de dòng.*
Zhāng *Xiǎoshuō ne?*
Shǐ *Yě xíng, dànshì bú rěnshi de zì hái yào chá zidiǎn. À, cài lái le, zhēn piàoliang a! Kàn qilai yíding hěn hǎo chī.*

- Zhāng** *Nàme, nǐmen màn màn chī ba, bú zài dǎo nǐmen le. Yǒu shénme shì, suǐshí kěyǐ jiào wǒ.*
- Wáng** *Hǎo de, xièxie nǐ, yǒu shénme shì yí dìng zhǎo nǐ. Gēn nǐ liáo tiān(r) hěn yǒu yìsi.*

* * *

- Zhang** Have you ordered?
- Shi** Yes we have, thank you. Here comes the beer – oh, it's Qingdao beer not Beijing beer.
- Zhang** It doesn't matter, Qingdao beer is even better. You (pol.) speak really good Chinese.
- Shi** You're too kind, I don't speak it well at all.
- Zhang** Yes you do. Where are you from?
- Shi** Have a guess.
- Zhang** You're either American or British.
- Shi** I'm British. How did you know?
- Zhang** Because you (pol.) were speaking English with your friend just now! Can your (pol.) friend also speak Chinese?
- Shi** Yes he can.
- Wang** I'm not as good as she is.
- Zhang** Oh, both of you have got brilliant Chinese. How many years have you been studying it?
- Shi** Two years (so far).
- Zhang** How about you? (*He is referring to Wang Yongshou.*)
- Wang** I've been studying for four.
- Zhang** I suppose you've been in China for a very long time?
- Wang** No we haven't, we've only been here a little over three months.
- Zhang** Is this your first time in China?
- Wang** No, it's her first but my second.
- Zhang** You're really great! Your pronunciation is very clear with no foreign overtones, it's good standard Chinese. Isn't Chinese awfully hard to learn?
- Wang** Yes it is, but there are some easy things about it too – for example, neither Chinese pronunciation nor grammar is at all difficult, what is difficult are the tones. As far as we Westerners are concerned, the four tones in Chinese are still pretty difficult.
- Zhang** How about writing Chinese characters?
- Shi** Writing Chinese characters is very difficult because we foreigners generally do not start learning Chinese until we are adults, not like you people who start at six or seven. Of course the other thing is that Chinese happens to be your mother tongue.

- Zhang** Yes indeed. With Chinese at a level like yours, can you read newspapers?
Shi Yes.
Zhang How about novels?
Shi They're OK too, but we still have to look up characters we don't know in the dictionary. Oh, the food's here, it looks great. It certainly looks appetizing.
Zhang I'll leave you to get on with your meal in peace. Call me if you need anything.
Wang Fine, thank you. If we need anything we'll certainly ask for you. It's been really interesting chatting with you.

-hǎo (RVE)	<i>to do the action of the verb satisfactorily</i>
pījiǔ (n)	<i>beer</i>
bú shì ... ér shì ...	<i>not ... but ...</i>
Qīngdǎo (N)	<i>Qingdao</i>
gèng (adv.)	<i>even more, still more</i>
pǔtōnghuà (n)	<i>common spoken language (Modern Standard Chinese; Mandarin)</i>
guòjiǎng	<i>you flatter me</i>
cāi (v)	<i>to guess</i>
bú shì A jiù shì B	<i>if it's not A then it's B</i>
Měiguórén (n)	<i>(an) American</i>
zěnmē (QW)	<i>how</i>
zhīdao (v)	<i>to know</i>
yīnwèi (conj.)	<i>because (also read yīnwei)</i>
gāngcái (TW)	<i>just now</i>
Yīngyǔ (n)	<i>English language</i>
bàng (adj.)	<i>excellent (coll.)</i>
zhǐ (v)	<i>to refer to; to point at/to</i>
cháng (adj.)	<i>long</i>
duō (num.)	<i>used to express an approximate number</i>
dì	<i>ordinal prefix</i>
cì (MW)	<i>time, occasion</i>
fāyīn (n)	<i>pronunciation</i>
qīngchu (adj.; RVE)	<i>clear; clearly</i>
yángwèi(r) (n)	<i>foreign flavour</i>
A shì A dànshì ...	<i>it's A all right but ...</i>
róngyì (adj.)	<i>easy</i>
bǐfāng shuō	<i>for example</i>
yǔfǎ (n)	<i>grammar</i>
shēngdiào (n)	<i>tone</i>

duì X lái shuō	as far as X is concerned
Xīfāngrén (n)	Westerner
sì shēng (n)	the four tones
háishi (adv.)	after all, still (emphatic)
kùnnan (adj.; n)	difficult; difficulty
xiě (zì) (v(-o))	to write (characters)
Hànzì (n)	Chinese character(s)
chéngniánrén (n)	an adult
cái (adv.)	not . . . until . . . ; only
kāishǐ (v)	to begin
diǎn (n)	point, aspect
jiùshì	(be) precisely
mǔyǔ (n)	mother tongue
dào(shì) (adv.)	indeed, as it happens (indicates something contrary to the general train of thought)
zhè yàng (dem. adj. + n)	this kind of, such a
shuǐpíng (n)	level, standard
bào(zhī) (n) [zhāng or fèn]	newspaper
-dǒng (RVE; v)	-ing with understanding; to understand
xiǎoshuō (n) [běn]	novel
chá (v)	to check
zìdiǎn (n) [běn]	dictionary
chá zìdiǎn (v-o)	to consult a dictionary
-qīlai (RVE)	see 11.13
dǎrǎo (v)	to disturb
shì(qing) (n) [jiàn]	matter, thing
yǒu yìsi (v-o)	to be interesting

Grammar

1 *Bú shi . . . ér shi . . .*

If we wish to convey the idea that 'it is not A but B' we use the construction *bú shi A ér shi B*, where *shi* is the verb 'to be' and *ér* is a conjunction which has come into modern Chinese from the classical language meaning amongst other things, 'and', 'but':

Bú shi Běijīng pìjiǔ ér shi Qīngdǎo pìjiǔ.

Bú shi zhūròu ér shi niúròu (Lit. Not/be/pig meat/but/be/cattle meat) 'It's not pork but beef'.

2 *Bú shi . . . jiù shi . . .*

'If it is not A then it is B', *bú shi A jiù shi B*. This construction is easily confused with the one above but by remembering that *jiù* means 'then' you should be able to distinguish them correctly:

Bú shi Měiguórén jiù shi Yīngguórén.

Bú shi niúròu jiù shi yáng ròu (Lit. Not/be/cattle/meat/then/be/sheep meat) 'If it's not beef then it's mutton'.

Of course *bú shi . . . jiù shi . . .* could be translated as 'either . . . or . . .' but in doing so it somehow loses its flavour.

3 *Zěnme* and *zěnmeyàng*

Zěnme and *zěnmeyàng* can both be used adverbially before a verb to ask how something is done, although *zěnme* is used much more frequently in this way: *Nǐ zěnme zhīdao ne? Nǐ zěnmeyàng zhīdao?*

Zěnme can also be used to ask the reason why something happens but *zěnmeyàng* cannot be used in this way: *Tā zěnme méi gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà ne?* (Lit. She/why/not (have)/for/you/hit/electric speech/) 'How come she hasn't phoned you?'

Zěnme feels a little less formal than *wèi shénme*, 'why?', hence its translation as 'how come' in the previous example. Note that question words such as *zěnme*, *zěnmeyàng* and *wèi shénme* often take *ne* at the end of the sentence containing them (see 3.3). Only *zěnmeyàng* can be used after the complement of degree marker *de* (see 4.8) or to ask something about the subject of a sentence:

Tā de pǔtōnghuà zěnmeyàng? 'What's his (spoken) Chinese like?'

4 More on *le*

i We know that *le* used at the end of a sentence can indicate a change of state (see 4.6). We also know it can indicate that a certain state of affairs has already taken place (see 7.9):

a *Píjiǔ lái le.*

b *Nǐmen liù, qī suì jiù kāishǐ le.*

c *Wǒ zuótiān xiě zì le* (Lit. I/yesterday/write/characters/) 'I did some writing yesterday'.

d *Tā jīntiān zhōngwǔ zuò huǒchē le* (Lit. He/today/noon/sit/fire vehicle/). 'He took the train at noon today'.

In c and d the object is simple and unmodified. As soon as the object is modified in any way we have to use the verbal suffix *le* (see 3.4) and the sentence *le* is dropped: *Wǒ zuótiān xiě le hěn duō zì* 'I did a lot of writing yesterday'. By doing this, we focus our attention on what has been done rather than on what has simply taken place.

- ii If the object is quantified, then the use of the verbal suffix *le* and the sentence-final particle *le* generally indicates the continuation of some action or state of affairs. Of course this also involves 'time how long' (see 10.12) so the construction is as follows:

Wǒ xué Zhōngwén, xué le wǔ nián le. }

or

Wǒ xué le wǔ nián (de) Zhōngwén le. }

'I have been studying Chinese for five years (and still am)'.

Compare this with:

Wǒ xué le wǔ nián (de) Zhōngwén 'I studied Chinese for five years (and am no longer doing so, i.e. it's over and done with)'.

Another example may help to highlight this difference:

Tā zài Zhōngguó zhù le bàn nián le 'She has been living in China for six months (and still is)'.

Tā zài Zhōngguó zhù le bàn nián 'She lived in China for six months (and is no longer doing so)'.

- iii A sentence consisting of a verb + *le* followed by a simple object is regarded as being incomplete, something else is expected to follow. Thus *Wǒ chī le fàn* is not a complete sentence in Chinese and must be followed by another clause:

Wǒ chī le fàn jiù zǒu le 'I left after having eaten'.

Wǒ chī le fàn jiù zǒu 'I'll leave after eating'.

(In the second example, *le* shows completed action in the future, further illustrating the point that *le* should not be thought of as a past tense marker.) Where the object is a simple one, the addition of the final particle *le* makes the sentence complete: *Wǒ chī le fàn le* 'I've eaten'.

- iv When a past action is a habitual one or there is no need to emphasize its completion, no *le* is used after the verb: *Qùnián tā chángcháng lái* 'He often used to come last year'. *Qùnián xiàtiān tā zài Běijīng Yǔyán Dàxué gōngzuò* 'Last summer he worked at the Beijing Language [and Culture] University'.

5 Approximate numbers

There are several ways of indicating approximate numbers in Chinese:

- i When *duō* is placed after a whole number plus its measure word or after a whole number plus a noun acting as a measure word (*nián, tiān*), it represents a fraction of one unit: *sān ge duō xiǎoshí* 'three and a bit hours, over three hours', *yì tiān duō* 'one and a bit days'.
- ii When *duō* is placed after the whole number but before the measure word or noun acting as a measure word, it represents a whole number in itself: *sānshí duō nián* 'over thirty years' (anything from 31 to 39), *yì bǎi duō yè* 'one hundred-odd pages' (could be 110, 125, etc.).
- iii *Jǐ* can be used to indicate an indefinite number under ten: *Zhǐ shàng xiězhe jǐ ge Hànzì* 'There were several Chinese characters written on the paper'. *Lǎoshī yǒu shí jǐ běn zìdiǎn* 'The teacher has a dozen or so dictionaries' (any number from 11 to 19). *Xuésheng yǐjīng xué le jǐ bǎi ge shēngcí le* 'The students have already learnt several hundred new words (so far)'.
- iv Two consecutive numbers may be put together: *Wǒ zhǐ* (only) *qùguo liǎng, sān cì Měiguó* 'I've only been to the States two or three times'. NB The pause-mark (*dùnhào*), and not a comma, is used between 'two' and 'three'. *Xuéxiào yǒu bā, jiǔshí ge háiizi* 'There are eighty or ninety children in the school'. *Nǐmen liù, qī suì jiù kāishǐ le*. If the object is a pronoun, it precedes *yí cì*, etc. *Wǒ kànguo tā yì, liǎng cì* 'I've seen him/her once or twice'.
- v *Zuǒyòu* (Lit. left right) may be put after a number to indicate 'around' or 'about': *yì bǎi ge rén zuǒyòu* 'about one hundred people', *liǎng diǎn bàn zuǒyòu* 'around 2.30'.

6 Dì + number

Ordinal numbers (first, second, third) are made by putting *dì* in front of the number: *dì yī* 'first', *dì'èr* 'second', and *dì sān* 'third'. Thus *dì yí cì* means 'the first time'. In competitions of any sort, the Chinese are encouraged to remember *Yǒuyì dì yī, bǐsài dì'èr*, 'Friendship first, competition second'. Make sure you distinguish between *èryuè* 'February', *dì'èr ge yuè* 'the second month' and *liǎng ge yuè* 'two months'.

7 *Bú shi . . . ma?*

Bú shi . . . ma? asks a question which expects the answer 'yes'.

The word order is:

(Topic +) subject *bú shi* (+ adverb) Verb (+ other elements) *ma?*

Tā bú shi hěn lèi ma? 'Isn't she very tired?' (Yes, she is.)

Xué Zhōngwén bú shi hěn nán xué ma? (Yes, it is.)

8 *A shi A dànshi/kěshì . . .*

'It's A all right but . . .'. The main clause (*A shi A*) contains a positive or negative statement with some sort of a concession being made after *dànshi/kěshì*: *Guì shi guì, dànshi zhiliàng fēicháng hǎo* 'It's expensive all right, but the quality is excellent'. *Tā hǎo shi hǎo, kěshì píqi hěn huài* 'She is nice, but she's got a terrible temper (*Lit.* temperament very bad). *Nán shi nán, kěshì yě yǒu tā róngyì de dìfang*. 'Yes, it is difficult, but there are some easy things about it too!'

Exercise 11.1

Answer these questions using the *A shi A* construction followed by a suitable 'but' clause of your own devising:

- 1 *Tā de fāyīn bú shi hěn qīngchu ma?*
- 2 *Wáng xiānsheng de Hànyǔ shuǐpíng gāo ma?*
- 3 *Zhè běn xiǎoshuō yǒu méi yǒu yìsì?*
- 4 *Duì wàiguórén lái shuō, Zhōngwén de sishēng shì bu shi hěn nán?*
- 5 *Qīngdǎo pǐjiǔ hǎo hē ma?*

9 *Cái* and *jiù*

Both *cái* and *jiù* are adverbs indicating something about time. *Cái* indicates that something takes place later or with more difficulty than had been expected. It translates into English as 'not . . . until . . .', 'then and only then': *Tā sān diǎn zhōng cái lái* 'He didn't come until 3' (but I had asked him to come at 2.30).

It is a common mistake for students to try to translate the 'not' in English with a *bù* or *méi* in Chinese. Remember that 'not' is already contained in *cái*.

Jiù, on the other hand, indicates that something takes place earlier or more promptly than expected: *Tā sān diǎn zhōng jiù lái le* 'He came at 3/He was there by 3' (but I had asked him to come at 3.30).

Both *cái* and *jiù* must come immediately before the verb regardless of what other elements there are in the sentence. *Jiù* usually takes *le*, whereas *cái* does not, perhaps because the verb with *cái* does not convey any real sense of completion. The following examples should help to make the distinction between the two clearer:

- a *Wǒ qǐng tā shàngwǔ bā diǎn bàn lái dànshi tā bā diǎn jiù lái* 'I asked him to come at 8.30 am but he was there by 8' (i.e. too early).
- b *Wǒ qǐng tā shàngwǔ bā diǎn bàn lái dànshi tā jiǔ diǎn bàn cái lái* 'I asked him to come at 8.30 am but he didn't come until 9.30' (i.e. too late).
- a *Gēn nǐ liáo tiān(r) jiù zhīdao nǐ zhè ge rén hěn yǒu yìsi* 'As soon as I chatted to you I realized what a fascinating person you were'.
- b *Gēn nǐ liáo tiān(r) cái zhīdao nǐ zhè ge rén hěn yǒu yìsi* 'It was not until I'd had a chat with you that I realized what a fascinating person you were'.

Cái and *jiù* can also be translated as 'only' in sentences such as:

Tā cái sān suì } 'She's only 3 years old'.
Tā jiù sān suì }

Exercise 11.2

Fill in the blanks with the adverbs *jiù* or *cái*.

- Wǒ dào le Zhōngguó yǐhòu ____ zhīdao Qīngdǎo píjiǔ hěn hǎo hē.*
- Wǒ dào Zhōngguó qù yìqián ____ zhīdao Qīngdǎo píjiǔ hěn hǎo hē.*
- Nà fēng (MW) xìn (letter) xiě hǎo le méi you? Xiě hǎo le, zuótiān ____ xiě hǎo le.*
- Nà fēng xìn yǐjīng xiě hǎo le ma? Hái méi xiě hǎo ne, míngtiān ____ xiě.*
- Tā kāishǐ xué Hànyǔ yǐhòu ____ fāxiàn (discover) Hànyǔ yǔfǎ bìng bù nán.*
- Diànyǐng qī diǎn bàn kāishǐ, tā bā diǎn ____ lái.*
- Qù Měiguó yìqián ____ cái Měiguórén hěn kāilǎng (open).*
- Yīnwèi shìqīng hěn zhòngyào (important) wǒ ____ dǎrǎo nǐmen.*

10 Jiùshì

Jiùshì 'to be precisely (something or somebody)', 'to be nothing else but' is used in the following way:

Question: *Wǒ zhǎo Yuàn lǎoshī. Nǐ rènshi tā ma?* 'I'm looking for Teacher Yuan. Do you know him?'

Answer: *Wǒ jiùshì tā* 'I am he (and no other)'.

11 Zhè zhǒng but zhè yàng de

Unlike *zhǒng* which is a true measure word and can therefore directly precede its noun, *yàng* acts as a noun with *zhè* and *nà* and must therefore take *de* before any noun which follows it: *zhè zhǒng qíngkuàng* 'this sort of situation' but *zhè yàng de shuǐpíng* 'this kind of level'. *Zhèyàng* and *nàyàng* can operate independently as adverbs to mean 'in this way' or 'in that way' ('like this' or 'like that'). *Zhèyàng zuò bù hǎo* 'It's no good doing it like this'. *Zhèyàng lěng, duì shēntǐ bù hǎo* 'Weather as cold as this is bad for the health'. *Tā xiě de zhèyàng kuài, zhēn méi xiǎng dào* 'I never expected him to write so quickly'.

12 More on resultative verbs

Resultative verbs were first introduced in 5.1, potential resultative verbs in 7.13. In this chapter we meet three more resultative verb endings:

-hǎo meaning 'to do the action of the verb satisfactorily' (and therefore also expressing the idea of completion).

-dǒng meaning 'to do the action of the verb with understanding'.

-hǎo can be found with many different verbs such as *zuò*, *shuō*, *zhǔnbèi* ('to prepare') and *xiě* but *-dǒng* is limited to *tīng* ('to listen') and *kàn* ('to read'):

Nǐmen cài dìng hǎo le méi you?

Bàozhǐ kàn de dǒng ma?

-qīngchu can also act as a resultative verb ending meaning 'to do (the action of the verb) clearly'.

13 More on directional endings

We met simple directional endings in 5.1 and compound directional endings in 8.9. Apart from their more literal meaning, a certain number of directional endings have extended or figurative meanings: verb + *qǐlai* (Lit. 'up': *ná qǐlai* 'to pick up', *zhàn qǐlai* 'to stand up').

- i 'to start to do' the action of the verb (and continue doing it) or for a state of affairs to start (and continue): *tán qǐlai* 'start to chat'. *Tiānqì nuǎnhuo qǐlai le* 'The weather's starting to get warm'.
- ii To express a view or convey an impression: *kàn qǐlai* 'from the look of things'. *Kàn qǐlai yào xià yǔ* 'It looks like rain'. *Tīng qǐlai hěn yǒu dào lǐ* (Lit. Listen up/very/have/reason). 'It sounds very reasonable'. *Shuō qǐlai róngyì, zuò qǐlai nán* 'It's easier said than done'.
- iii *Xiǎng qǐlai* is widely used to mean 'to remember', 'to recall':

A, wǒ xiǎng qǐlai le, tā xìng Chén 'I've got it, she was called Chen'.

Another very useful directional ending used in a figurative way is *-xiàqu* (Lit. '(go) down') which is used to mean 'to carry on' doing the action of the verb: *zuò xiàqu* 'to carry on doing' (in a different context it could mean 'to sit down!'). *Tīng xiàqu* 'to carry on listening'.

Exercise 11.3

Fill in the blanks with the most appropriate resultative verb ending (two brackets indicate a compound directional ending). You may need to refer back to 5.1, 7.13 and 8.9 to refresh your memory.

- Zhè kè kèwén wǒ kàn bu (), néng bu neng* (be capable of/can) *bāngzhù wǒ yíxià?*
- Zhuōzi tài dà le, bān bu () ().*
- Wǒ zài wàimiàn dēngzhe nǐ. Qǐng nǐ zǒu () (), hǎo bu hao?*
- Liànxí* (exercise) *wǒ hái méi zuò () ne, jīntiān shìqing tài duō le.*
- Nǐ zěnméi bù chī cài ne? Shì bu shì yǐjīng chī () le?*
- Wǒ tài bèn* (stupid) *le, gēn bu () nǐmen liǎng wèi.*
- Jīntiān de bàozhǐ méi kàn (), bù zhīdao zài nǎr.*
- Zuìjìn* (recently) *hǎishuǐ* (seawater) *rè () () le, míngtiān kěyǐ qù yóuyǒng* (swim).
- Nà ge shāfā tài xiǎo le, zuò bu () sān ge rén.*
- Zhè ge zì xiě () yìdiǎnr, yào bùrán wǒ zěnméi kàn de ()?*
- Duìxiàng shénme shíhou* (when?) *zhǎo de () shì hěn nán shuō de.*
- Zhè běn xiǎoshuō suīrán méi yǒu yìsi, dànshi hái yào kàn () ().*

i Chinese classlessness

One of the delights of Chinese society is that on some levels, (as shown in the text for instance), people appear unaffected by apparent differences in social status, and natural curiosity and real friendliness win the day. In general it is much easier for foreigners, with or without the right 'credentials' or connections (*guānxi*) to meet relatively well-known public figures, particularly those in the arts, than it would be for them in the West. If you are one of those people who 'succeeds' in this direction, beware of a false sense of your own importance – it may be that your Chinese contacts are just being polite! That many famous people seem to remain relatively untouched by their own success is a measure of how civilized, in real terms, the Chinese are.

Exercise 11.4

Make up your own sentences using the following constructions:

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 yī ... jiù ... | 5 yuè lái yuè ... |
| 2 yǒu ... yòu ... | 6 rúguǒ ... jiù ... |
| 3 bú shì ... jiù shì ... | 7 suīrán ... dànshì ... |
| 4 bú shì ... ér shì ... | 8 bú shì ... ma? |

Exercise 11.5

Translate the following passage into colloquial English:

Zhāng Zhànyī shì ge fúwùyuán. Tā hěn xǐhuan tā de gōngzuò, yīnwèi tā yǒu jīhuì (opportunity) gēn hěn duō bù tóng (not same, different) de rén jiēchù. Bú shì Měiguórén jiù shì Yīngguórén, bú shì Zhōngguórén jiù shì Rìběnrén. Yǒude wàiguórén huì shuō hěn liúli (fluent) de pǔtōnghuà, dànshì yángwèi(r) hěn zhòng (heavy), fāyīn, yǔfǎ dōu bú dà duì, kěshì hái tīng de dǒng. Yǒude wàiguórén yī shuō qǐ Hànyǔ lái jiù hěn hǎoxiào (funny), yīnwèi méi yǒu shénme shēngdiào. Yě yǒu yìxiē wàiguórén Hànyǔ shuō de hěn gāo, zài Zhōngguó dāi le hěn cháng shíjiān le, Zhōngwén bàozhǐ, xiǎoshuō dōu kàn de dǒng, Hànzì yě huì xiě yìxiē. Chéngniánrén xué qǐ Hànyǔ lái bìng bù róngyì, zhíde (be worth) pèifú (admire) tāmen. Yǒude rén lián (even) tāmen zìjǐ de mǔyǔ yě shuō bu hǎo, gèng bú bì (not have to) shuō yì mén (MW) wàiyǔ le!

NB. lián ... yě ... go together in the same way as rúguǒ ... jiù ... (see 9.4).

Exercise 11.6

Translate the following into Chinese:

- 1 I guess that if she's not American, she must be English.
- 2 His tones are really excellent but his pronunciation is hopeless.
- 3 I've already been to (1)/China(3)/six times(2)/but (I) *still* can't understand what people are saying.
- 4 As far as my best friend is concerned, writing is even more interesting than reading.
- 5 His hair (*tóufa*) is really long. How come he hasn't got it cut (*jiǎn*) yet?
- 6 She mastered (use *xué hǎo*) modern standard Chinese after only two years.
- 7 He's been learning Chinese for three years so his standard is pretty good now.
- 8 I didn't know until yesterday that he does not know how to use a Chinese dictionary.
- 9 Everyone likes talking to interesting people but there aren't many of them around (use *zhè yàng*).
- 10 I'll only disturb you if it's something important (*zhòngyào*).
- 11 I liked him very much after only talking with him once or twice.
- 12 He is terribly lazy (*lǎn*). It took him until today to read one page.

i The Guanxi network

Who knows whom in China is very important when the wheels of bureaucracy need a certain amount of oiling and certain goods and services are in short supply. Your personal relations network is known as your *guānxihù* 关系户 (Lit. relationship household) and some people seem to have very extensive ones. Your *guānxihù* will be made up of many of those *tóng* relationships explained in Chapter 21, as well as your relatives and other people you have met along life's path. Many educated young people from urban areas who were sent to the countryside during the Cultural Revolution established quite sizeable *guānxihù* during that time which still stand them in good stead. If for instance a friend, colleague or *lǎo tóngxué* (old classmate) gives you an introduction (whether personally or by phone or letter) to one of his/her *guānxi* it is quite usual to present your new '*guānxi*' with a suitable present of some sort, a carton of foreign cigarettes *yì tiáo wàiguó yān* used to be quite acceptable. It would, of course, be wonderful not to have to use the *guānxihù* system to buy air or rail tickets or other goods and services (this is a small part of what the students were protesting about in 1989) but in a country so densely populated as China, it is well nigh impossible *not* to use the *guānxihù* system on occasions.

12

grammar review

In this chapter you will learn

- about common measure words
- about denominations of money
- about time words and expressions
- about resultative verbs
- about directional endings
- about auxiliary verbs and conjugations

As this chapter is for reference, characters have been included where they may be helpful.

Common measure words

Pinyin	Character	Classification	Examples
<i>bǎ</i>	把	Objects with a handle, chairs packet (e.g. 20)	knife, umbrella, toothbrush; chair
<i>bāo</i>	包	cup	cigarettes
<i>bēi</i>	杯	volume	tea, coffee
<i>běn</i>	本		books, magazines
<i>bù</i>	部		film
<i>dǐng</i>	顶		hats
<i>fēn</i>	份		newspaper
<i>fēng</i>	封		letter
<i>fù</i>	副		sunglasses
<i>gè</i>	个	used if you have forgotten the correct one!	man
<i>jià</i> or <i>tái</i>	架、台	machines	television, radio, computer room
<i>jiān</i>	间		clothes, luggage
<i>jiàn</i>	件	piece, article	remarks
<i>jù</i>	句	phrase	toilet paper, camera film
<i>juǎn</i>	卷	reel, spool	tree
<i>kē</i>	棵		text, lesson
<i>kè</i>	课		
<i>kǒu</i>	口	family members	
<i>kuài</i>	块	piece	soap, land
<i>liàng</i>	辆	wheeled vehicles	car, bicycle
<i>píng</i>	瓶	bottles	
<i>qún</i>	群	crowd, group, flock	sheep, bees
<i>shǒu</i>	首		poem
<i>tào</i>	套	set	suite of furniture, set of stamps
<i>tiáo</i>	条	long and winding; carton (e.g. 200)	towel, fish, street, river; cigarettes
<i>wèi</i>	位	person (polite)	teacher, Mrs
<i>zhāng</i>	张	flat, rectangular objects	map, bed, table
<i>zhī</i>	枝、支	long and thin objects	pencil, cigarette (one)
<i>zhī</i>	只	animals, one of paired body parts	butterfly, cat, hand, leg
<i>zuò</i>	座	large, solid thing	mountain, bridge, building

Denominations of money and time used like measure words

Pinyin	Character	Meaning
<i>fēn</i>	分	1/10 of a máo
<i>máo</i>	毛	1/10 of a kuài
<i>kuài</i>	块	basic unit of Chinese currency
<i>fēn</i>	分	minute
<i>kè</i>	刻	quarter
<i>tiān</i>	天	day
<i>nián</i>	年	year

Time words and expressions

1 Time words

Time words have two functions:

- As adverbs, they stand before a verb or another adverb to form a time background for the verb: *Wǒ jīntiān bú qù* 'I'm not going today'. *Shàng ge xīngqī tā méi qù gōngzuò* 'She didn't go to work last week'.
- As nouns, they may function as the subject or object of a verb or modify another noun (with *de* 的): *Jīntiān shì xīngqīsì* 'Today is Thursday'. *Zuótiān de bào, nǐ kàn le mei you?* 'Did you see yesterday's paper?'.

2 Types of 'time-when' expressions (standing before the verb)

- Time words and phrases such as:

<i>cóngqián</i> formerly	<i>zuótiān wǎnshang</i> yesterday evening
<i>jīntiān</i> today	<i>tiāntiān zhōngwǔ</i> every day at noon
<i>yè lǐ</i> in the night	<i>qīyuè sì hào</i> July 4th
<i>nà tiān</i> that day	<i>dì'èr tiān</i> the second or next day
<i>zhè jǐ ge yuè</i> these last few months	<i>měi (ge) xīngqītiān</i> every Sunday

- Time clauses such as:

xiǎo de shíhou 'when one is young'.
xuéxí Zhōngwén de shíhou 'when one is learning Chinese'.
cóng xīngqīyī dào xīngqīwǔ 'from Monday till Friday'.

c Lapse of time before negated verbs:

Wǒ sān tiān méi chī dōngxi 'I didn't eat a thing for three days'.

Sān tiān bù chī fàn bù xíng 'It won't do not to eat for three days'.

Wǒ hěn jiǔ méi yǒu hē jiǔ le 'I haven't touched alcohol for ages'.

Wǒ nà sì nián méi kànjiàn tāmen 'I didn't see them during those four years'.

3 Types of 'time during which' expressions (standing after the verb)

a Num + MW + (*de* 的) and Num + MW + Noun + (*de* 的) such as: liù tiān 'six days', liǎng ge xīngqī 'two weeks', shí nián de Zhōngwén 'ten years of Chinese', yí ge bàn yuè de Rìwén 'a month and a half of Japanese'.

b Indefinite quantities of time

i Tāmen zǒu le hěn jiǔ le 'They've been gone for a long time'.

ii Wǒ zhǔnbèi kèwén, zhǔnbèi hěn jiǔ le 'I spent a lot of time on preparing the text'.

NB In b i two *les* – action still going on; in ü one *le* – action happened in the past.

Resultative verbs (an introduction)

A resultative verb consists of a stem (an action verb) with a complement expressing the result of the action of the stem, e.g. Tā kàn cuò le zhè ge zì 'S/he read this character wrongly', Nǐ de huà, wǒ tīng qīngchū le 'I heard clearly what you said'. As can be seen from this, the ending or complement may be followed directly by an object.

A resultative ending is regularly followed by the perfective suffix *-le* 了 and is negated by *méi* (you) 没(有), e.g. Nǐ de huà wǒ méi tīng qīngchū 'I didn't hear clearly what you said'. If the result has not yet been achieved then of course the sentence is negated by *bù* 不: Zhōngwén xiǎoshuō wǒ hái bù néng kàn dǒng 'I can't read Chinese novels (i.e. novels written in Chinese) yet'.

When the sentence refers to future time or is in the imperative form, the suffix *-le* 了 is not normally used: Wǒmen yíding yào xué hǎo Zhōngwén 'We certainly must/want to master Chinese', Niàn shù kèwén 'Read the text aloud until you're familiar with

it'. Apart from common resultative endings such as *-hǎo* 好 and *-wán* 完 there are also directional endings which can function as resultative endings: *Yào kàn zhè bù diànyǐng de rén fēicháng duō, wǒ hái méi kàn shàng ne* 'Masses of people want to see this film, I (still) haven't managed to see it (yet)'. *Nǐ mǎi dào zhè běn shū méi you?* 'Did you manage to buy this book'?

Table of resultative verb endings: common functional endings

Ending	Type of result	Used with (examples)	Limitations	
<i>wán</i> 完	completion	<i>zuò</i> 作、做、 <i>shuō</i> 说、 <i>xiě</i> 写、 <i>kàn</i> 看	potential form only actual form: -le 了	
<i>hǎo</i> 好	satisfaction, completion	as above + <i>bàn</i> 办、 <i>zhǔnbèi</i> 准备		
<i>huì</i> 会	learning	<i>xué</i> 学		
<i>zháo</i> 着	attainment	<i>zhǎo</i> 找、 <i>mǎi</i> 买、 <i>shuì</i> 睡		
<i>liǎo</i> 了	possibility	<i>zuò</i> 作、 <i>ná</i> 拿、 <i>chī</i> 吃、 <i>mǎi</i> 买、 <i>mài</i> 卖		
<i>cuò</i> 错	error	<i>shuō</i> 说、 <i>xiě</i> 写、 <i>zuò</i> 作、 <i>tīng</i> 听		
<i>dào</i> 到	arrival, attainment	<i>xiǎng</i> 想、 <i>bān</i> 搬、 <i>sòng</i> 送、 <i>pǎo</i> 跑、 <i>zǒu</i> 走、 <i>xué</i> 学、 <i>tán</i> 谈		
<i>qǐ</i> 起	i afford to ii respect for, self-respect	<i>mǎi</i> 买、 <i>chī</i> 吃、 <i>zhù</i> 住、 <i>duì</i> 对		potential only potential only
<i>bǎo</i> 饱	satisfaction of appetite	<i>chī</i> 吃		
<i>dǒng</i> 懂	understanding, comprehension	<i>tīng</i> 听、 <i>kàn</i> 看		
<i>jiàn</i> 见	perception (sensory)	<i>kàn</i> 看、 <i>tīng</i> 听		
<i>kāi</i> 开	separation, leaving room for	<i>kāi</i> 开、 <i>lí</i> 离、 <i>zǒu</i> 走	potential only	
<i>dòng</i> 动 <i>gānjìng</i> 干净	movement cleanness	<i>ná</i> 拿、 <i>bān</i> 搬 <i>xǐ</i> 洗		

NB The example verbs listed under 'used with' are far from an exhaustive list. Some endings such as *-bǎo* 饱, *-dǒng* 懂 and *-jiàn* 见 are limited by their essential meaning.

Directional endings or complements

Both intransitive action verbs of motion and transitive action verbs indicating the handling of objects commonly take directional endings or complements: *Tāmen cóng wàibian zǒu jìnlai le* 'They walked in from outside', *Wǒ jīntiān ná lai le hěn duō zhàopiàn* 'I've brought a lot of photos today'.

Directional endings are either: (1) simple or (2) compound. In (2) the second element is either *lái* 来 or *qù* 去. Only a small group of simple directional endings form compound directional endings with *lái* 来 or *qù* 去 as the second element. These are *shàng* 上, *xià* 下, *jìn* 进, *chū* 出, *qǐ* 起, *huí* 回, *guò* 过 and *kāi* 开.

If the object is a place word it must come before *lái* 来 or *qù* 去. If not it may either come before *lái* 来 or *qù* 去 or it may come after the verb + simple or compound ending:

Wǒ yào qù túshūguǎn ná wǒ de bàozhǐ lai 'I want to/must go to the library to fetch my newspaper'.

Tā cóng zhuōzi shang ná qǐ tā de bào lai, zuò xiàlai kàn 'S/he picked up his/her newspaper from (on) the table and sat down and/to read it'. *Tā cóng zhuōzi shang ná qǐlai tā de bào.* 'S/he picked up his/her newspaper from (on) the table.' Other directional endings are *dǎo* 倒, *zǒu* 走 and *diào* 掉, but these and other similar directional endings cannot form compound endings with *lái* 来 or *qù* 去.

Auxiliary verbs

What is an auxiliary or modal verb? An auxiliary verb is a member of a limited class of verbs which occur before action verbs or verbal expressions, adding a semantic value of modality ('can, will, must') to the expression as a whole. They cannot take verbal complements or verbal suffixes, and are not used as modifiers before nominals. They usually express the modality of action verbs.

- a Auxiliary verbs expressing capability, e.g. *néng* 能, *huì* 会, *kěyǐ* 可以.

- i *Néng lái, jiù qǐng lái* 'Please come if you can'.
- ii *Tā huì shuō Hànyǔ* 'S/he can speak Chinese'.
- iii *Nà ge gōngchǎng kěyǐ zhìzào hěn duō dà jīqī* 'That factory can produce a lot of heavy machinery'.

Huì 会 usually expresses an acquired capability, although *néng* 能 and *kěyǐ* 可以 can have a similar meaning.

- i *Nǐ huì huá xuě, wǒ bú huì* 'You know how to ski, but I don't'.
 - ii *Tā néng kàn Zhōngwén xiǎoshuō* 'S/he is able to read Chinese novels'.
- b Expressing permission or prohibition, e.g. *néng* 能 and *kěyǐ* 可以.
- i *Zhè kěyǐ* (or *néng*) *xī yān* 'Smoking is permitted here'. NB When *néng* 能 and *kěyǐ* 可以 express capability, the negated verb can only be *bù néng* 不能. When expressing prohibition, both *bù néng* 不能 and *bù kěyǐ* 不可以 can be used.
- c Expressing possibility, e.g. *huì* 会 (usually in relation to some future occurrence).
- i *Bú huì xià yǔ, nǐ qù ba* 'Off you go, it can't (possibly) rain/won't rain'.
 - ii *Tā huì lái bāngzhù nǐ* 'S/he may come to help you'.
 - iii *Wǒ xiǎng zhènme jiǎngjiù de lǚguǎn bú huì tài piányi (de)* (Lit. I think such an elegant hotel can't be too inexpensive/I shouldn't think such an elegant hotel can be very cheap).
- d *Yào* 要 has three meanings as an auxiliary verb:
- 1 Expressing will, wish or 'wanting to'.
 - 2 Expressing necessity 'must'.
 - 3 Expressing the future likelihood of something happening.
- Wǒ yào qù túshūguǎn* 'I want to go to the library'. This sentence could also mean 'I'll be going to the library' or even 'I must go to the library'. Such ambiguities are removed if the sentence is negated. The negative counterpart of (1) is *bù xiǎng* 不想 and of (2) *bú yòng* 不用. *Yào* 要 is also used with 'le' 了 to indicate (3), e.g. *yào xià yǔ le* 'It's going to rain'. *Bú yào (bié)* 不要 (别) is used for negative imperatives, e.g. *Nǐ bú yào/bié lái!* 'Don't (you) come!' and not 'You don't want to come'.
- e Expressing desire, inclination or preference, e.g. *xiǎng* 想 or *xǐhuan* 喜欢.

i *Wǒ bù xiǎng qù kàn tā, wǒ xiǎng zài jiā lǐ kàn diànshì* 'I don't fancy going to see him, I fancy staying at home and watching TV' Note the overlap with *yào* 要 (1) in the negative.

ii *Háizi xǐhuan wánr* 'Children like to play'.

NB Both these verbs can function as transitive verbs (as can *yào* 要).

f Expressing willingness, e.g. *yuànyì* 愿意 and *kěn* 肯.

i *Tā yuànyì cānjiā pīngpāngqiú bǐsài*. 'S/he's willing to/wishes to take part in the table-tennis competition'.

ii *Tā bú shì bù néng lái, ér shì bù kěn lái* 'It isn't that s/he can't come, but that s/he's unwilling to'.

g Expressing 'ought to', 'should', e.g. *yīnggāi* 应该, *gāi* 该, *yīngdāng* 应当.

i *Nǐ bù yīnggāi nàme shuō* 'You shouldn't talk like that'.

ii *Wǒ xiànzài gāi zǒu le* 'I ought to go now'.

h Expressing necessity (other than *yào* 要), e.g. *děi* 得, *bìděi* 必得, *bìxū* 必须.

i *Wǒ děi zǒu le* 'I must go'.

ii *Wǒ jīntiān bìděi kàn wán nà běn shū* 'I must finish reading that book today'.

Their negative counterparts are *bú yòng* 不用, *bú bì* 不必 and *bù xūyào* 不需要.

i Other modal verbs, e.g. *gǎn* 敢 'to dare to', *pà* 怕 'to be afraid of' (*pà* 怕 can take a noun as its object), *hǎo yìsi* 好意思 'have the nerve to'.

i *Wǒ bù gǎn gēn tā shuō huà* 'I don't dare talk to him'.

ii *Zhè ge háizi hěn pà jiàn shēngrén* 'This child is very much afraid of meeting strangers'. NB Some grammarians maintain that *pà* 怕 is not a real auxiliary verb because it can take *hěn* 很, *gèng* 更, etc.

iii *Zuò le zhè zhǒng shì, kuī tā hái hǎo yìsi shuō ne!* 'Fancy his doing that sort of thing and then having the nerve to talk about it!'

Remember that auxiliary verbs:

cannot take aspect markers, e.g. *le* 了, *-guo* 过, *-zhe* 着;

cannot be modified by intensifiers such as *hěn* 很, *gèng* 更;

cannot be nominalized;

cannot occur before the subject;

cannot take a direct object.

Auxiliary verbs *must* co-occur with a verb (or an 'understood' verb).

Table of common pairs of conjunctions

<i>búdàn ... érqiě (or yě/hái) ...</i> 不但 而且 (or 也/还)	not only ... but also
<i>rúguǒ (de huà) ... jiù ...</i> 如果 (的话) 就	if ... then
<i>yàoshi ... jiù ...</i> 要是 就	
<i>yào bù ... jiù ...</i> 要不 就	if not ... then
<i>yào bú shì ... jiù ...</i> 要不是 就	if not that ... then
<i>jiǎrú ... yě ...</i> 假如 也	supposing, in the event that ... still
<i>jiǎshǐ ... yě ...</i> 假使 也	
<i>jíshǐ ... yě (hái) ...</i> 即使 也(还)	even if ... still
<i>jiùshì ... yě (hái) ...</i> 就是 也(还)	
<i>jìrán ... jiù ...</i> 既然 就	since ... then
<i>bùguǎn ...</i> 不管	no matter whether ... still
<i>búlùn ... yě (hái) ...</i> 不论 也(还)	
<i>wúlùn ...</i> 无论	
<i>suīrán ... dànshì/kěshì ...</i> 虽然 但是/可是	although ... but
<i>yīnwèi ... suǒyǐ ...</i> 因为 所以	because ... therefore
<i>yóuyú ... (jiù)</i> 由于 就	because, owing to, due to ... then
<i>chúfēi ... cái ...</i> 除非 才	unless ...
<i>zhǐyào ... yě/jiù ...</i> 只要 也/就	if only, as long as ... then
<i>zhǐyǒu ... cái</i> 只有 才	only if ... then

<i>búshì</i> ... <i>érsì</i> ... 不是 而是	it's not ... but
<i>búshì</i> ... <i>jiùshì</i> ... 不是 就是	if it's not ... then it's
<i>fánshì</i> ... <i>dōu</i> ... 凡是 都	all ...
<i>chúle</i> ... <i>yǐwài</i> ... 除了 以外	besides ...
<i>lián</i> ... <i>yě/dōu</i> ... 连 也/都	even ...
<i>fēi</i> + verb ... <i>bùkě</i> 非 + verb 不可	must (do the action of the verb)

Adverbs as conjunctions

i Same element occurring in first and second clauses:

<i>yòu</i> ... <i>yòu</i> ... 又 又	both ... and
<i>yě</i> ... <i>yě</i> ... 也 也	not only ... but also
<i>yuè</i> ... <i>yuè</i> ... 越 越	the more ... the more ...
(<i>yù</i>) ... (<i>yù</i>) ... 愈 愈	(more formal than <i>yuè</i>)
<i>yībiān</i> + V_1 , <i>yībiān</i> + V_2 一边 + V_1 , 一边 + V_2	doing V_1 at the same time as V_2

ii Different element in second clause:

<i>yī</i> V_1 , 一 V_1 , <i>jiù</i> V_2 就 V_2	as soon as V_1 happens, then V_2 begins.
---	--

13

an introduction to Chinese characters

In this chapter you will learn







- what the earliest characters looked like
- about the evolution of characters over the years
- how characters are composed
- about radicals or signifiCS
- how Chinese children learn to write characters
- some basic rules for writing characters
- to recognize some useful public notices and signs

What are Chinese characters? These are the symbols used to write Chinese which you will have seen written over Chinese restaurants or takeaways. What on earth have they to do with 'China Garden' or 'Jade Cottage' you may well have asked yourself. Well, here's your chance to find out!

Written Chinese is understood by more people in the world than any other language and its earliest written records date back over 3500 years. These were the markings scratched onto tortoise shells and animal bones which were used to predict future events. These 'oracle bones' were used in divination rites during the Shang dynasty (c. 1500 BC). Even at that time, the Chinese had already developed quite a sophisticated language with an extensive vocabulary. From these ancient writings we can see that many of the earliest characters were pictures or *pictographs*. Below are a few examples showing the evolution of such characters into their modern day form. You should move from left to right, the character now in use being the one on the extreme right!

				<i>rì</i>	sun
				<i>yuè</i>	moon
				<i>rén</i>	person
				<i>mù</i>	tree

Abstract concepts could also be represented by symbols:

				<i>shàng</i>	up
				<i>xià</i>	down

As time went on and people needed to express more complex ideas or concepts, pictographs were extended or combined to form *ideographs*. A sun and a moon together mean 'bright', a woman under a roof means 'peace', a woman with a child beside her means 'good', a sun rising behind a tree means 'east'. A tree doubled forms the character for 'forest' and if tripled it means a 'dense forest'.

日 sun	+	月 moon	=	明 bright
女 woman	+	宀 roof	=	安 peace
女	+	子 child	=	好 good
日	+	木 tree	=	東 east
木	+	木	=	林 forest
木	+	木	=	森 dense forest

(Extensions of meaning were sometimes inherent in the character itself and required no further addition, thus 日 'sun' also means 'day', 月 'moon' also means 'month'.)

What a wonderful way of creating language this was, but of course only a limited number of ideas could be expressed in this way. Characters of this type which do not possess a phonetic element are relatively few and account for maybe 10% of all Chinese characters but many of them are still in common use today.

Most characters contain a phonetic element. Such characters are known as *phonograms* or *radical-phonetic* characters. They are made up of two components, one called the *radical* (the Chinese call these 'significs' or 'common heads') which indicates the classification of the character and the other the *phonetic*, which should give a clue to its pronunciation. Thus 青 *qīng* 'blue', 'green', 'black' is a character in its own right but it is the phonetic for such characters as 情 *qíng* 'emotion', 'feelings', 清 *qīng* 'pure', 'clear' and 请 *qǐng* 'ask', 'request' whereas the radical for these is 'heart' 忄, 'water' 氵 and 'speech' 讠 (言), respectively.

青	=	blue, green, black
忄 heart	+ 青 =	情 emotion, feelings
氵 water	+ 青 =	清 pure, clear
讠 speech	+ 青 =	请 ask, request

Before you get too carried away with the neatness of this one, I should say that as a result of the gradual development of the language and the many changes that have occurred in pronunciation, many phonetics now only indicate the approximate sound: 工 *gōng* 'work' becomes 空 *kōng* 'empty' (穴 is a cave), silk + *gōng* becomes 红 *hóng* 'red' and insect + *gōng* also becomes 虹 *hóng* 'rainbow'.

工 = gōng
 穴 cave + 工 = 空 kōng
 纟 silk + 工 = 红 hóng
 虫 insect + 工 = 虹 hóng

Others are of even less assistance, but learning to recognize phonetics and radicals is of great help in learning characters. Fortunately there are not too many radicals to be learnt. Older dictionaries list 214, modern ones have reduced this to 189. If the forms in combination and/or full characters are listed separately, this can increase the number to around 250. A good many of these are very little used so I have listed 80 or so of the more common ones below and overleaf in the hope that they will serve as a useful reference point in your recognition and learning of characters.

Now look at the first column of the radical table which shows what each radical looks like on its own (not all of them appear as characters in their own right in modern Chinese). The second column shows what they look like when they are combined with a phonetic if there is any change (otherwise this column is left blank). The third gives the romanization and the last column the meaning.

Radicals/significs

In isolation	In combination	Romanization	Meaning
人	亻	<i>rén</i>	person
刀	刀	<i>dāo</i>	knife
口	口	<i>kǒu</i>	mouth
土	土	<i>tǔ</i>	earth
女	女	<i>nǚ</i>	woman
宀		-	roof
山	山	<i>shān</i>	mountain
心	心	<i>xīn</i>	heart
手	手	<i>shǒu</i>	hand
日		<i>rì</i>	sun
木		<i>mù</i>	tree
水	水	<i>shuǐ</i>	water
火	火	<i>huǒ</i>	fire
疒		-	disease/sickness

In isolation	In combination	Romanization	Meaning
目		mù	eye
禾		hé	grain
竹	艹	zhú	bamboo
纟 (糸)		sī	silk
肉	月*	ròu	flesh
月	* 艹	yuè	moon
艹 (草)	艹 艹	cǎo	grass
言	讠	yán	speech
车 (車)	车	chē	cart/carriage
辶		-	walking
金	钅	jīn	metal (gold)
食	饣	shí	food
马 (馬)		mǎ	horse
鱼 (魚)		yú	fish
鸟 (鳥)		niǎo	bird (long-tailed)
冫		-	above
冰	冫	bīng	ice
厂		-	cliff
八	八, 丷	bā	eight
儿		ér	child, son
又		yòu	also, again
力		lì	strength
口		-	an enclosure
大		dà	big, noble
子	子, 子	zǐ	child, son
寸		cùn	inch
尸		shì	corpse
巾		jīn	napkin, towel, handkerchief
广		-	covering, roof
彳		chì	to step (with left foot)
女		-	to tap, rap
阝 on left		-	abundant, mound

* Characters with the 'moon' and 'flesh' radical are no longer differentiated and appear under the same 'radical' viz. 月.

In isolation	In combination	Romanization	Meaning
邑 on right 门 (門)	阝	yì	region
小	小, 艹	mén	door
犬	犬, 犴	xiǎo	small
示	示	quǎn	dog
玉		shì	an omen; express
戈		yù	jade
贝 (貝)		gē	spear, lance
、		bèi	shell/object of value
一		diǎn	dot
见 (見)		héng	horizontal
爪	爪	shù	vertical
六		jiàn	to see
立	立	zhuǎ	claw
衣	衣 衤	xué	cave, hole
石		lì	to stand
田		yī	clothing
矢		shí	stone, mineral
羊	羊 𦍋	tián	field
米	羊, 𦍋, 羊	shǐ	arrow
耳		yáng	sheep
页 (頁)		mǐ	rice
虫		ěr	ear
舟		yè	page/leaf
走		chóng	insect
酉		zhōu	boat
		zǒu	walk/travel
		yǒu	(i) 10th of Twelve Earthly Branches
足	足	zú	(ii) spirit made from ripe millet
身	身	shēn	foot/enough, satisfied
角		jiǎo	body
青		qīng	horn, angle
雨	雨	yǔ	blue/green/ black
			rain

In isolation	In combination	Romanization	Meaning
隹		<i>zhuī</i>	short-tailed bird
革		<i>gé</i>	hide/leather/ remove
骨/骨		<i>gǔ</i>	bone
黑		<i>hēi</i>	black/dark
羽 (羽)		<i>yǔ</i>	feather/wing

Many of these radicals were originally pictographs but some of them have been simplified so much that the original picture has almost been lost. Any radicals which appear in brackets in the first column are so-called 'full' characters, which are still in use in Hong Kong, Taiwan, Singapore and other overseas Chinese communities. The Chinese, needless to say, have their own way of describing individual characters (and radicals) as you will see in Chapter 16 where Mr King explains to the box office clerk how his name is written. If you really 'get into' characters you will go into this aspect in greater depth. For the moment, if we say that the water radical (氵) is described as being *sān diǎn shuǐ* 'three drops water', that characters with the speech radical (讠) on the left-hand side are described as having *yán zì páng(r)* 'yan character side', (i.e. the character *yán* at the side) and that characters with grass (艹) on top are described as *cǎo zì tóu*, having 'a grass character head', you will have some idea of how this works.

Since the founding of the People's Republic of China in 1949, the Chinese have simplified a number of their characters (well over 2000) in an attempt to improve the literacy of the ordinary population. Until then, characters had remained essentially unchanged for about 2000 years. There is now a permanent committee responsible for the reform of Chinese characters. The majority of books, magazines and newspapers printed in the People's Republic are now written in simplified characters, as is this book. The main principles used in simplification are: (a) changing one part of a character, (b) striking out one or two parts of a character (c) substituting a 'simple' character for a difficult one and (d) reconstructing the whole character. The following examples are divided into these four categories. When you have done some more work on characters come back and see if you can work out what has happened in each case!

a Changing one part of a character

1	劉	刘	liú
2	禮	礼	lǐ
3	難	难	nán
4	環	环	huán
5	漢	汉	hàn

b Striking out one or two parts of a character

6	務	务	wù
7	處(處)	处	chù
8	開	开	kāi
9	標	标	biāo
10	醫	医	yī
11	習	习	xí
12	滅	灭	miè
13	號	号	hào

14	麗	丽	lì
15	婦	妇	fù
16	鄉	乡	xiāng
17	豐	丰	fēng
18	蟲	虫	chóng

c Substituting a 'simple' character for a 'difficult' one

19	鬱	郁	yù
20	穀	谷	gǔ
21	醜	丑	chǒu

d Reconstructing the whole character

22	頭	头	tóu
23	靈	灵	líng
24	龜	龟	guī
25	體	体	tǐ

How do the Chinese learn to write characters?

Official figures put illiteracy in China at 20–25%, but in reality it is likely to be much higher. Literacy in the towns is far higher than in the countryside for obvious reasons. With the introduction of the 'responsibility system' *zérènzì* there is less incentive for rural children to study. How do Chinese children master such a complicated system of writing anyway? The answer is that they start at a very early age and spend a lot of time on it, both at home and in school, far more than we have to do in learning how to write English. At this point I shall introduce you to one or two learning aids which are widely used in China and may serve as an inspiration to you in your learning of characters. There are numerous little books entitled 看图识字, *kàn tú shí zì* 'Look at the picture and recognize the character' or 你认识吗? *Nǐ rènshi ma?* 'Do you know (it)? (i.e. the character)' which contain drawings of everyday objects, parts of the body, fruit, vegetables, different types of weather, common actions like singing, washing – you name it and it's there somewhere. The drawings below are extracts from one such little book.



tóu
头



yǎn jīng
眼睛



bí zi
鼻子



zuǐ ba
嘴巴



ěr duo
耳朵



yá chǐ
牙齿



shǒu
手



jiǎo
脚



guō
锅



wǎn
碗



hú
壶



pán
盘



kuài
筷



sǎn
伞

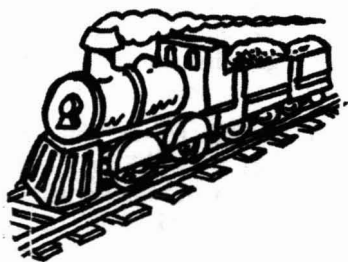


bēi
杯

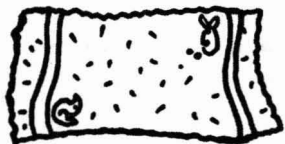


lán
篮

Another system is to have a small card with a drawing of the object on one side and the *pinyin* and characters for it on the other. You will see Chinese children from the age of three upwards shuffling these cards around. Most Chinese couples are only allowed one child, and they usually encourage him/her to start learning to read and write as early as possible.



huǒ chē
火车



máo jīn
毛巾

Literal meanings: 'fire vehicle' (train) and 'hair cloth' (towel)



fēi jī
飞机



chàng gē
唱歌

Literal meanings: 'fly machine' (aeroplane) and 'sing song' (to sing)

You can make your own 'flash cards' as you work your way through the book from Chapter 14 onwards and you may decide to go back and make them for Chapters 1–11 also as these contain a lot of basic vocabulary. The characters for all the vocabulary items in the texts appear in the Chinese (*pinyin*)–English Vocabulary at the back of the book. Your flash cards will normally consist of the character or characters on one side and the *pinyin* and the English on the other. Work through them looking at the character side first, seeing how many of the characters you recognize. Check your answers with the *pinyin*

and English on the back. Put the ones you get right on one side and then work your way through the ones you got wrong, again putting to one side the ones you get right this time. Carry on until you have mastered them all.

As your vocabulary (and pile of flash cards) increases, you may have to put the ones you are unfamiliar with the first time through on one side and tackle them again on another occasion. This exercise should be repeated constantly! Make your cards a handy size for taking around with you on buses, trains and the underground. Having worked through your flash cards 'recognizing' the characters, do it the other way around. Look at the *pinyin* and English side and try writing out the Chinese character for it. This is much more difficult. Check your answer with the character on the other side. Adopt the same system as before, discarding the ones you get right and 'keeping' the ones you get wrong.

By deciding to learn Chinese you have made a decision that you will never be able to complain that you have nothing to do!

Chinese children also trace the characters in copybooks which may or may not contain material which we would regard as propaganda. Below is the first page from a copybook printed in 1970 (Cultural Revolution time) which contains Mao's famous speech on 'Serve the People' *Wèi Rénmín Fúwù* delivered by him at a memorial meeting for Zhang Side on 8 September 1944. When you have worked through a few of the chapters in characters come back and see if you can spot the date.

	为	人	民	服	务	(一九四四年九月八日)			
		我	们	的	共	产	党	和	共
产	党	所	领	导	的	八	路	军、	新
四	军,	是	革	命	的	队	伍。	我	们
这	个	队	伍	完	全	是	为	着	解
放	人	民	的,	是	彻	底	地	为	人

This extract illustrates the point that each individual Chinese character occupies the same amount of space, i.e. a square of the same proportions, whether it be in the mind or actually indicated as here (so as to help children keep their characters all the same size). Characters which go together and form a 'word' such as *àiqíng* 爱情 'love' are not written any closer together than the two characters for 'I love' *wǒ ài* 我爱 although 'love' is one word and 'I love' is two words. (At least this avoids the headache which we have with *pinyin* of deciding what should be joined and what should be split.) Because each character occupies the same amount of space, I always encourage beginners to start practising characters on squared paper, which forces you to observe this practice.

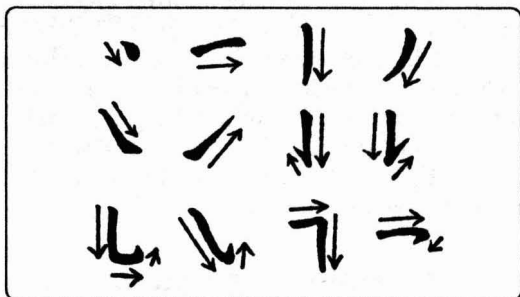
Basic rules for writing characters

As you can imagine, there are some basic rules for writing characters which you need to master. This is important if you are to remember them, because in order to store them away so that it can reproduce them when you require it to, the brain needs to operate a kind of orderly filing system. To do this, it needs all the help it can get. Most characters are made up of two or more basic structural parts called 'character components' though of course some character components such as 日 *rì* 'sun' can stand by themselves as we have mentioned earlier. Although the total number of characters is quite large, (I won't put you off by telling you precisely *how* large), the number of character components is limited. These components are written with a number of basic strokes which are illustrated below:

Stroke Name

丶	点	<i>diǎn</i>	dot
一	横	<i>héng</i>	horizontal
丨	竖	<i>shù</i>	vertical
丿	撇	<i>piě</i>	left-falling
㇇	捺	<i>nà</i>	right-falling
㇇	提	<i>tí</i>	rising
乚	钩	<i>gōu</i>	hook
㇇	折	<i>zhé</i>	turning

These strokes are basically straight lines and were traditionally written in ink with a hair brush. The main directions are from top to bottom and from left to right. The arrows on the basic strokes below show how the characters are written by showing the direction each stroke takes:



The rules of stroke order in writing Chinese characters and character components are as follows:

Example	Stroke order	Rule	
十	一	十	First horizontal, then vertical
人	丿	人	First left-falling, then right-falling
三	一 =	三	From top to bottom
州	丶 丿 丨 州 州 州	州 州 州	From left to right
月	丿 月 月 月	月 月 月	First outside, then inside
四	丨 冂 四 四 四	四 四 四	Finish inside, then close
小	丨 小 小 小	小 小 小	Middle, then the two sides

There will be a table of the stroke-order of Chinese characters in Chapters 14–18 to help you practise writing characters correctly. When looking at a character decide whether it can be split into an upper and lower part, or perhaps a left and a right. Has it got some sort of a roof? Or a base? Is it symmetrical? Asking yourself these sorts of questions should give you a better chance of getting the stroke order right. Perhaps you may like to try to copy or trace the following public notices and signs. Numbers 14–18 are all in Beijing.

Some useful public notices and signs

Chinese characters	Pinyin transliteration and literal meaning	English translation
1 银行	<i>yínháng</i> silver business	Bank
2 汽车站	<i>qìchēzhàn</i> steam carriage stop	Bus stop
3 男厕所	<i>nán cèsuǒ</i> male lavatory place	Men's lavatory
4 女厕所	<i>nǚ cèsuǒ</i> female lavatory place	Women's lavatory
5 派出所	<i>pàichūsuǒ</i> assign/send place	Police station (local)
6 邮局	<i>yóujú</i> post office	Post office
7 饭馆	<i>fànguǎn</i> rice establishment	Restaurant
8 入口	<i>rùkǒu</i> enter mouth/opening	Entrance
9 出口	<i>chūkǒu</i> come/go out mouth/opening	Exit
10 危险	<i>wēixiǎn!</i>	Danger
11 谢绝参观	<i>xièjué cānguān</i> refuse/decline visit	No admission
12 禁止吸烟	<i>jìnzhǐ xī yān</i> prohibit/ inhale forbid tobacco	No smoking
13 禁止照相	<i>jìnzhǐ zhào xiàng</i> prohibit reflect appearance	Photography forbidden
14 天安门	<i>Tiān'ānmén</i> heaven peace gate	Tiananmen/ The Gate of Heavenly Peace
15 长安街	<i>Cháng'ān jiē</i> long peace street	Changan Street

Chinese characters	Pinyin transliteration and literal meaning	English translation
16 北京饭店	<i>Běijīng Fàndiàn</i> north capital rice shop	Beijing Hotel
17 王府井	<i>Wángfǔjǐng</i> king residence well	Wangfujing (Street)
18 友谊商店	<i>Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn</i> friendship merchant shop	Friendship Store

Even today, the art of calligraphy (the writing of Chinese characters as an art form) is highly regarded in China and many educated Chinese will hang scrolls of characters, beautifully mounted, on their walls, just as we would hang a picture by, say, Turner or Picasso. Calligraphers all have their own individual styles and of course their admirers and critics, just as painters do. (As calligraphy is an art with its roots in the ancient past, these scrolls are always written in the traditional way from top to bottom and usually in their full form which is visually more pleasing.)

Using a Chinese-English dictionary

Most of the dictionaries you will have access to, use *pinyin* to list the characters in alphabetical order according to their pronunciation. This is only of use if you know how a particular character is pronounced, otherwise you will have to look it up using the radical. (There are other systems but this is the most straightforward at this stage.) Having identified the radical, (not always so easy) and counted up the number of strokes it has, you look for it in the radical index at the front of the dictionary. Radicals are arranged according to the number of strokes they have – all the radicals with ‘one stroke’ 一画 *yī huà* come first, all the radicals with ‘two strokes’ 二画 *èr huà* next and so on. Each radical has a number assigned to it which may vary slightly from dictionary to dictionary so don’t automatically assume it’s the same. Having found which number radical it is (the number may be to the left or to the right of the radical itself), then look it up in the character index proper which immediately follows and which lists each radical in order. Under each radical are listed all the characters which have that radical in common.

These are listed in turn according to the number of strokes they have when the radical has been taken away.

Thus 情 *qíng* 'emotions' is listed under the heart radical † as having eight strokes 八画, but it will come after 恨 *hèn* 'hate' which has six. 吗 *ma* (question particle) will come under the mouth radical and be listed as having three strokes 三画 and will precede 哭 *kū* 'weep, cry' which has seven. I hope you have got the idea! Having found the character you are looking for in the index, you will either find a page number next to it or the *pinyin* and tonemark, either of which will enable you to look it up in the dictionary proper. It sounds hard work but it's not as bad as it looks once you get the hang of it and it can be quite satisfying. It is reckoned that there are around 4000 characters in daily use, of which approximately 2000 are needed to read a newspaper. Overleaf is the radical index from a popular dictionary (汉英词典 A Chinese-English Dictionary). It may prove useful to you as a reference. The number to the left of the radical indicates the order in which it appears.

When tackling the character exercises, don't expect to get them all right all at once. They are there for you to learn from as you go along and to go back to time and time again. Perhaps you will only recognize a few characters to start with (and be able to write even fewer), but you will gradually recognize more and more (and be able to write more). Be patient, stay with it – believe me, it can be a rewarding experience.

Whatever way you look at them, Chinese characters are fascinating, representing as they do the continuity of Chinese culture. Even if you decide not to spend too much time on them, appreciate their beauty and their long history. If you do decide you want to pursue this side of your Chinese studies there are many interesting books to read and enjoy. This chapter can only scratch the surface of what characters are all about but if it has kept your interest or better still, fired your imagination, it has served its purpose.

部首检字

Radical index

(一) 部首目录

部首左边的号码表示部首的次序

一 画	35	又	70	ヨ(ヨ)	105	中	140	业	175	缶	209	金
1	丶	36	乚	71	弓	106	贝	141	176	未	210	鱼
2	一	37	厶	72	己(巳)	107	见	142	177	舌		九 画
3	丨	38	凵	73	女	108	父	143	178	竹(𦵏)	211	音
4	ノ	39	匕	74	子(子)	109	气	144	179	白	212	革
5	一	三 画		75	马	110	牛(牛)	145	180	自	213	是
6	冂	40	彳	76	幺	111	手	146	181	血	214	骨
7	乙(乚)	41	亻	77	彡(糸)	112	毛	147	182	舟	215	香
二 画		42	冫(冫)	78	ㄥ	113	女	148	183	羽	216	鬼
8	冫	43	亡	79	小(丩)	114	片	149	184	艮(艮)	217	食
9	冫	44	广	四 画		115	斤	150		七 画		十 画
10	冫	45	宀	80	彡	116	爪(㇇)	151	185	言	218	高
11	二	46	冂	81	心	117	尺	152	186	辛	219	扇
12	十	47	乚	82	斗	118	月	153	187	辰	220	影
13	厂	48	工	83	火	119	夕	154	188	麦		十一 画
14	ナ	49	土(土)	84	文	120	欠	155	189	走	221	麻
15	匚	50	卅	85	方	121	风	156	190	赤	222	鹿
16	卜(卜)	51	井	86	户	122	氏	六 画		191	豆	十二 画
17	丨	52	大	87	衤	123	比	157	192	羊(𦍋)	223	黑
18	一	53	尢	88	王	124	丰	158	193	西		十三 画
19	冂	54	寸	89	圭	125	水	159	194	豕	224	鼓
20	冫	55	扌	90	天(天)	五 画		160	195	里	225	鼠
21	丨	56	弋	91	韦	126	立	161	196	足		十四 画
22	厂	57	巾	92	步	127	广	162	197	采	226	鼻
23	人(入)	58	口	93	廿(卅)	128	穴	163	198	豸		一
24	八(ㄨ)	59	口	94	木	129	衤	164	199	谷	227	余类
25	乂	60	山	95	不	130	夂	165	200	身		
26	勹	61	中	96	犬	131	玉	166	201	角		
27	刀(夕)	62	彳	97	歹	132	示	167		八 画		
28	力	63	彡	98	瓦	133	去	168	202	青		
29	儿	64	夕	99	牙	134	艹	169	203	卓		
30	几(几)	65	女	100	车	135	甘	170	204	雨		
31	マ	66	丸	101	戈	136	石	171	205	非		
32	冂	67	尸	102	止	137	龙	172	206	齿		
33	冫(在左)	68	彳	103	日	138	戌	173	207	龟		
34	冫(在右)	69	彳	104	日	139	艹	174	208	佳		

14

shopping

mǎi dōngxi 买东西

In this chapter you will learn

- how to ask for things in shops
- how to ask the price
- about Chinese money
- the stroke order of useful Chinese characters and their radicals

▶ Pattern one: 'Specific item' 多少 (duōshao) 钱? (qián?) How much is this/that item?

- Question: 这本杂志多少钱?
Zhè běn zázhì duōshao qián?
- Answer: 这本杂志七毛六。
Zhè běn zázhì qī máo liù.
- Question: 那张地图多少钱?
Nà zhāng dìtú duōshao qián?
- Answer: 那张地图四毛九。
Nà zhāng dìtú sì máo jiǔ.
- Question: 这件衣服多少钱?
Zhè jiàn yīfu duōshao qián?
- Answer: 这件衣服十五块二。
Zhè jiàn yīfu shíwǔ kuài èr.
- Question: 那件衬衫多少钱?
Nà jiàn chènshān duōshao qián?
- Answer: 那件衬衫八块钱。
Nà jiàn chènshān bā kuài qián.
- Question: 这件毛衣多少钱?
Zhè jiàn máoyī duōshao qián?
- Answer: 这件毛衣四十一块零五分。
Zhè jiàn máoyī sìshíyī kuài líng wǔ fēn.


买 [大]	mǎi (v)	to buy
东 [一] 西 [西]	dōngxī (n)	thing(s)
买东西	(v-o)	to go shopping
多 [夕] 少 [小]	duōshao (QW)	how many?
钱 [钅]	qián (n)	money
这 [讠]	zhè (dem. adj./p.)	this
本 [木]	běn (MW)	for books, magazines
杂 [木] 志 [心]	zázhì (n)	magazine
七 [一]	qī	seven
毛 [毛]	máo (MW; n)	for money; wool
六 [八]	liù	six
那 [讠]	nà (dem. adj./p.)	that
张 [弓]	zhāng (MW)	for flat, rectangular objects
地 [土] 图 [口]	dìtú (n)	map
四 [口]	sì	four
九 [丿]	jiǔ	nine
件 [亻]	jiàn (MW)	piece, article, item
衣 [衣] 服 [月]	yīfu (n)	clothes
十 [十] 五 [一]	shíwǔ	fifteen

块 [土]	kuài (MW)	lump (for money, soap, etc.)
二 [二]	èr	two
衫 [衤]	chènshān (n)	shirt, blouse
八 [八]	bā	eight
毛衣	máoyī (n)	sweater, woolly
一 [一]	yī	one
零 [雨]	líng	zero
分 [八]	fēn (MW)	for money

Table of stroke order of Chinese characters

买	一 丩 丩 丩 丩 买 买
东	一 ㇇ 东 东 东
西	一 冂 冂 冂 西 西
钱	钅 (丩 丩 丩 丩 钅) 戈 (一 二 戈 戈 戈)
杂	九 (丩 九) 木 (一 十 才 木)
志	士 (一 十 士) 心 (丩 心 心 心)
七	一 七
毛	一 二 三 毛
六	丶 宀 六 六
那	月 (冂 冂 冂 冂) 阝 (了 阝)
张	弓 (一 丩 弓) 长 (丩 丩 长 长)
地	土 (一 十 土) 也 (一 丩 也)
图	口 冬 丨 冂 冂 冂 冂 冂 图 图
四	丨 冂 四 四 四
九	丩 九

件	亻 (𠂇 亻) 牛 (犭 犮 牝 牛)
衣	衤 亠 𠂇 𠂇 衣 衣
服	月 (冂 月 月 月) 艮 (𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 艮)
十	一 十
五	一 丁 五 五
块	土 夬 (丩 ㄩ 夬 夬)
二	一 二
衬	衤 (𠂇 𠂇 衤 衤 衤) 寸 (一 寸 寸)
衫	衤 彡 (丿 彡 彡)
八	ノ 八
零	零 (一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一)
	令 (丩 八 八 令 令)
分	八 刀 (丩 刀)

 Pattern two: Item 多少钱一 MW? How much per unit is item?

- Question: 报多少钱一份儿?
Bào duōshao qián yí fèn? (the 儿 *ér* on 份 *fèn* is optional but is often there).
- Answer: 报一毛钱一份儿。
Bào yì máo qián yí fèn.
- Question: 香烟多少钱一包?
Xiāngyān duōshao qián yì bāo?
- Answer: 中国烟七、八毛钱一包。
Zhōngguó yān qī, bā máo qián yì bāo.
- Answer: 外国烟三块五一包。
Wàiguó yān sān kuài wǔ yì bāo.
- Question: 香皂多少钱一块?
Xiāngzào duōshao qián yí kuài?

- Answer: 香皂八、九毛钱一块。
Xiāngzào bā, jiǔ máo qián yí kuài.
- Question: 苹果多少钱一斤?
Píngguǒ duōshao qián yì jīn?
- Answer: 苹果一块二一斤。
Píngguǒ yí kuài èr yì jīn.
- Question: 邮票多少钱一套?
Yóupiào duōshao qián yí tào?
- Answer: 邮票四块钱一套。
Yóupiào sì kuài qián yí tào.

报 [扌]	bào (n)	newspaper
份 [亻]	fèn (MW)	a copy; portion
香 [禾] 烟 [火]	(xiāng)yān (n)	cigarette
包 [勹]	bāo (MW) (n)	packet (of), package
中 [丨] 国 [口]	Zhōngguó	China
外 [夕] 国	wàiguó (adj.)	foreign
三 [一]	sān	three
香皂 [白]	xiāngzào (n)	toilet soap
苹 [艹] 果 [木]	píngguǒ (n)	apple
斤 [斤]	jīn (MW)	catty (1/2 kilogram)
邮 [阝] 票 [示]	yóupiào (n)	stamp
套 [大]	tào (MW)	set

Table of stroke order of Chinese characters

报	扌 (一 丨 扌) 艮
香	禾 (一 二 千 禾 禾) 日 (丨 口 日 日)
烟	火 (丶 丿 ㇇ 火) 口 大 丨 冂 日 冂 冂 因
包	勹 (ノ 勹) 巳 (㇇ ㇇ 巳)
中	丨 口 (丨 口 口)
国	口 玉 丨 冂 冂 冂 冂 冂 国 国 国
外	夕 (ノ 夕 夕) 卜 (丨 卜)
皂	白 (丶 丨 冂 白 白) 七

苹	艹 (一 十 艹)	平 (一 一 一 一 平)
果	日 木	丨 冂 日 日 且 甲 果 果
斤	一 厂	尸 斤
邮	由 (丨 冂 日 由 由)	卩
票	西	示 (一 一 一 示 示)
套	大	县 (一 一 尸 尸 且 县 县)

▶ Pattern three: 我要这 (Wǒ yào zhè) MW 'I would like this one'.

Dialogue

- 售货员: 您要买什么?
Shòuhuòyuán: *Nín yào mǎi shénme?*
 史爱理: 我要买丝绸, 多少钱一米?
Shǐ Àilǐ: *Wǒ yào mǎi sīchóu, duōshao qián yì mǐ?*
 售货员: 十三块五。您要几米?
Shòuhuòyuán: *Shísān kuài wǔ. Nín yào jǐ mǐ?*
 史爱理: 两米半。
Shǐ Àilǐ: *Liǎng mǐ bàn.*
 售货员: 一共三十三块七毛五。这是四十块, 找您六块二毛五。
Shòuhuòyuán: *Yígòng sānshísān kuài qī máo wǔ. Zhè shì sìshì kuài, zhǎo nín liù kuài èr máo wǔ.*
 史爱理: 好, 谢谢。
Shǐ Àilǐ: *Hǎo, xièxie.*
 售货员: 没什么, 再见。
Shòuhuòyuán: *Méi shénme, zàijiàn.*
 史爱理: 再见。
Shǐ Àilǐ: *Zàijiàn.*

售 [口]	货 [贝]	员 [口]	shòuhuòyuán (n)	shop assistant
		您 [心]	nín (p.s)	you (polite)
		要 [女]	yào (v)	want
什 [亻]	么 [丿]		shénme (QW)	what?
		我 [戈]	wǒ (p.s)	I, me
丝 [一]	绸 [纟]		sīchóu (n)	silk

米 [米]	mǐ (MW)	metre
几 [几]	jǐ (QW/adj.)	how many?; several
两 [一]	liǎng	two (of a kind)
半 [一]	bàn	half
一共 [一]	yí gòng (adv.)	altogether
是 [是]	shì (v)	to be
找 [找]	zhǎo (v)	to give back (as of change)
好 [女]	hǎo (adj.)	good
谢谢 [讠]	xièxiè (v)	to thank; thank you
没 [讠]	méi (neg.)	not
再 [一] 见 [见]	zàijiàn	goodbye

Table of stroke order of Chinese characters

售	隹 (ノ 亻 亻 亻 亻 亻 隹) 口
货	亻 七 贝 (丨 冂 贝 贝)
员	口 贝
您	亻 尔 (ノ 亻 尔 尔 尔) 心
要	西 女 (人 女 女)
什	亻 十
么	ノ 厶 (厶 厶)
我	一 一 手 手 我 我 我
丝	纟 纟 纟 纟 纟
绸	纟 (ノ 纟 纟)
	周 (冂 月 月 月 月 月 周 周)
米	丶 丶 丶 半 米 米
几	丿 几

两	一	厂	冂	冂	冂	冂	冂	冂	冂
半	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	丶	半
共	一	十	廿	卅	肆	共	共		
是	日	𠄎 (一 下 𠄎 𠄎)							
找	扌	戈 (一 七 戈 戈)							
好	女	子 (丿 了 子)							
谢	讠 (讠 讠)	身 (身 身 身 身 身 身)	扌						
没	氵 (氵 氵 氵)	殳 (殳 殳 殳)							
再	一	厂	冂	冂	冂	冂	冂	冂	冂
见	丨	冂	冂	冂	冂	冂	冂	冂	冂

Grammar

Money

The Chinese currency is known as 'the people's currency', *rénmínbì* (RMB) 人民币. ('Foreign currency' is *wàibì* 外币). The largest single unit is the *yuán* 元 (represented by 元 in many transactions). There are ten *jiǎo* 角 in one *yuán* and ten *fēn* 分 in one *jiǎo*. These are the characters used in the written language and printed on banknotes, tickets, etc. In spoken Chinese, *kuài* 块 'piece/lump' is used for *yuán* and *máo* 毛 for *jiǎo* but *fēn* remains unchanged. When two or more different units of currency are used together, the last one is usually omitted so it is *sān kuài wǔ* and not *sān kuài wǔ máo*, *sì máo liù* and not *sì máo liù fēn*. If a sum of money involves *kuài* and *fēn* but no *máo*, the absence of the latter is marked by a *líng*, 'zero':

27.05 元 èrshíqī kuài líng wǔ fēn.

Note that under these circumstances *fēn* cannot be omitted.

The word for 'money' *qián* is sometimes put after amounts expressed entirely in *kuài*, *máo* or *fēn*:

jiǔ kuài qián 9.00 元
 qī máo qián 0.7 元
 bā fēn qián 0.08 元

Liǎng is often used with *kuài* and *máo* (*liǎng kuài*, *liǎng máo*) but only with *fēn* when there are no *kuài* or *máo*:

liǎng kuài liǎng máo èr 2.22 元
 but
 liǎng fēn qián 0.02 元

When the last number in a series is 'two' then *èr* is always used:

liǎng kuài èr 2.2 元

RMB (Rénmínbì)	Spoken	Written
0.01 yuán	yì fēn (qián)	yì fēn
0.1 yuán	yì máo (qián)	yì jiǎo
1.00 yuán	yí kuài (qián)	yì yuán
3.5 yuán	sān kuài bàn } sān kuài wǔ }	sān yuán wǔ jiǎo
7.68 yuán	qī kuài liù máo bā	qī yuán liù jiǎo bā fēn
12.09 yuán	shí'èr kuài líng jiǔ fēn	shí'èr yuán líng jiǔ fēn
20.00 yuán	èrshí kuài (qián)	èrshí yuán
99.99 yuán	jiǔshíjiǔ kuài jiǔ máo jiǔ	jiǔshíjiǔ yuán jiǔ jiǎo jiǔ fēn

Exercise 14.1

Supply the missing MW (in pinyin and in characters):

Wǒ mǎi zhè ___ zázhi → Wǒ mǎi zhè běn/本 zázhi.

- 1 Tā mǎi le sān ___ dītú.
- 2 Wǒ zuótiān mǎi le yí ___ xīn (new) yīfu.
- 3 Liǎng ___ máoyī shì jiù (old) de.
- 4 Tā měi tiān xī (smoke) sì ___ yān.
- 5 Wǒmen yí ge xīngqī yòng yí ___ féizào.
- 6 Zuò zhè ___ chènshān yào mǎi liǎng ___ bù (cloth).

Exercise 14.2

Write out in characters the sum of money in each sentence.

Nà jiàn máoyī wǔshí kuài qián → 五十块钱。

- 1 Zhè jiàn yīfu èrshí kuài.
- 2 Yì mǐ bù sì kuài bā.
- 3 Sān jīn píngguǒ sān kuài jiǔ.
- 4 Yóupiào liù kuài qī yí tài.
- 5 Bào yì máo èr yí fēn.
- 6 Zhōngguó yān bā máo sì yí bāo.

Exercise 14.3

Learn the following radicals, their romanization and their meaning:

1 大	dà	'big'.
2 一	héng	'horizontal (line)'.
3 小	xiǎo	'small'.
4 钅(金)	jīn	'metal'.
5 辶	-	'walking radical' (always written last no matter what its position).
6 木	mù	'tree'.
7 心	xīn	'heart'.
8 口	kǒu	'mouth'.
9 凵	-	'enclosure'.
10 月	yuè or ròu	'moon' or 'flesh' (see Chapter 13).
11 土	tǔ	'earth'.
12 衤(衣)	yī	'clothing'.
13 扌(手)	shǒu	'hand'.
14 禾	hé	'grain'.
15 日	rì	'sun'.

Exercise 14.4

Write out each of the following characters in *pinyin* and say what the radical is: e.g. 国 → guó 'enclosure'. (Use Chapter 13 if you have any difficulties.)

- 1 苹 2 衬 3 没 4 谢 5 块
6 本 7 是 8 烟 9 志 10 买

Exercise 14.5

For each of the following characters take out the radical and then count up the number of strokes remaining. Indicate what the radical is: e.g. 钱 → 5 (钅).

- 1 东 2 件 3 图 4 好 5 我
6 报 7 邮 8 套 9 您 10 找

i The three Ms

Shopping in China requires a different set of skills from that in the West. Always buy whenever you see something you like – you may never see it again! Delay and you may well be greeted by one of the dreaded three Ms: *Méi yǒu le* 'It is no more!', *Mài wán le* 'sold out' and in answer to your query as to when the goods might again be on sale you may be told *Míngtiān* 'tomorrow' but tomorrows have a nasty habit of never coming so be warned! Avoid disappointment, buy now.

Exercise 14.6

Write the following sentences in Chinese characters and then translate them into English:

- 1 *Shòuhuòyuán shì Zhōngguó rén* (人).
- 2 *Dìtú sān máo èr yì zhāng.*
- 3 *Nà běn zázhi bā máo jiǔ.*
- 4 *Nín méi mǎi dōngxi.*
- 5 *Píngguǒ yí kuài sì yì jīn.*

Exercise 14.7

Translate into Chinese characters:

- 1 I want to buy three magazines and a newspaper.
- 2 Yesterday (昨天) I bought (le 了) two shirts.
- 3 He (他) wants to go shopping.
- 4 How many metres of silk do you want?
- 5 Thank you. Goodbye.

15

buying tickets (i)

去影剧院买票

qù yǐngjùyuàn mǎi piào

In this chapter you will learn

- how to buy tickets for entertainments
- how to give the date
- more about the stroke order of characters
- about China's main dynasties

售票员

Shòupiàoyuán

史爱理

Shǐ Àilǐ

售票员

Shòupiàoyuán

史爱理

Shǐ Àilǐ

售票员

Shòupiàoyuán

史爱理

Shǐ Àilǐ

售票员

Shòupiàoyuán

史爱理

Shǐ Àilǐ

售票员

Shòupiàoyuán

十二月十三号的音乐会还有票吗?

Shí 'èryuè shísān hào de yīnyuèhuì hái yǒu piào ma?

还有。你要几张?

Hái yǒu. Nǐ yào jǐ zhāng?

要四张。楼下的还有吗?

Yào sì zhāng. Lóuxià de hái yǒu ma?

有。你看,第九排怎么样?

Yǒu. Nǐ kàn, dì jiǔ pái zěnmeyàng?

很好。多少钱一张?

Hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yì zhāng?

一块三。四张五块二。

Yí kuài sān. Sì zhāng wǔ kuài èr.

给你六块。

Gěi nǐ liù kuài.

找你八毛,这是你的票。

Zhǎo nǐ bā máo, zhè shì nǐ de piào.

谢谢你。请问,《日出》这部电影怎么样,有意思吗?

Xièxie nǐ. Qǐng wèn, 《Rìchū》 zhè bù diànyǐng zěnmeyàng, yǒu yìsi ma?

挺好的。大家都说很有意思。你下个星期来看吧。

Tǐng hǎo de. Dàjiā dōu shuō hěn yǒu yìsi. Nǐ xià ge xīngqī lái kàn ba.

影 [彡]	剧 [剧]	院 [院]	票 [示]	去 [土]	qù (v)	to go
				售票员	yǐngjùyuán (n)	cinema and theatre
				月 [月]	piào (n)	ticket
				号 [口]	zhāng (MW)	box office clerk
				的 [白]	shòupiàoyuán (n)	month
音 [音]	乐 [木]	会 [人]	还有 [月]	吗 [口]	yuè (n)	month
		你 [亻]	楼 [木]	下 [一]	hào (n)	number; date
		看 [目]			de	see 3.5
		第 [第]			yīnyuèhuì (n)	concert
		排 [扌]			hái (adv.)	still
怎 [心]	么样 [木]				yǒu (v)	to have; there is/are
					ma	question particle
					nǐ (ps)	you
					lóuxià (n)	downstairs
					kàn (v)	to look, see
					dì	ordinal prefix
					pái (n)	row, line
					zěnmeyàng	what about it?

很 [彳] 给 [纟] 请 [讠] 问 [口] 日 [日] 出 [丨]

部 [阝] 电 [田] 影 意 [心] 思 [心] 有 意思 挺 [扌] 大 [大] 家 [宀] 都 [阝] 说 [讠] 下 [一] 个 [人] 星 [日] 期 [月] 来 [一] 吧 [口]

hěn (adv.) very
gěi (v) to give; for
qǐng (v) to invite
wèn (v) to ask
Rìchū (N) Sunrise (film version of a play by Cao Yu)
bù (MW) for films
diànyǐng (n) film
yìsī (n) meaning
yǒu yìsī (v-o) to be interesting
tǐng (adj.) very, rather
dàjiā (p) everybody
dōu (adv.) all, both
shuō (v) to speak, say
xià (adj.) next
gè (MW) see 3.1
xīngqī (n) week
lái (v) to come
ba particle indicating suggestion

Table of stroke order of Chinese characters

去	土	厶
影	日	京 (丶 一 宀 宀 宀 宀 京 京 京) 彡
剧	尸 (㇇ ㇇ 尸)	古 (一 十 古 古 古)
		冫 (丨 冫)
院	阝	宀 (丶 丶 宀) 元 (一 二 元 元)
号	口	丂 (一 丂)
的		白 (丶 丨 白 白 白) 勹 (丶 勹 勹)
音		立 (丶 宀 宀 宀 立) 日
乐		一 亅 乐 乐 乐
会		人 (丿 人) 云 (一 二 云 云)

还	不(一 丌 丌 丌) 迨(讠 讠) *this component is always written last		
有	宀(一 宀) 月		
吗	口	马(丩 马 马)	
楼	木	米	女
下	一 丌 下		
看	尹(一 二 三 尹) 目(丨 冂 冂 月 目)		
第	竹(丷 丷 𦰃 𦰃 𦰃)		
	弟(丩 冫 弓 弔 弟)		
排	扌	非(丨 丨 丨 丨 非 非 非 非)	
怎	乍(丿 丿 个 乍 乍) 心		
样	木	羊(丷 丷 𦍋 𦍋 𦍋 羊)	
很	彳(丿 彳 彳) 艮(丩 彡 彡 艮 艮 艮)		
给	纟	合(丿 人 厶 个 合 合)	
请	讠	青(一 二 丰 丰 产 青 青 青)	
问	门(丿 丨 门) 口		
出	凵 凵 中 出 出		
部	立	口	阝
电	田(丨 冂 冂 日 电) 乚		
意	产	目	心
思	田	心	
挺	扌	壬(一 二 千 壬) 廴(廴 廴)	

都	者 (一 + 土 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇) 𠂇
说	讠 兑 (丷 丷 丷 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇 兑)
个	人 丨
星	日 生 (丿 一 一 牛 生)
期	其 (一 十 廿 廿 廿 廿 其 其) 月
来	一 一 一 一 平 来 来
吧	丩 巴 (丿 丩 丩 巴)

Grammar

1 Dates

We have already covered months of the year and days of the week in 10.5 and 10.3 but we still do not know how to tackle dates. The order for a date is the reverse of that used in English: year, month, day, hour.

The year is read as single numbers followed by the word *nián* (年) 'year': 1949 *yījiǔsìjiǔ nián* (yī jiǔ sì jiǔ nián), 1976 *yījiǔqīliù nián*, 1988 *yījiǔbābā nián*.

When asking what the date is the Chinese use *jǐ yuè jǐ hào?* (Lit. how many months how many numbers):

Question: Jīntiān (shì) jǐ yuè jǐ hào?

Answer: Jīntiān wǔyuè èrshíèr hào. (22 May)

Question: Xīngqītiān jǐ hào?

Answer: Xīngqītiān sānshíyī hào. (31st)

Equipped with this information we can now tackle such phrases as 9 am on Monday, 11 July 1936: *Yījiǔsānliùnián qīyuè shíyī hào (rì*) xīngqīyī shàngwǔ jiǔ diǎn*.

Note that in Chinese you move from the general to the particular. As we are on date, the chart below should be of interest!

* *Rì* (日) is used more frequently in formal, written Chinese whereas *hào* is commonly used in the spoken language.

China's main dynasties

夏	<i>Xià</i>	c. 21st–16th century BC
商	<i>Shāng</i>	c. 16th–11th century BC
周	<i>Zhōu</i>	c. 11–256 BC
秦	<i>Qín</i>	211–206 BC
汉	<i>Hàn</i>	206 BC–AD 220
三国	<i>Sānguó</i> Three Kingdoms	220–280
晋	<i>Jìn</i>	265–420
南北朝	<i>Nán-Běi Cháo</i> North/South Dynasties (see 17.1)	420–589
隋	<i>Suí</i>	581–618
唐	<i>Táng</i>	618–907
五代	<i>Wǔdài</i> Five Dynasties	907–960
宋	<i>Sòng</i>	960–1279
辽	<i>Liáo</i>	970–1125
金	<i>Jīn</i>	1115–1234
元	<i>Yuán</i>	1279–1368
明	<i>Míng</i>	1368–1644
清	<i>Qīng</i>	1644–1911
中华民国	<i>Zhōnghuá Mínguó</i> Republic of China	1912–1949
中华人民共和国	<i>Zhōnghuá Rénmín Gònghéguó</i> People's Republic of China	1949–

NB	公元前	<i>gōngyuán qián</i>	BC
	公元	<i>gōngyuán</i>	AD
	世纪	<i>shìjì</i>	century
	二十一世纪	<i>èrshíyī shìjì</i>	21st century

2 Titles

As capital letters cannot exist in the Chinese script, except artificially in romanization, the titles of books, films, plays, etc. are distinguished by placing them between 《 》 marks: 《*Richū*》 《日出》 'Sunrise'.

Exercise 15.1

Learn the following radicals, their romanization and their meaning.

- 1 刀 (刀) *dāo* 'knife'.
 2 示 (示) *shì* 'omen'.
 3 人 }
 4 人 } *rén* 'person' (we used to call it 'the man' radical!).
 5 目 *mù* 'eye'.
 6 竹 (竹) *zhú* 'bamboo'.
 7 纟 *sī* 'silk'.
 8 言 (言) *yán* 'speech'.
 9 丨 *shù* 'vertical (line)'.
 10 田 *tián* 'field'.

Exercise 15.2

Write out each of the following characters in *pinyin* and put the common component contained in the characters of each group in the brackets:

e.g. 谢 *xiè*、说 *shuō*、请 *qǐng* (讠).

- 1 意 __、志 __、怎 __ ().
 2 报 __、挺 __、排 __ ().
 3 号 __、员 __、问 __ ().
 4 都 __、部 __、邮 __ ().
 5 来 __、七 __、下 __ ().

Exercise 15.3

Write out the characters you have met containing each of the following components. (In each case, find the number of characters indicated by the dashes.)

e.g. 口: 吧、吗。

- 1 土: __、__、__。
 2 女: __、__。
 3 丨: __、__。
 4 木: __、__、__、__、__。
 5 月: __、__、__。
 6 口: __、__、__。
 7 彡: __。
 8 人: __、__。
 9 亻: __、__、__、__。
 10 讠: __、__。

Exercise 15.4

Write the following *pinyin* sentences in Chinese characters and then translate them into English.

- 1 *Kàn diànyǐng zěnmeyàng?*
 2 *Lóuxià yǒu rén ma?*

- 3 《Rìchū》 zhè bù diànyǐng yǒu méi you yìsi?
- 4 Shàng (上 last) ge xīngqī nǐ méi lái.
- 5 Yīnyuèhuì jǐ yuè jǐ hào?

Exercise 15.5

Translate into Chinese characters:

- 1 Today (今天) is 3 November.
- 2 Excuse me, what is the date today?
- 3 There is nobody upstairs (楼上 *lóushàng*).
- 4 Everybody says that shopping is very interesting.
- 5 Have you still got any money?/How much do you want?
- 6 I was in (在 *zài*) China in 1968.

16

buying tickets (ii)

打电话买票

dǎ diànhuà mǎi piào

In this chapter you will learn

- about telephone numbers
- how to describe the characters in your Chinese name
- how to describe imminent action
- more about radicals



王永寿
Wáng Yǒngshòu

(拨五五么，零九七八，过了一会儿才有人接)
(Bō wǔ wǔ yāo, líng jiǔ qī bā, guò le yíhuìr cái yǒu rén jiē)

喂，首都剧场吗？

Wèi, Shǒudū Jùchǎng ma?

是，您是哪里？

Shì, nín shì nǎlǐ?

我是北大的英国专家。请问，《上帝的宠儿》还在演吗？

Wǒ shì Běidà de Yīngguó zhuānjiā. Qǐng wèn, 《Shàngdì de Chǒng'ér》 hái zài yǎn ma?

还在演，可是快要不演了，大后天就不演了。

Hái zài yǎn, kěshì kuài yào bù yǎn le, dàhòutiān jiù bù yǎn le.

明天、后天都有票吗？

Míngtiān, hòutiān dōu yǒu piào ma?

明天客满了，后天的票不多了。

Míngtiān kè mǎn le, hòutiān de piào bù duō le.

后天星期五，能不能给我留两张好票？我今天下午去取。

Hòutiān xīngqīwǔ, néng bu néng gěi wǒ liú liǎng zhāng hǎo piào? Wǒ jīntiān xiàwǔ qù qǔ.

行，可是今天下午一定来取，因为票快卖完了，不好留。

Xíng, kěshì jīntiān xiàwǔ yíding lái qǔ, yīnwei piào kuài mài wán le, bù hǎo liú.

您放心吧，我一定会去。

Nín fàng xīn ba, wǒ yíding huì qù.

您贵姓？

Nín guìxìng?

我姓王，名字叫王永寿。

Wǒ xìng Wáng, míngzi jiào Wáng Yǒngshòu. 王是三横一竖的王，

'Wáng' shì sān héng yí shù de 'Wáng',

'永'是'永远'的'永'，'寿'是'长寿'的'寿'。

'yǒng' shì 'yǒngyuǎn' de 'yǒng', 'shòu' shì 'chángshòu' de 'shòu'.

好了，我记下来了。

Hǎo le, wǒ jì xiàlái le.

太谢谢您了，下午见。

Tài xièxiè nín le, xiàwǔ jiàn.

再见。

Zàijiàn.

售票员

Shòupiàoyuán

王

售票员

王

售票员

王

售票员

王

售票员

王

售票员

王

售票员

打电话	dǎ diànhuà (v-o)	to telephone
拨	bō (v)	to dial
么	yāo (num)	one (used orally only)
过了	guò	
了一会儿	le	modal particle
才	yíhuìr	
人	cái	
接	rén (n)	person
	jiē	take hold of, receive; to meet
喂	wèi	hello (on telephone)
首都剧场	Shǒudū Jùchǎng (N)	Capital Theatre
北大	Běidà	
英国家	Yīngguó	
专家	zhuānjiā (n)	expert
在	zài	in the middle of doing
演	yǎn (v)	to perform; to act
可是	kěshì	
快要.....了	kuài yào ... le	(see 16.4)
大后天	dàhòutiān (TW)	the day after the day after tomorrow
就	jiù	
后天	hòutiān (TW)	the day after tomorrow
客满	kèmǎn (adj.)	sold out, full house
星期五	xīngqīwǔ	
能	néng (aux. v.)	to be able to, can
留	liú (v)	to reserve for someone; remain; let grow
今天	jīntiān (TW)	today
下午	xiàwǔ (TW)	afternoon
取	qǔ (v)	to get, fetch
行	xíng	
一定	yíding	
因为	yīnwei or yīnwèi	
卖	mài (v)	to sell
-完	-wán	
放心	fàngxīn (v-o)	to set one's mind at rest
会	huì	
贵姓	guìxìng? (Lit. expensive surname)	may I ask your name?
名字	míngzi (n)	(given) name

叫	jiào	to be called; to call
横	héng (adj.)	horizontal
竖	shù (adj.)	vertical
永远	yǒngyuǎn (adj.)	forever
长寿	chángshòu (n)	long life, longevity
记下来	jì xiàlai (v + CDE)	to note down; to record
太	tài	extremely; too
见	jiàn	
《上帝的宠儿》	《Shàngdì de Chǒng'ér》(N)	'Amadeus' (Lit. God's favourite), play by Peter Shaffer

Table of stroke order of the more difficult characters

拔	扌	发(一 丿 ㇇ 发 发)
首	丷 (丶)	百(一 一 一 百 百 百 百)
场	土	刃(丿 丿 刃)
北	丨 十 丩 丩	北
专	一 二	专 专
家	宀	豕(一 丿 丿 丿 豕 豕 豕)
演	辶	宀 更(一 一 一 一 雨 雨 更 更)
就	京	尢(一 丿 尢 尢)
客	宀	各(丿 夕 夕 各 各)
满	氵	艹(一 十 艹 艹 艹 艹 艹 艹 满 满)
能	宀	月 匕(丿 匕 匕 匕)
留	囟	(一 一 一 一 一) 田
取	耳	(一 一 一 一 一 耳) 又(一 又)

为	丶 丿 为 为
放	方 (丶 ㇇ 方) 女 (丿 ㇇ 女)
贵	𠄎 (丿 冂 冂 中 𠄎) 贝
横	木 黄 (一 十 艹 艹 艹 艹 艹 艹 艹 黄 黄)
竖	𠄎 (丨 丨 丨 丨) 立
永	丶 丿 丿 永 永
远	元 辶 Remember this component is always written last no matter what its position is in the character
寿	𠄎 (一 一 三 𠄎) 寸
记	讠 己 (丿 丿 己)
太	大 太
上	丨 丨 上
帝	产 (丶 ㇇ ㇇ ㇇ 产 产) 巾 (丨 冂 巾)
宠	宀 龙 (一 丿 九 龙 龙)

Grammar

1 Telephone numbers

Telephone numbers are often made up of seven or eight digits, each of which is usually said separately:

551 0978 wǔ wǔ yāo líng jiǔ qī bā
6673 8830 liù liù qī sān bā bā sān líng

Yāo is used instead of yī when telephone numbers or large numbers for rooms, buses, trains and so on, are broken down into single digits. This avoids any confusion with qī (seven).

2 Where are you?

Instead of asking *who* you are, the Chinese often ask *where* you are. (In actual fact the Chinese are really asking you for the name of your work unit.) In response to *Nín shì nǎlǐ?* Mr King could equally well have replied that he was Beijing University! (*Wǒ shì Běijīng Dàxué*). The idea being that you follow this up with the equivalent of your rank and number so that again you can be slotted into that imaginary filing system! Of course you may be asked who you are and the polite form would probably be *Nǐ (nín) shì nǎwèi?* (Lit. you are which polite MW for people?) In both *Nín shì nǎlǐ?* and *Nín shì nǎwèi?* the *shì* may be omitted. Don't be surprised if you are simply asked who you are without any frills: *Nǐ shì shéi?*

3 Describing your 'character'

Mr King says he is 'the three horizontals and one vertical' King, that the *yǒng* in his name is the *yǒng* in *yǒngyuǎn* 'eternal' and the *shòu* is as the *shòu* in *chángshòu* 'longevity'! That leaves the box office clerk in no doubt as to how to write his name. Because Chinese is so full of homophones it is common practice to describe one's name in this way so that there can be no misunderstanding as to what characters are used. Thus *Shǐ Àilǐ*'s name, literally 'history loves principle', could be described as *Shǐ shì lìshǐ de shǐ, ài shì ài guó de ài, lǐ shì dào lǐ de lǐ* 'the *shǐ* as in history, the *ài* as in patriotic and the *lǐ* as in principle (or truth)'.

4 (Kuài) yào V . . . le

To indicate imminent action or that the action of the verb is going to take place within a relatively short space of time we can put *yào* in front of the verb and the modal particle *le* at the end of the sentence. *Kuài* or *jiù* can be put before *yào* to make the imminence of the action even clearer:

Tā yào dǎ diànhuà le. 'She's going to phone'.

《Rìchū》*kuài yào yǎn le.* 'Sunrise is coming on soon'.

Wǒ xiàwǔ jiù yào zǒu le. 'I'm leaving this afternoon'.

Note that an adverb or adverbial phrase of time may come before *jiù yào V . . . le* but not before *kuài yào V . . . le*.

As you can see, the concept of 'imminent' is a relatively elastic one but the juxtaposition of *míngtiān* and *kuài* as in *Wǒ*

péngyou míngtiān kuài yào chū guó le does seem to be taking this too far (hence the rule) whereas *Wǒ péngyou míngtiān jiù yào chū guó le* 'My friend is going abroad tomorrow' is perfectly acceptable. This construction can also appear as:

kuài V ... le:

Piào kuài mài wán le. 'The tickets are almost sold out'.

but not

jiù V ... le

which would be far too ambiguous as *jiù* can be used in so many different ways.

The question form is made by adding *ma* to the statement and *méi you* is used for an answer in the negative: *Huǒchē kuài yào kāi le ma?* 'Is the train about to leave?' *Méi you* 'No'.

i The three Ps

Making a telephone call in China is not always as easy as it may appear in this chapter as many of us know to our cost. A whole morning can sometimes be spent making three or four long-distance calls so *patience* and *persistence* are required. Apart from local calls, all calls have to go through the operator although this is slowly changing as more modern equipment is being installed. *Zhàn xiàn le* 'the line's engaged' (*Lit.* occupied line) is a phrase with which one soon becomes very familiar.

Buying tickets of any sort in China, given the vastness of the population, is no easy matter and it is often very difficult for individuals to buy tickets for any even moderately popular event. As we have said before, it is usually the work unit which performs this function. Foreigners are sometimes privileged in this respect. With *patience*, *persistence* and *politeness* they can, on occasions, manage to obtain tickets which seem to be unavailable to the general public.

Exercise 16.1

Learn the following radicals, their romanization and their meaning:

- | | | | |
|---|-------|-------------|---------------------------|
| 1 | 艹 (草) | <i>cǎo</i> | 'grass'. |
| 2 | 氵 (水) | <i>shuǐ</i> | 'water'. |
| 3 | 心 (心) | <i>xīn</i> | 'heart'. |
| 4 | 女 | <i>nǚ</i> | 'woman'. |
| 5 | 耳 | <i>ěr</i> | 'ear'. |
| 6 | 宀 | - | 'roof'. |
| 7 | 贝 | <i>bèi</i> | 'shell, object of value'. |
| 8 | 八 (八) | <i>bā</i> | 'eight'. |
| 9 | 饣 (食) | <i>shí</i> | 'food'. |

Some characters appear to be made up of more than one recognizable radical. Which one do you choose to look up the character under? You will slowly learn that certain radicals seem to take precedence over others. The 'five elements' (wood, fire, earth, metal and water) for instance, but these are all defeated by 'heart'. If you are totally at sea, look at the left-hand side of the character first and see if you can spot a radical. The 'head' is another place to look (grass, bamboo, various kinds of roofs). In absolute dire straits try the horizontal or vertical lines or the dot!

Exercise 16.2

Write out each of the following characters in *pinyin* and say what its radical is; e.g. 喂 *wèi* 'mouth'.

- 1 演 2 行 3 记 4 打 5 取
6 过 7 英 8 接 9 卖 10 天

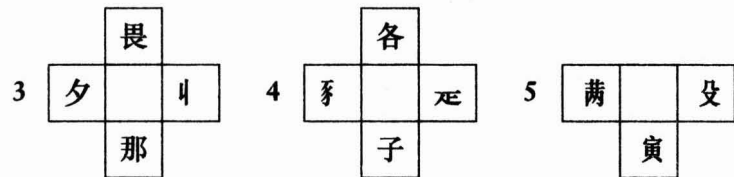
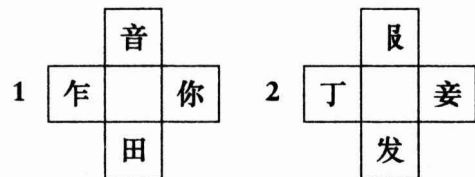
Exercise 16.3

For each of the following characters take out the radical and then count up the number of strokes remaining. Indicate what the radical is: e.g. 行 → 3 (彳); 了 → 1 (㇇)

- 1 话 2 剧 3 专 4 叫 5 今
6 满 7 星 8 贵 9 客 10 姓

Exercise 16.4

Fill in the square in the centre with a component or character which when combined with each of the components in the other squares forms a separate character:



Exercise 16.5

Write the following *pinyin* sentences in Chinese characters and then translate them into English:

- 1 *Jīntiān méi yǒu rén gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà.*
- 2 *Shǒudū Jùchǎng zài nǎr?*
- 3 *Tā míngtiān xiàwǔ jiù yào qù Běijīng (北京) le.*
- 4 *Nǐ hòutiān néng bu neng lái jīe wǒ?*
- 5 *Xīngqīwǔ xíng bu xíng? Bù xíng, jiù xīngqīliù ba.*

Exercise 16.6

Translate into Chinese characters:

- 1 I went to the Capital Theatre today. (了)
- 2 What is your (expensive) name? My name is Shi, Shi Aili.
- 3 He says he'll save two tickets for us.
- 4 They want to see that film this afternoon but it's sold out.
- 5 Would it be all right if I come and pick up the tickets next Friday?

17

directions and transport

问路、坐车 wèn lù、zuò chē

In this chapter you will learn

- about famous places of interest in and around Tiananmen Square
- how to ask for and understand directions
- the points of the compass
- how to express the distance between two points
- about place words
- more about the stroke order of difficult characters

Famous places of interest in and around Tiananmen Square

1 景山公园

Jǐngshān Gōngyuán
Jingshan Park

2 故宫

Gùgōng

3 天安门

Tiān'ānmén

4 天安门广场

Tiān'ānmén
Guǎngchǎng

6 人民英雄纪念碑

Rénmín Yīngxióng
Jìniànbēi

7 中国历史博物馆

Zhōngguó Lìshǐ
Bówùguǎn

8 毛主席纪念堂

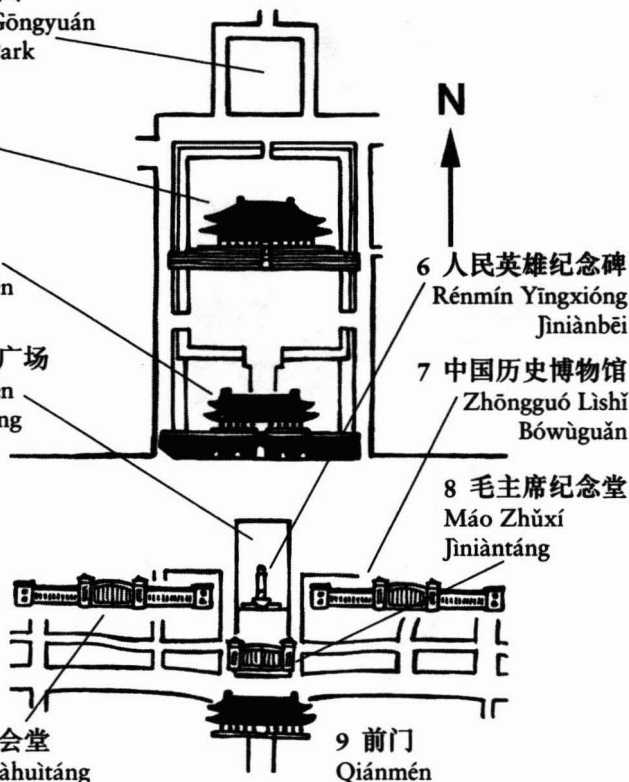
Máo Zhǔxí
Jìniàntáng

5 人民大会堂

Rénmín Dàhuitáng

9 前门

Qiánmén



▶ **Pattern one:** to taxi-driver, bus-conductor, etc.
我要去PW Wǒ yào qù PW.
我要去天坛 Wǒ yào qù Tiāntán.

▶ **Pattern two:** you are in the vicinity of a place (PW) and ask a passer-by
PW在哪儿? 怎么走?
PW zài nǎr? Zěnmē zǒu?

Standing in Tiananmen Square
故宫在哪儿? 怎么走?
Gùgōng zài nǎr? Zěnmē zǒu?

▶ **Pattern three:** as for Pattern two, but slightly more formal
a 请问PW在哪儿? 怎么走?
Qǐng wèn, PW zài nǎr? Zěnmē zǒu?

In the North

b 劳驾PW在哪儿? 怎么走?

Láojià, PW zài nǎr? Zěnmē zǒu?

or

c 请问/劳驾PW怎么走?

Qǐng wèn/láojià PW zěnmē zǒu?

请问, 人民大会堂在哪儿? 怎么走?

*Qǐng wèn, Rénmín Dàhuìtáng zài nǎr?
Zěnmē zǒu?*

▶ **Pattern four:** reply to a question asking for directions
 往 direction 走 *Wàng Direction zǒu.*
 往东走 *Wàng dōng zǒu.*

▶ **Linking question and answer**

1 甲 请问, 前门在哪儿? 怎么走?

Jiǎ Qǐng wèn, Qiánmén zài nǎr? Zěnmē zǒu?

乙 前门离这儿不远。往南走就到了。

Yǐ Qiánmén lí zhèr bù yuǎn. Wàng nán zǒu jiù dào le.

2 甲 劳驾, 故宫在哪儿? 怎么走?

Jiǎ Láojià, Gùgōng zài nǎr? Zěnmē zǒu?

乙 (pointing) 离这儿很近, 你看, 就在那儿, 你往北走就到了。

Yǐ Lí zhèr hěn jìn, nǐ kàn, jiù zài nàr, nǐ wàng běi zǒu jiù dào le.

甲 谢谢你。

Jiǎ Xièxie nǐ.

问路	wèn lù (v-o)	ask the way
坐车	zuò chē (v-o)	go by transport
天坛	Tiāntán (N)	Temple of Heaven
怎么走	zěnmē	
走	zǒu	
故宫	Gùgōng (N)	the Forbidden City (the Imperial Palace)
劳驾	láojià	excuse me
人民大会堂	Rénmín Dàhuìtáng (N)	Great Hall of the People
往	wàng (prep.)	towards, to
东	dōng	east
甲	jiǎ	A (the first of the Ten Heavenly Stems)
乙	yǐ	B (the second of the Ten Heavenly Stems) (See Chapter 22)
前门	Qiánmén (N)	Qianmen
离	lí (prep.)	(distance) from

这儿 (这里)
不
远
南
到
近
你
那儿 (那里)
北

zhèr (zhèr)
bù
yuǎn (adj.) far
nán south
dào arrive, go to
jìn (adj.) near
nǐ
nàr (nàr) (PW) there
běi north

Table of stroke order of the more difficult characters

路	足 (丿 ㇇ ㇇ ㇇ ㇇ ㇇ ㇇) 各
坐	从 (丿 ㇇ ㇇ ㇇) 土
车	一 ㇇ ㇇ ㇇ 车
劳	艹 ㇇ (丿 ㇇) 力 (㇇ 力)
驾	加 马
民	尸 (㇇ ㇇ ㇇) 乚 (一 乚)
堂	宀 (丿 ㇇ ㇇)
	宀 (丿 ㇇ ㇇ ㇇ ㇇ ㇇ ㇇ ㇇)
往	彳 主 (丿 ㇇ ㇇ ㇇ 主)
甲	丨 冂 冂 日 甲
乙	乙
前	丷 月 刂
离	丷 ㇇ ㇇ ㇇ ㇇ 离 离 离 离
这	文 (丿 ㇇ ㇇ 文) 辶
里	丨 冂 冂 日 里 里
南	十 冂 (丨 冂 冂 冂 冂 冂)

 Dialogue

Mr King comes out of the Imperial Palace (*Gùgōng*) and asks the way to the Great Hall of the People (*Rénmín Dàhuìtáng*):

王 人民大会堂离故宫远吗?

Rénmín Dàhuìtáng lí Gùgōng yuǎn ma?

路人 不远, 离故宫很近, 就在天安门广场西边儿。

Lùrén Bù yuǎn, lí Gùgōng hěn jìn, jiù zài Tiān'ānmén Guǎngchǎng xībianr.

王 中国历史博物馆也在西边儿吗?

Zhōngguó Lìshǐ Bówùguǎn yě zài xībianr ma?

路人 不, 中国历史博物馆和中国革命博物馆就在天安门东边儿, 人民大会堂对面。

Bù, Zhōngguó Lìshǐ Bówùguǎn hé Zhōngguó Géming Bówùguǎn jiù zài Tiān'ānmén dōngbianr, Rénmín Dàhuìtáng duìmiàn.

王 人民英雄纪念碑呢?

Rénmín Yīngxióng Jìniànbēi ne?

路人 在天安门广场中间, 在毛主席纪念堂前边儿。

Zài Tiān'ānmén Guǎngchǎng zhōngjiān, zài Máo Zhǔxí Jìniàntáng qiánbianr.

王 那么, 前门在毛主席纪念堂后边儿对不对?

Nàme, Qiánmén zài Máo Zhǔxí Jìniàntáng hòubianr duì bu duì?

路人 对, 这几个地方都很有意思, 值得看一看。

Duì, zhè jǐ ge dìfang dōu hěn yǒu yìsi, zhíde kànyikàn.

路人	<i>lùrén</i> (n)	<i>passer-by; stranger</i>
天安门广场	<i>Tiān'ānmén Guǎngchǎng</i> (N)	<i>Tiananmen Square</i>
西边儿	<i>xībianr</i> (n)	<i>west (side)</i>
中国历史博物馆	<i>Zhōngguó Lìshǐ Bówùguǎn</i> (N)	<i>Museum of National History (Lit. China history museum)</i>
也	<i>yě</i>	
中国革命博物馆	<i>Zhōngguó Géming Bówùguǎn</i> (N)	<i>Museum of Revolution (Lit. China revolution museum)</i>
东边儿	<i>dōng(bianr)</i> (PW)	<i>east (side)</i>
对面	<i>duìmiàn</i> (PW)	<i>opposite</i>
人民英雄纪念碑	<i>Rénmín Yīngxióng Jìniànbēi</i> (N)	<i>Monument to the People's Heroes (Lit. people's hero monument)</i>
呢	<i>ne</i>	
中间	<i>zhōngjiān</i> (PW)	<i>middle; between</i>

毛主席纪念堂

Máo Zhǔxí Mao Zedong
Jìniàn táng (N) (Chairman Mao)
Mausoleum

前边儿 qiánbianr (PW) front, in front of
那么 nàme

后边儿 hòubianr (PW) back, behind
对 duì

几 jǐ

地方 dìfang (n) place

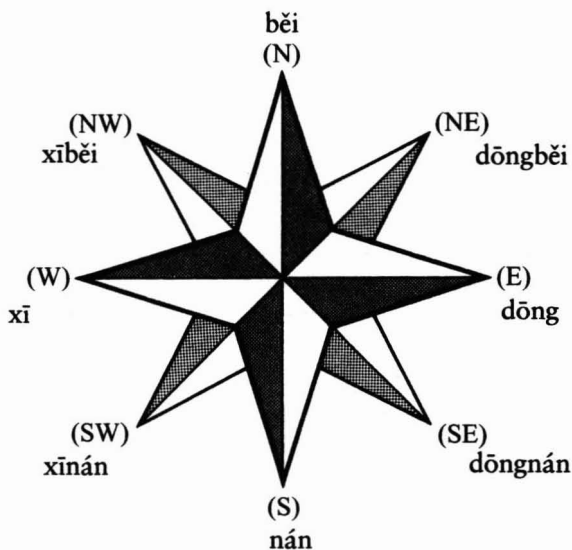
值得 zhíde (v) to be worth, deserve

Table of stroke order of the more difficult characters

广	丶 宀 广
边	丷 力 辶
历	厂 力
史	口 中 史
博	十 甫 (一 厂 冂 冂 冂 冂 甫 甫) 寸
物	牛 (丶 丿 牛) 勿 (丶 勹 勹 勹)
馆	钅 (丶 丿 钅) 官 (丶 宀 宀 宀 宀 宀 宀)
革	一 十 廿 廿 卅 卌 卌 卌 革
命	人 一 叩
面	一 一 厂 冂 而 而 而 而 面
雄	厶 (一 丿 厶 厶) 隹
碑	石 (一 丿 丿 石 石) 卑 (丶 白 卑 卑 卑)
席	广 蓆 (一 十 廿 廿 卅 卌 蓆)
值	亻 直 (一 十 广 育 育 育 育 直)
得	彳 日 寸 (一 二 寸 寸)

1 Points of the compass

Perhaps as China is situated in the East, the important cardinal points for her are east and west (in that order!) rather than north and south. Whereas when listing the cardinal points we say north, south, east, west, the Chinese say *dōng, nán, xī, běi* (E, S, W, N).



Instead of south-east they say 'east-south' (*dōngnán*), instead of north-west, 'west-north' (*xīběi*) and so on. NB The figure above shows the western representation of the compass. The Chinese version always shows **South** at the top.

The Chinese are more likely to give you directions in terms of north, south, etc. than left and right. This stems from the fact that old Chinese cities (Beijing is a good example) are laid out on a north-south, east-west axis, so in these cases, this is the most helpful way for someone to orientate him/herself.

2 Place words

*qiánbiān	front, in front of, before
*hòubiān	back, at the back of, behind
*shàngbiān	top, on, over, above
*xiàbiān	bottom, below, under
zuǒbiān	left
yòubiān	right
*lǐbiān	inside
*wàibiān	outside
zhōngjiān	middle, between
duìmiàn	opposite
pángbiān	side

(All these words are often followed by ‘-ér’ which renders the *biān* toneless: *qiánbianr*, *hòubianr*, etc. and I have generally glossed them as such.)

*-*biān* may be replaced by *-miàn* or *-tóu* in the examples above. Which one is used seems to depend on the speaker, with Southerners tending to use *-tóu* more, and *-biān* and *-miàn* being interchangeable.

Place words such as those listed above function as **nouns** in Chinese. When such a place word is used to tell us more about another noun it is usually followed by *de*: *qiánbiān de rén* ‘the person/people in front’.

Conversely, when it is itself preceded by another noun or pronoun the *de* is normally omitted: *zhuōzi pángbiān* ‘beside the table’. The same rule applies to *dōngbiān*, *xībiān*, etc. and as students often put these place words in the wrong position it may be helpful to memorize the following ‘pair’ of examples:

dōngbiān de xuéxiào ‘the school to the east’

xuéxiào dōngbiān ‘to the east of the school’.

In the first example we are talking about the **school**, in the second example we are talking about what exists to the **east** of it. This is exactly the same rule as in 3.5 but the frequent omission of *de* before the place word when used in this way tends to obscure this fact. Think of the *de* as being there when working out where the place word should come in such cases.

When the place word *lǐbiān* or *shàngbiān* is attached to a noun, *biān* is very often omitted:

<i>zài jiā lǐ</i>	'at home'
<i>zài chéng lǐ</i>	'in town'
<i>zài yǐzi shàng</i>	'on the chair'.

This also works with *xià* in such expressions as:

<i>yǐzi xià</i>	'beneath the chair'
<i>zhuōzi xià</i>	'beneath the table'.

The *biān* in other place words is seldom omitted, however, and where it is, the phrase should be learnt separately: *guówài* 'overseas, abroad'.

If these phrases occur at the beginning of the sentence, the use of *zài* is optional:

Jiālǐ yǒu rén 'there's somebody at home' but it is compulsory after the verb: *Wǒ yào fàng zài yǐzi shàng* 'I want to put (it) on the chair'.

Some adverbial phrases do not take *zài* wherever they occur in the sentence. Examples include:

<i>chūntiān lǐ</i>	'in the spring'
<i>jiàqī zhōng</i>	'in the holidays'
<i>sānyuè zhōng</i>	'mid-March'

Note that *lǐ* is used in the first example and *zhōng* in the second, although both are translated into English as 'in'.

Conversely, other adverbial phrases may take an optional *zài* but no other place word:

(<i>zài</i>) <i>zhōumò</i>	'at the weekend'
(<i>zài</i>) <i>yìjiǔjiǔlíng nián</i>	'in 1990'

Some take neither *zài* or any other place word: *èryuè fèn(r)* 'in February' although *èryuè* by itself is also possible.

All the above examples should be noted and added to as your studies progress. Listen carefully to Chinese speakers and imitate them as far as possible. The recording will help you do this.

The verbs *shì* 'to be' and *yǒu* 'to have' are both used to denote existence and are often to be found with the place words described above. The basic difference is that the object of a sentence with *yǒu* is usually indefinite whereas the object of a sentence with *shì* may be either definite or indefinite and usually implies a judgement that something is so (and not something else):

Gùgōng qiánbianr yǒu yì tiáo dà jiē 'There's a big street in front of the Forbidden City' (indicating existence, position).

Gùgōng qiánbianr shì Tiān'ānmén Guǎngchǎng 'In front of the Forbidden City is Tiananmen Square' (not the Temple of Heaven for instance).

Exercise 17.1

Look at the map at the beginning of this chapter and answer the following questions using the points of the compass. (Use the point of reference given in brackets after the question.)

Gùgōng zài nǎr? (Jǐngshān Gōngyuán) → Gùgōng zài Jǐngshān Gōngyuán nánbianr.

- 1 Jǐngshān Gōngyuán zài nǎr? (Gùgōng.)
- 2 Qiánmén zài nǎr? (Máo Zhǔxí Jìniàntáng.)
- 3 Rénmín Dàhuitáng zài nǎr? (Rénmín Yǐngxióng Jìniànbēi.)
- 4 Zhōngguó Lìshǐ Bówùguǎn zài nǎr? (Rénmín Yǐngxióng Jìniànbēi.)
- 5 Máo Zhǔxí Jìniàntáng zài nǎr? (Rénmín Dàhuitáng.)

3 Jiǎ and yǐ

Jiǎ and yǐ are the first and second of the ten Heavenly Stems just like alpha, beta in Greek. They are also often used in the same way as we use 'A' and 'B' in English.

4 A // B

When we wish to express how far A is from B where the positions of A and B are fixed, the construction is as follows:

A lí B distance in time or space.

Gōngyuán lí shāngdiàn hěn yuǎn 'The park is a long way from the shops'.

Hòutiān lí jīntiān hái yǒu liǎng tiān 'The day after tomorrow is still two days away (from today)'.

Niújīn lí Lúndūn yǒu jiǔshíyī gōnglǐ 'Oxford is 91 kilometres (public lí) from London'.

Exercise 17.2

Using the map again, answer the following questions.

Gùgōng lí Qiánmén yuǎn ma? → Gùgōng lí Qiánmén yuǎn.

- 1 Jǐngshān Gōngyuán lí Qiánmén yuǎn ma?
- 2 Rénmín Dàhuitáng lí Rénmín Yǐngxióng Jìniànbēi jìn bu jìn? Zěnme zǒu?
- 3 Máo Zhǔxí Jìniàntáng lí Tiān'ānmén yuǎn bu yuǎn? Zěnme zǒu?

- 4 *Rénmín Yīngxióng Jìniànbēi lí Zhōngguó Lìshǐ Bówùguǎn hěn jìn, shì bu shì?*
 5 *Niújīn lí Lúndūn yǒu duō yuǎn?*
 6 *Sānshí hào lí èrshíqī hào hái yǒu jǐ tiān?*
 7 *Yuándàn (New Year's Day) lí Shèngdànjié (Christmas Day) yǒu jǐ ge xīngqī?*

Exercise 17.3

Write out the characters you have met with the following radicals or character components. (Go through Chapters 14–17 to find the answers.)

e.g. 艹 → 苹 _____

- | | | |
|-----------|-------|-----------|
| 1 宀 | 8 目 | 15 月 |
| 2 丿 | 9 心/忄 | 16 口 |
| 3 禾 | 10 艹 | 17 彡 |
| 4 门 | 11 土 | 18 人 or 亻 |
| 5 冫 (RHS) | 12 女 | 19 辶 |
| 6 讠 | 13 丨 | 20 火 |
| 7 彡 | 14 木 | |

Exercise 17.4

Write out your answers to Exercises 17.1 and 17.2 (1–4 only) in characters.

Exercise 17.5

Translate into Chinese characters:

- Excuse me, where is the Temple of Heaven? How do I get there?
- Is the Great Hall of the People a long way from here? No, it's just opposite.
- The Monument to the People's Heroes is to the east of the Great Hall of the People but to the west of the Museum of National History.

i Regional differences

Given China's vastness, it is not surprising that there are a number of major dialects in China and countless minor ones. These do not include the languages of the minority peoples such as Tibetan (*Zàngwén*), Thai (*Tàiwén*), Vietnamese (*Yuènnánwén*), Uighur (*Wéiwú'ěr wén*), etc. Some expressions which you will hear frequently in the North such as *láojià* are hardly heard in the South. Although

pǔtōnghuà has standardized much of the vocabulary you will still find regional differences. Examples include:

	North	South*
'potato'	<i>tǔdòu</i>	<i>mǎlíngshǔ</i>
'tomato'	<i>xīhóngshì</i>	<i>fānqié</i>
'pineapple'	<i>bōluó</i>	<i>fènglí</i>
'taxi'	<i>chūzūqìchē</i>	<i>jìchéngchē</i>
'bicycle'	<i>zìxíngchē</i>	<i>jiǎotàchē</i>

* plus Taiwan and overseas Chinese communities

18

at the post office

在邮局 zài yóudiànjú

In this chapter you will learn

- how to buy stamps
- how to send letters and parcels
- how to move the direct object in front of the verb using **bǎ**
- more about the stroke order of difficult characters

▶ Mr King goes to the post office to send a parcel of books back home, and post two letters.

- 王 请问, 寄包裹是在这儿吗?
Qǐng wèn, jì bāoguǒ shì zài zhèr ma?
- 营业员 不, 在隔壁。
Yíngyèyuán Bù, zài gébì.
- 王 这儿能买邮票吗?
Zhèr néng mǎi yóupiào ma?
- 营业员 能。
Néng.
- 王 这两封信多少钱?
Zhè liǎng fēng xìn duōshao qián?
- 营业员 寄哪儿?
Jì nǎr?
- 王 重的寄上海, 另(外)一封寄美国。
Zhòng de jì Shànghǎi, líng (wài) yì fēng jì Měiguó.
- 营业员 上海的要寄航空还是寄平信?
Shànghǎi de yào jì hángkōng hái shì jì píngxìn?
- 王 寄航空。
Jì hángkōng.
- 营业员 (把信放在天平上) 寄美国的两块四, 寄上海的三毛。
一共两块七。
(Bǎ xìn fàng zài tiānpíng shàng) Jì Měiguó de liǎng kuài sì, jì Shànghǎi de sān máo. Yìgòng liǎng kuài qī.
(王先生给他十块)
- 营业员 (Wáng xiānsheng gěi tā shí kuài)
找你七块三。
Zhǎo nǐ qī kuài sān.
- 王 谢谢。(走到邮寄包裹的地方)
- 王 *Xièxie. (Zǒu dào yóujì bāoguǒ de dìfang)*
同志, 请问, 把这包书寄到英国要多少钱?
Tóngzhì, qǐng wèn, bǎ zhè bāo shū jì dào Yīngguó yào duōshao qián?
- 营业员 (把书放在天平上) 重五公斤, 三十六块七毛钱。
要不要挂号?
(Bǎ shū fàng zài tiānpíng shàng) Zhòng wǔ gōng jīn, sānshíliù kuài qī máo qián. Yào bu yào guà hào?
- 王 嗯, 挂号吧。
Ng, guà hào ba.

营业员

再加上挂号费六毛钱，一共三十七块三。请把邮票贴上，再填一张包裹单，把收件人、寄件人的地址和姓名填写清楚。

Zài jiā shàng guàhào fèi liù máo qián, yìgòng sānshíqī kuài sān. Qǐng bǎ yóupiào tiē shàng, zài tián yì zhāng bāoguǒdān, bǎ shōujiànrén、jìjiànrén de dìzhǐ hé xìngmíng tiánxiě qīngchū.

(过了一會兒)

(Guò le yíhuìr)

王

邮票贴好了，包裹单也填好了。

Yóupiào tiē hǎo le, bāoguǒdān yě tián hǎo le.

营业员

把书给我吧。这是收据，请收好。

Bǎ shū gěi wǒ ba. Zhè shì shōujù, qǐng shōu hǎo.

王

谢谢你。请问，这儿可以打长途电话吗？

Xièxie nǐ. Qǐng wèn, zhèr kěyǐ dǎ chángtú diànhuà ma?

营业员

可以。你去‘电报、电话’柜台问一问。

Kěyǐ. Nǐ qù ‘diànbào, diànhuà’ guìtái wènyiwèn.

王

好，麻烦你了。

Hǎo, máfan nǐ le.

营业员

没什么。

Méi shénme.

邮电局	yóudiànjú (n)	post and telecommunications office
寄	jì (v)	to post, mail
包裹	bāoguǒ (n)	parcel, package
营业员	yíngyèyuán (n)	clerk, shop employee
隔壁	gébì (PW)	next door
这儿	zhèr	
封信	fēng (MW)	for letters
信	xìn (n)	letter
寄	jì (v)	to post, mail
哪儿	nǎr	
重	zhòng (adj.)	heavy
上海	Shànghǎi (PW)	Shanghai
另(外)	lìng(wài) (adj.; adv)	another; separately
美国	Měiguó (PW)	USA, America
航空(信)	hángkōng (xìn)	airmail
还是	háishi	
平信	píngxìn (n)	surface mail
把	bǎ (prep.)	a preposition showing disposal
放(在)	fàng (zài) (v)	to put (on)
天平	tiānpíng (n)	scales

到	-dào (DE)	-to
邮寄	yóuji (v)	to send by post or mail
同志	tóngzhì (n)	comrade
书	shū (n) [běn]	book
公斤	gōngjīn (n)	kilogram (Lit. public catty)
挂号	guà hào (v-o)	to register (Lit. hang number)
嗯	ng	uh-huh, hm
加(上)	jiā (shang) (v)	to add (on)
挂号费	guàhàofèi (n)	registration charge
先	xiān (conj.)	first
贴(上)	tiē (shang) (v)	to stick (on)
填(写)	tián (xiě) (v)	to fill in
包裹单	bāoguǒdān (n)	parcel form
收件人	shōujiàn rén (n)	addressee, recipient
寄件人	jìjiàn rén (n)	sender
地址	dìzhǐ (n)	address
姓名	xìngmíng (n)	full name
清楚	qīngchu	clear, clearly
收据	shōujù (n)	receipt
收(好)	shōu (hǎo) (v)	to put away; to receive
长途电话	chángtú diànhuà (n)	long distance telephone call
可以	kěyǐ	can, may
电报	diànbào (n)	telegram
柜台	guìtái (n)	counter
麻烦	máfan	trouble, troublesome

Table of stroke order of the more difficult characters

局	尸	月	局	局	局
寄	宀	大	可	(一 冫 冫 冫 冫 可)	
裹	宀	果	衣	(彳 彳 彳 衣)	
营	艹	冫	昌		
业	丨	丨	丩	业	业
隔	阝	可	用		
壁	辟	月	辛	(丿 丿 丿 立 立 辛)	土
书	冫	冫	书	书	

重	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	重	重
费	弗	(	一	一	一	一	弗	弗)	仄	
先	ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	ノ	先	
填	土	真	(	一	一	一	一	一	真	真)
写	冫	与	(	一	与	与)				
单	丷	单	(	一	一	一	一	一	单)	
址	土	止	(	一	一	止	止)			
楚	林	疋								
据	扌	居								
以	レ	レ	以	以						
柜	木	巨	(	一	一	一	巨)			
烦	火	页	(	一	一	一	页	页)		

Grammar

1 The *bǎ* construction (I)

By using *bǎ*, the direct object is brought forward to a position in front of the verb instead of after it so the sentence order becomes:

Subject *bǎ* object verb + other element(s)

Wǒ bǎ bāoguǒ fàng zài tiānpíng shàng

'I put the parcel on the scales'.

It is important to note that:

- 1 The verb cannot stand on its own after *bǎ* and that something else has to come after it even if it is only *le* or the verb is simply reduplicated:

Tā bǎ zìxíngchē mài le. 'He sold the bicycle.'

Qǐng nǐ bǎ chuānghu kāikāi. 'Please open the window.'

- 2 The object of a *bǎ* sentence is normally a *specific* person or thing(s) even when no specification is overtly expressed in the Chinese; it cannot refer to people or things in general:

Tā bǎ shū jì zǒu le 'She posted *the* books'.

- 3 Negatives, auxiliary verbs, adverbial phrases of 'time when' and 'time within which' go before *bǎ*. When *dōu* refers to the subject it comes directly after the subject and before *bǎ*, but when it refers to the object it comes directly after the object and before the verb.

Wǒ jīntiān méi bǎ diànhuà hàomǎ jì xiàlai 'I didn't note down *the* telephone number(s) today'.

Yíngyèyuán yào bǎ shōujù gěi wǒ 'The clerk wants/wanted to give me *the* receipt'.

Nǐ zhè liǎng ge xīngqī zěnméi méi bǎ zhè běn shū kàn wán ne? 'How come you haven't finished this book during the last two weeks?'

Wǒmen dōu bǎ yīfu chuān shang le (*chuān*: to wear) 'We all put the clothes on'.

Wǒmen bǎ yīfu dōu chuān shang le 'We put *all* the clothes on'.

- 4 Although *bǎ* cannot be translated into English it does contain a sense of disposal, i.e. to hold or take an object and do something with it (hence the hand radical), which is why it cannot be used with verbs which contain no such idea of disposal such as *shì*, *yǒu*, *zhīdao*, *juéde*, *xǐhuan*, *zài*, *lái*, *qù* and *huí*. These points are summarized in the following table:

Subj. (N or pr.)	Adv. time	Neg.	Aux. v.	Prep.	Obj.	Verb	Other elements
Wǒ				<i>bǎ</i>	<i>shìqing</i>	<i>zuò</i>	<i>wán</i>
Wǒ			<i>néng</i>	<i>bǎ</i>	<i>shìqing</i>	<i>zuò</i>	<i>wán</i>
Wǒ		<i>bù</i>	<i>néng</i>	<i>bǎ</i>	<i>shìqing</i>	<i>zuò</i>	<i>wán</i>
Wǒ	<i>jīntiān</i>	<i>bù</i>	<i>néng</i>	<i>bǎ</i>	<i>shìqing</i>	<i>zuò</i>	<i>wán</i>
Tā				<i>bǎ</i>	<i>xìn</i>	<i>xiě</i>	<i>wán le</i>
Tā		<i>méi</i>		<i>bǎ</i>	<i>xìn</i>	<i>xiě</i>	<i>wán</i>
Tā	<i>hái</i>	<i>méi</i>		<i>bǎ</i>	<i>xìn</i>	<i>xiě</i>	<i>wán ne</i>

Some uses of the *bǎ* construction (II)

- 1 When the main verb is followed by the resultative ending *zài* or *dào* plus a place word:
Qǐng nǐ bǎ dìtú fàng zài zhuōzi shàng 'Please put the map on the table.'
Wǒ yǐjīng bǎ tā sòng dào (*sòng* 'to see somebody off') *fēijīchǎng* ('airport') *le* 'I've already seen her off to the airport'.
- 2 When the verb is reduplicated:
Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhè jiàn shìqing hǎohāor xiǎngyixiǎng 'Please think over this matter carefully'.
- 3 When the main verb is followed by the resultative ending *gěi* and takes both a direct and an indirect object (note that *gàosu* 'to tell' also comes into this category although it does not take *gěi*):
Wǒmen bǎ qián huán gěi (*huán* 'to give or pay back') *lǎobǎn* ('the boss') *le* 'We've paid back the money to the boss'.
Tā zǎo jiù ('long ago') *bǎ nà jiàn shìqing gàosu wǒ le* 'He told me about that matter ages ago.'
- 4 When verbs of movement take the directional endings *lái* or *qù*, *huí*, *zǒu*, etc.:
Tāmen zuótiān bǎ zhàopiàn ('photograph') *dài huilai le* 'They brought the photos back yesterday'.
Xuésheng bǎ guāngpán bōfàngjī jiè zǒu (*jiè* 'to borrow; lend') *le* 'The student borrowed the CD player (and went off with it)'.
Wǒ bǎ kèwén kàn le yí cì 'I('ve) read the text once'.
(If *bǎ* were not used then the sentence would read *Wǒ kàn le yí cì kèwén*. Note that if the object were a pronoun, the word order would be reversed, i.e. *Wǒ kàn le tā yí cì*.)
- 5 When there is a quantified expression in the sentence such as *yí cì*:
Wǒ bǎ kèwén kàn le yí cì 'I('ve) read the text once'.
(If *bǎ* were not used then the sentence would read *Wǒ kàn le yí cì kèwén*. Note that if the object were a pronoun, the word order would be reversed, i.e. *Wǒ kàn le tā yí cì*.)
- 6 When the main verb is followed by the resultative ending *chéng* (*Lit.* 'to become') or *zuò* (*Lit.* 'to regard as') *Wàiguórén jīngcháng bǎ 'shǒudū'* ('capital') *liǎng ge zì niàn chéng 'shǒudōu'*. 'Foreigners often read "shǒudū" as "shǒudōu":
Nǐ wèi shénme bǎ wǒ dāng zuò (*dāng* 'to be, work as') *nǐ de dírén* (enemy) *ne?* 'Why do you regard me as your enemy?'

Exercise 18.1

Turn the following sentences into *bǎ* sentences:

Yíngyèyuán zài xìnfēng (envelope) shàng tiē yóupiào →
Yíngyèyuán bǎ yóupiào tiē zài xìnfēng shàng.

- 1 *Qǐng nǐ shōu hǎo shōujù.*
- 2 *Bāoguǒdān shàng yào xiě qīngchū jìjiànrén de dìzhǐ hé xìngmíng.*
- 3 *Jiā shàng guàhàofèi yígòng yào duōshao qián?*
- 4 *Tā méi tián hǎo bāoguǒdān.*
- 5 *Yóukè (tourist) méi hǎohāor kànyikàn Gùgōng.*

Turn the following *bǎ* sentences into sentences without *bǎ*: *Wǒ jīntiān yào bǎ zhè fēng xìn jì zǒu* → *Wǒ jīntiān yào jì zǒu zhè fēng xìn.*

- 6 *Shòupiàoyuán bǎ liǎng zhāng hǎo piào liú gěi Wáng xiānsheng le.*
- 7 *Wàiguó zhuānjiā yīnggāi bǎ jùchǎng de diànhuà hàomǎ (number) jì xiàlai.*
- 8 *Shòuhuòyuán bú yuànyì bǎ sīchóu chènshān mài gěi tā.*
- 9 *Dàifu (doctor) yào bǎ bìng rén (patient) sòng (send) dào yīyuàn (hospital).*
- 10 *Wǒ yí ge Zhōngguó péngyou yì tiān néng bǎ liǎng bāo yān xī wán (xī 'to inhale, smoke').*

2 Same character different pronunciation

Several characters have two or more different readings depending on context. 都 *dōu* is read as *dū* in 首都; 大夫 'doctor' is read as *dàifu* not *dàfu*; 还 is read *huán* as a verb meaning 'to give or pay back' but as *hái* when it is an adverb meaning 'still'; 和 is read as *huo* in *nuǎnhuo* 'warm'; 行 is read as *háng* in *yínháng* 'bank' and so on. Some characters have the same pronunciation but different tones but they do not lie within the scope of this book!

3 -shang

As a resultative verb ending, *-shang* is often used to indicate:

- a that the object has become attached to something else as a result of the action of the verb:

Qǐng xiān bǎ yóupiào tiē shang 'Please stick the stamps on first'. (i.e. to the wrapping paper).

Tiānqì lěng le, yīnggāi chuān shang máoyī 'It's turned cold, you ought to put a sweater on'.

- b Or that the completion of the action of the verb has resulted in something being closed or brought together:

Qǐng nǐ bǎ mén guān shang 'Please close the door'.

Jì bāoguǒ děi yòng bù (cloth) *bāo shang* (wrap up), *féng shang* (sew up), *zài bǎ shōujiànrén de xìngmíng hé dìzhǐ xiě zài bù shàng*. 'In China when you send a parcel, you have to wrap it up in a piece of cloth, sew it up and then write the name and address of the recipient on the cloth.' (This is absolutely normal practice when sending small items except for books – the sender must also write her/his name and address on the cloth too.)

4 *Xiān V₁ zài V₂*

The construction *xiān V₁ zài V₂* shows a sequence of actions, first *V₁* has to be done, then *V₂*. This means that you can only carry out the action of the second verb when you have carried out the action of the first:

Qǐng xiān bǎ yóupiào tiē shang, zài tián yì zhāng bāoguǒdān. 'Please stick the stamps on first and then fill out a parcel form'.

(Note that the *xiān* is sometimes omitted in this construction, leaving only the *zài* before the second verb. This *zài* is written 再 as in 再见 *zàijiàn* not as in 在, 'at, in'.)

i Comrade and others

Although the term 同志 *tóngzhì* is still used, it is less common than it was and will presumably eventually become even less so. Terms of address which were regarded as 'feudal' before the Great Proletarian Cultural Revolution (now written in Chinese with inverted commas to express political disapproval) are coming back into fashion. It is quite common to address youngish women as *xiǎojie*. The once universal *àiren* 'love person' for husband or wife is also slowly being replaced with the more conventional and less intimate *xiānsheng* or *zhàngfu* for 'husband' and *tàitai* or *qīzi* for 'wife'. These 'new/old' terms are particularly in favour with some people who live in the coastal provinces or come into contact with foreigners.

Receipts

Most Chinese hang on to their receipts like mad as there is a tremendously widespread system of 报销 *bàoxiāo* 'reimbursement of expenses'. Many of the Chinese people travelling on the little mini-buses 小公共汽车 *xiǎo gōnggòng qìchē* (usually called 面包车 *miànbāochē* [*Lit.* bread vehicle because of their shape] when they belong to a work unit) or on trains, planes or in taxis are on business (出差 *chū chāi*) and consequently can claim back all expenses. Hence the loudhailers used by minibus drivers and conductors encouraging prospective passengers to take advantage of the fact that *piào kěyǐ bàoxiāo* and to use the mini-buses, which are a more expensive but much more efficient means of transport. For a Chinese, his/her grade or position in the ranking order determines whether he/she travels hard or soft class on the train (see next chapter).

Exercise 18.2

Write out each of the following characters in *pinyin* and put their common component or radical in brackets afterwards.

e.g. 把、挂、打 → *bǎ*, *guà*, *dǎ* (扌)

- 1 想、您、怎、意、思、志。
- 2 请、说、谢、话。
- 3 喂、售、员、吗、问、号。
- 4 近、还、过、这、远、边。
- 5 部、那、邮、都。

Repeat this exercise for yourself in subsequent chapters.

Exercise 18.3

Write a character for each of the following phonetic transcriptions so as to make a word with the character given.

e.g. 北 *biān*, 北 *jīng* → 北边, 北京.

- 1 东 *xi*, 东 *biān*.
- 2 *wài* 国, *Zhōng* 国.
- 3 售 *huò* 员, 售 *piào* 员.
- 4 *máo* 衣, 衣 *fu*.
- 5 电 *yǐng*, 电 *huà*, 电 *bào*.
- 6 星期 *èr*, 星期 *sì*.
- 7 地 *tú*, 地 *fang*, 地 *zhǐ*.
- 8 *shōu* 件人, *jì* 件人.

Exercise 18.4

Translate this passage into colloquial English and then into Chinese characters.

Wáng xiānsheng rén hěn hǎo dànshi tā yǒu yí ge xiǎo máobìng
(毛病 'defect') tā hěn xǐhuan huā (花 'spend') qián. Qù mǎi yí
jiàn chènshān, tā jiù mǎi sān jiàn, nǐ yào tā mǎi yì běn zázhi jiù
gěi nǐ mǎi shí běn. Tā shuō dōu hěn yǒu yìsi suǒyǐ dōu mǎi le.
Ràng (让 'let') tā qù mǎi dōngxi, nǐ zěnmē néng fàng xīn ne?

Exercise 18.5

Translate the following into *pinyin* and then into Chinese characters:

- 1 You can make long distance phone-calls in Chinese post and telecommunications offices.
- 2 This is your receipt, please put (it) away carefully.
- 3 Please fill in this parcel form. Write the names and addresses of the recipient and sender clearly. (NB The name comes after the address in Chinese so reverse the order.)
- 4 Have you stuck the stamps on? Not yet.
- 5 Posting books is a hassle but worth it.

19

at the railway station

在火车站 zài huǒchēzhàn

In this chapter you will learn

- how to buy railway tickets
- about Chinese trains
- how to express similarities
- how to express percentages and fractions
- about Chinese festivals
- more about foreign names expressed in Chinese

▶ Foreigners are very fortunate in being able to buy their train tickets in a special office at Beijing Railway Station (*Běijīng Huǒchēzhàn*) otherwise they would have to queue (*pái duì* v-o) for a very long time. Miss Scurfield and Mr King wish to go to Tai'an (*Tà'ān*) over the mid-Autumn Festival (*Zhōngqiūjié*) in order to climb Mount Tai (*Tàishān*). Miss Scurfield goes to buy the tickets.

- 史 九月二十七、八号么六么次还有硬卧吗?
售票员 要几张?
史 要两张。
售票员 对不起,只剩一个上铺。软卧行吗?
史 软卧太贵了,那么我看看 (拿出火车时刻表查一下)。星期六一百二十五次几点开?啊,上午十点三十八分,晚上八点一刻到泰安—可以。星期六一百二十五次有软座吗?
售票员 一百二十五次没有软座,只有硬座、硬卧和软卧。您买硬卧下铺就等于软座了。
史 好,那就这样吧。
售票员 您有学生证或者专家证吗?如果有,票价就跟中国人一样,要不,贵百分之七十五。
史 有学生证,也有优待证所以就可以付人民币,是不是?
售票员 是的。(付钱以后,就接着问)您是第一次来中国吧?
史 是啊,我刚来几个月。
售票员 您中国话讲得不错。您为什么要去泰安而不去一个比较好玩儿的地方呢?
史 我非常想爬泰山,中秋节那天晚上在泰山顶上看日落,又在月光下吃月饼,第二天还希望能看到日出。
售票员 你这个人真有意思呀!您跟谁一起去?
史 跟我男朋友一起去。
售票员 他是中国人还是外国人?
史 是外国人,他是我的未婚夫。
售票员 啊,你们已经订婚了。难怪你们愿意在泰山上看日落,你们够浪漫的!
史 年轻的时候不浪漫一阵子还等到老了才浪漫吗?我的未婚夫很喜欢唐诗,他选了好几首,准备在泰山顶上给我朗诵。这些诗都是描写月光的。
售票员 真逗你们!
史 请问,我有一个朋友快要回国了,想坐火车经过莫斯科,能在这里买票吗?
售票员 不行,要去国际饭店中国旅行社订票。
史 你帮了我不少忙,太谢谢你了。
售票员 没什么。祝你们中秋节玩儿得愉快。

This is the same dialogue, this time in *pinyin*:

- Shī** Jiǔyuè èrshíqī, bā hào yāo liù yāo cì hái yǒu yìngwò ma?
- Shòupiàoyuán** Yào jǐ zhāng?
- Shī** Yào liǎng zhāng.
- Shòupiàoyuán** Duìbuqǐ, zhǐ shèng yí ge shàngpù. Ruǎnwò xíng ma?
- Shī** Ruǎnwò tài guì le. Nàme wǒ kànkàn (ná chū huǒchē shíkèbiǎo chá yíxià). Xīngqīliù yìbǎi'èr shíwǔ cì jǐ diǎn kāi? À, shàngwǔ shí diǎn sānshíbā fēn, wǎnshang bā diǎn yí kè dào Tà'ān - kěyǐ. Xīngqīliù yìbǎi'èrshíwǔ cì yǒu ruǎnzuò ma?
- Shòupiàoyuán** Yìbǎi'èrshíwǔ cì méi yǒu ruǎnzuò, zhǐ yǒu yìngzuò, yìngwò hé ruǎnwò. Nín mǎi yìngwò xiàpù jiù děngyú ruǎnzuò le.
- Shī** Hǎo, nà jiù zhèyàng ba.
- Shòupiàoyuán** Nín yǒu xuéshēngzhèng huòzhě zhuānjiāzhèng ma? Rúguǒ yǒu, piàojià jiù gēn Zhōngguó rén yíyàng, yàobù, guì bǎifēn zhī qīshíwǔ.
- Shī** Yǒu xuéshēngzhèng, yě yǒu yōudàizhèng suǒyǐ jiù kěyǐ fù rén mínbì, shì bu shì?
- Shòupiàoyuán** Shìde. (Fù qián yǐhòu, jiù jiēzhe wèn) Nín shì dì yí cì lái Zhōngguó ba?
- Shī** Shì a, wǒ gāng lái jǐ ge yuè.
- Shòupiàoyuán** Nín Zhōngguó huà jiǎng de búcuò. Nín wèi shénme yào qù Tà'ān ér bú qù yí ge bǐjiào hǎowánr de dìfang ne?
- Shī** Wǒ fēicháng xiǎng pá Tàishān, Zhōngqiūjié nà tiān wǎnshang zài Tàishān dǐng shàng kàn rìluò, yòu zài yuèguāng xià chī yuèbǐng. Dì èr tiān hái xīwàng néng kàn dào rìchū.
- Shòupiàoyuán** Nín zhè ge rén zhēn yǒu yìsi ya! Nín gēn shéi yìqǐ qù?
- Shī** Gēn wǒ nán péngyou yìqǐ qù.
- Shòupiàoyuán** Tā shì Zhōngguó rén háishi wàiguó rén?
- Shī** Shì wàiguó rén, tā shì wǒ de wèihūnfū.
- Shòupiàoyuán** À, nǐmen yǐjīng dīnghūn le. Nánguài nǐmen yuànyì zài Tàishān shàng kàn rìluò, nǐmen gòu làngmàn de!
- Shī** Niánqīng de shíhou bú làngmàn yízhènzǐ hái děng dào lǎo le cái làngmàn ma? Wǒ de wèihūnfū hěn xǐhuan Táng shī, tā xuǎn le hǎo jǐ shǒu, zhǔnbèi zài Tàishān dǐng shàng gěi wǒ lǎngsòng. Zhè xiē shī dōu shì miáoxiě yuèguāng de.

Shòupiàoyuán

Shǐ

Zhēn dòu nǐmen!

Qǐng wèn, wǒ yǒu yí ge péngyou kuài yào huí guó le, xiǎng zuò huǒchē jīngguò Mòsīkē, néng zài zhèlǐ mǎi piào ma?

Shòupiàoyuán

Bù xíng, yào qù Guójià Fàndiàn Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshè dīng piào.

Shǐ

Nǐ bāng le wǒ bù shǎo máng, tài xièxie nǐ le.

Shòupiàoyuán

Méi shénme. Zhù nǐmen Zhōngqiūjié wánr de yúkuài.

火车站	huǒchēzhàn (n)	railway station
么	yāo (num.)	one (used orally only)
次	cì (MW)	time
硬卧	yìngwò (n.)	hard sleeper
对不起	duìbuqǐ	sorry; excuse me
剩 (下来)	shèng (xiàlai) (v)	be left (over); remain
上铺	shàngpù (n)	upper berth
软卧	ruǎnwò (n)	soft sleeper
拿出	ná chū (v)	to take out
火车	huǒchē (n)	train
时刻表	shíkèbiǎo (n)	timetable, schedule
一百	yì bǎi	one hundred
开	kāi (v)	to start; to open; to drive
上午	shàngwǔ (TW)	morning
软座	ruǎnzuo (n)	soft seat (train)
硬座	yìngzuò (n)	hard seat (train)
下铺	xiàpù (n)	bottom berth
等于	děngyú (v)	to be equal to; be equivalent to
这样	zhèyàng	like this, in this way
专家证	zhuānjiāzhèng (n)	expert card
如果	rúguǒ (conj.)	if
票价	piàojià (n)	ticket price
跟A一样	gēn A yíyàng	the same as A
百分之 X	bǎifēn zhī X	X per cent
优待证	yōudàizhèng (n)	preferential card (often known as white card) (see p.206)
人民币	rénmínbì (n)	RMB (Chinese currency)
接着	jiēzhe (v)	to carry on; follow
刚	gāng (adv.)	just

中国话	Zhōngguóhuà	Chinese language (older term)
讲	jiǎng (v)	to speak; to explain
为什么	wèi shénme (conj.)	why
而	ér (conj.)	but; and
好玩(儿)	hǎowán(r) (adj.)	entertaining, enjoyable
爬	pá (v)	to climb
顶	dǐng (n)	top, peak; MW for hat
日落	rìluò (n)	sunset
月光	yuèguāng (n)	moonlight
月饼	yuèbǐng (n)	mooncake
希望	xīwàng (v and n)	to hope; hope
未婚夫	wèihūnfū (n)	fiancé
订婚	dìnghūn (v-o)	to be or get engaged
难怪	nánguài (conj.)	no wonder
够	gòu (adv.)	rather, quite; enough (adj.)
浪漫	làngmàn (adj.)	romantic
年轻	niánqīng (adj.)	young
一阵子	yízhènzǐ (n)	a period of time, spell
等	děng (v)	wait
唐	Táng (N)	the Tang Dynasty (AD 618-907)
诗(首)	shī (n) [shǒu]	poem
选	xuǎn (v)	to choose
好几	hǎo jǐ (adj.)	a good many
准备	zhǔnbèi (v)	to prepare
朗诵	lǎngsòng (v)	to recite, read about with expression
描写	miáoxiě (v)	to describe
逗	dòu (adj.)	funny
回国	huí guó (v-o)	to return to your own country
经过	jīngguò (v)	to go through, pass
莫斯科	Mòsīkē (N)	Moscow
国际饭店	Guójī Fàndiàn (N)	the International Hotel
中国旅行社	Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshè (N)	China Travel Service
订	dìng (v)	to book, reserve, subscribe to
帮忙	bāng máng (v-o)	to help, do a favour
不少	bù shǎo	quite a bit, quite a few
祝	zhù (v)	to offer good wishes
愉快	yúkuài (adj.)	happy, pleased

i On trains

In China one does not buy a single or return ticket to X but asks for a certain type of seat on a certain number train on a certain day to X! In general, trains with one or two figure numbers are express, those with three figures semi-fast or ordinary stopping trains. The ordinary method of notation (see 2.11) is used when expressing train numbers of 100 or less, numbers over 100 may be expressed as three individual digits. To avoid possible confusion with *qī* ('seven'), *yāo* is used instead of *yī* ('one') as in the example in the dialogue or in telephone numbers. On long distance trains (and I mean long distance) you can travel soft or hard sleeper or hard seat. On shorter distance main routes you can travel soft or hard seat, on 'minor' routes hard seat only. Soft sleepers are arranged in small compartments of four (two-up two-down). Hard sleepers are arranged in blocks of six (two *shàngpù*, two *zhōngpù* and two *xiàpù*) in huge compartments. Each block of six has its own Thermos flask of hot water (as does each soft sleeper compartment) which is filled at intervals by the *chéngwùyuán* ('train attendant') responsible for that part of the train. Everybody in hard class usually brings her/his own tea-cup with lid and her/his own supply of tea-leaves. (Cups with lids are normally provided free of charge in soft class.) There is usually a *cānchē* ('restaurant car') on all long- and medium-distance trains where you can generally get a reasonably good meal. Try the cardboard boxes of *kuàicān* ('fast food'). Some people like to bring their own chopsticks to use. When you start your journey, the loudspeakers announce that your new life on the train is about to begin and lists the various rules and regulations you should adhere to to make the journey a happy one. Early to bed, early to rise are the general principles to be observed on Chinese trains. It has hitherto been impossible to buy return tickets in China so as soon as you get to a place you have to start thinking of how and when you are going to get out of it! Travelling on Chinese trains is well worth the effort however and a way of experiencing Chinese society in miniature.

Zheng's of all sorts

As in most socialist countries, IDs of all kinds are *de rigueur* in China. All Chinese have a *gōngzuòzhèng* ('work ID card'), foreign experts have a *zhuānjiāzhèng* ('expert's ID card'), students have a *xuéshēngzhèng* ('student card') and so on. These cards entitle the bearer to special privileges or allow her/him access to places which would otherwise be barred to her/him. Chinese visiting foreign friends or colleagues who live in foreigners' compounds or hotels

have to show their *gōngzuòzhèng* and possibly fill out a form saying whom they are going to visit, his/her room number, etc. before being allowed in by their Chinese compatriots at the door or gate. Handled sensitively, this issue is not quite as formidable as it appears. You can always go to the main door/gate of your building to meet your friends to save them any embarrassment. The Chinese authorities, for their part, claim it is to ensure the safety of their foreign guests and that of their possessions.

It used to be the case that a *yōudàizhèng* ('superior treatment card') entitled the bearer to pay in *rénmínbì* (RMB) where the ordinary foreigner would normally have been required to pay in FEC (foreign exchange certificates – *wàihuìquàn** in Chinese), e.g. for accommodation, food and entertainment in some hotels and 'official' guest-houses, taxi fares and goods purchased in Friendship Stores (*Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn*) or hotels. Foreign experts and teachers recruited by Chinese *dānwèi* as well as foreign students sponsored by the Chinese government were given *yōudàizhèng*. When FEC were abolished in 1994, *yōudàizhèng* were no longer required as everything could be paid for in *rénmínbì*. A foreign expert's ID may still entitle her/him to some discounts.

* Most people appear to pronounce this *wàihuìjuàn*.

Grammar

1 More on the comparative

We have already met the comparative in 7.5 and again in 8.3. To express that 'A is the same as B' we say *A gēn B yíyàng*. In the text *piàojià gēn Zhōngguó rén yíyàng* stands for *piàojià gēn Zhōngguó rén de piàojià yíyàng* 'The price is the same as for Chinese'. This can be taken a step further using the formula:

'A is as adjective as B',

A gēn B yíyàng guì

Niúròu gēn yú yíyàng guì

A gēn B yíyàng adjective:

'A is as expensive as B'.

'Beef is as expensive as fish'.

Exercise 19.1

Write out the following sentences in characters and then translate them into English. Look up any characters you don't know in the index.

1 *Yìngwò gēn ruǎnwò yíyàng ma?*

Bù yíyàng, ruǎnwò bǐ yìngwò guì duōle.

- 2 *Yingwò gēn yingzuò yǒu shénme bù yíyàng?*
Yingzuò bǐ yingwò piányi de duō.
- 3 *Nǐ gēn tā yíyàng bù xǐhuan tīng yīnyuè ma?*
Bù, wǒ hěn xǐhuan tīng gǔdiǎn yīnyuè.
- 4 *Wǒ gēn wǒ de wèihūnqī (未婚妻 fiancée) yíyàng làngmàn,*
dōu xǐhuan xiě shī.
- 5 *Zài Ōuzhōu Riběn diànshì gēn zài Zhōngguó yíyàng nán*
mǎi ma?

2 Percentages and fractions

As stated in 15.1, the Chinese move from the general to the particular, so in line with this principle instead of saying 75%, the Chinese say 100 parts classical possessive marker *zhī* 75, i.e. *bǎifēn zhī qīshíwǔ*. Sixty per cent would be *bǎifēn zhī liùshí* and so on.

To say something is 10% more expensive than something else the adjective for 'expensive' *guì* is placed in front of the percentage: *guì bǎifēn zhī shí* so 'this video-recorder is 20% more expensive than that one' would be:

Zhè tái lùxiàngjī bǐ nà tái (lùxiàngjī) guì bǎifēn zhī èrshí.
'How many per cent' is expressed as *bǎifēn zhī duōshao?*

Fractions work in exactly the same way. Three quarters (3/4) is expressed as four parts *zhī* three, i.e. *sìfēn zhī sān*; 7/8 *bāfēn zhī qī*, etc. 'How many eighths' would therefore be *bāfēn zhī jǐ* (not *duōshao* as the answer has to be less than ten.)

If you want to say something is 'twice as expensive as something else' the formula is *A bǐ B guì yí bèi*, where *bèi* 倍 means 'times or -fold'.

Exercise 19.2

Write out each sentence in characters including translating the percentage, fraction or -fold contained in the brackets:

Wàiguó rén de piàojià bǐ Zhōngguó rén guì (75%).

→ 外国人的票价比中国人贵百分之七十五。

- 1 *Guójì Fàndiàn bǐ Běijīng Fàndiàn guì (50%).*
- 2 *Shuǐdiàn fèi bǐ qùnián guì (10%).*
- 3 *Xiàpù bǐ shàngpù guì (20%).*
- 4 *Dǎ chángtú diànhuà bǐ dǎ diànbào guì bǎifēn zhī duōshao?*
Guì (200%).
- 5 *Riběn yīfu bǐ Zhōngguó yīfu guì (300%).*

- 6 *Píngguǒ bù hǎo chī, wǒ zhǐ chī le* (1/4).
 7 *Wàiguó yān hǎo chōu* (抽 to smoke), *zhè bāo yǐjīng chōu le* (2/3).
 8 *Yīnyuèhuì de piào zuótiān mài le* (7/8).
 9 *Guóchǎn diànshì bǐ wàiguó diànshì piányi* (one-fold).
 10 *Zài Zhōngguó Měiguó zhuānjiā bǐ Yīngguó zhuānjiā duō* (ten-fold).

3 Use of ér

Ér 而 is another reminder of how much classical Chinese is contained in the modern language. It is not just used by educated people either, which shows how deeply engrained it is in the linguistic memories of the Chinese. *Ér* is a conjunction roughly meaning 'and' if the sentence is made up of two complementary halves and 'but', 'whereas' if they are contrasting. It combines with *qiě* 且 to mean 'moreover' and in this context often appears with *búdàn* 不但 to form a pair of conjunctions, viz. *búdàn . . . érqiě* 'not only . . . but also . . .': *Tā búdàn méi lái érqiě hái gàosu wǒ tā yǒngyuǎn bú huì zài lái* 'Not only did she not come but she also told me that she would never come again'.

4 More on yòu

We met the construction *yòu . . . yòu* in 5.11 meaning 'both . . . and . . .'. The most common meaning for *yòu* (又) is 'again' but it is to be distinguished from *zài* (再) in that *yòu* means 'again' in the past, whereas *zài* means 'again' in the present or future. It may be useful to memorize the following sentences:

Tā zuótiān lái le. Tā jīntiān yòu lái le. Tā shuō tā míngtiān zài lái She came yesterday. She came *again* today. She says she's coming *again* tomorrow'. In the text, however, *yòu* has yet another meaning of 'in addition'.

Zhōngqiūjié nà tiān wǎnshàng zài Tàishān dǐng shàng kàn rìluò, yòu zài yuèguāng xià chī yuèbǐng.

It can also be translated as something like 'but', 'yet', and 'at the same time' in a sentence where it links two contradictory states of mind:

Wǒ yào chū qu, yòu pà xià yǔ 'I want to go out but I'm afraid it's going to rain'.

Wǒ ài nǐ, yòu hèn nǐ 'I love and hate you at the same time'.

5 Extensions of place words

Zài yuèguāng xià 'Beneath the light of the moon' is to be taken literally, but what about: *Zài nǐ bāngzhù zhī* (classical possessive marker) *xià*? Does it literally mean 'underneath your help'? Of course not, it is just the Chinese way of saying 'with your help'. Another good example of this is: *Zài gòngchǎndǎng de lǐngdǎo* (leadership) (*zhī*) *xià* 'Under the leadership of the Communist Party'. If we replace *xià* with *zhōng* we may get a sentence such as *wǒmen péngyou zhī zhōng* (之中) or *wǒmen péngyou zhī jiān* (之间), both of which mean 'between or amongst friends'.

6 Use of gòu

Gòu (够) literally means 'sufficient' or 'enough' but it is combined with a wealth of adjectives or nouns to form expressive colloquial phrases such as:

<i>gòugé</i>	'up to standard'
<i>gòu péngyou</i>	'really friendly'
<i>gòu yìsi</i>	'fascinating'
<i>gòuqiàng</i>	'hard to bear, terrible'.

Here *gòu làngmàn* means 'really romantic'.

7 To sit, to drive, to sit astride

The Chinese language is much more precise than is English when it comes to expressing how or by what form of transport one goes somewhere. One sits (*zuò*) in a car, bus, train, plane or boat:

<i>zuò</i> (坐) <i>qìchē</i> (汽车)	'by car' (<i>Lit.</i> steam vehicle)
<i>zuò</i> <i>gōnggòngqìchē</i> (公共汽车)	'by bus' (<i>Lit.</i> public together steam vehicle)
<i>zuò</i> <i>fēijī</i> (飞机)	'by plane' (<i>Lit.</i> fly machine)
<i>zuò</i> <i>chuán</i> (船)	'by boat'

but 'sits astride' a bicycle, a horse or a motorbike:

<i>qí</i> (骑) <i>zìxíngchē</i> (自行车)	'by bicycle' (<i>Lit.</i> self-propelling machine)
<i>qí</i> <i>mǎ</i> (马)	'on horseback'
<i>qí</i> <i>mótuōchē</i> (摩托车)	'on a motorbike'.

Note the horse radical (马) employed in the character for *qí*. *Qí* (奇) is used to provide the phonetic element for the character as

a whole. We have met the verb *kāi* (开) meaning 'to open' (as of doors) or 'to turn on' (as of lights, radios, etc.). The same verb also means 'to drive' as of cars, trains, planes and buses.

Exercise 19.3

Choose the correct verb from *zuò*, *qí* and *kāi* to fill the blank in each sentence and then write out the whole sentence in characters.

Nǐ huì bu huì ___ mǎ? → 你会不会骑马?

- 1 ___ *huǒchē* bǐ ___ *gōnggòngqìchē* kuài duō le.
- 2 ___ *fēijī* de rén *gōngzī* hěn gāo.
- 3 *Zài Zhōngguó* ___ *zìxíngchē* de rén *fēicháng* duō.
- 4 *Yǒude rén xǐhuan* ___ *mótuōchē yīnwei* hěn *zìyóu* (自由 'free/freedom')
- 5 *Yīngguórén shíqī suì cái kěyǐ* ___ *chē*.

8 Zhēn dòu nǐmen

Not all colloquial expressions are grammatical as can be seen from the above example. The normal word order has been reversed, giving a fresher, more casual effect, or the impression that the sentence was perhaps an afterthought. Listen out for such expressions and learn them.

9 Foreign names (II)

Foreign names can be expressed in Chinese in two principal ways, *viz.* by rendering the sounds with disregard to the meaning; by translating the meaning. *Mòsikē* (莫斯科) 'Moscow' falls into the first of these categories as 'no then science' does not appear to have a great deal of significance.

Niújīn (牛津) 'Oxford' on the other hand, falls into the second category as *niú* ('ox') and *jīn* ('ford') precisely express the meaning of the English Ox-ford. Of course there are further refinements in that when rendering the sounds, care can be taken to find characters with a 'good' meaning (if that is the intention of course!). Thus Hyde Park is translated as *Hǎi* (海) *dé* (德) *gōngyuán* (公园) 'Sea virtue public enclosure' (park), but it could have been translated as *Hài* (害) *dé* (德) *gōngyuán* 'Harm(s) virtue park'.

Mozambique was originally translated into Chinese as *Mò* (莫) *sān* (三) *bí* (鼻) *jǐ* (给) 'No three nose(s) provide' but was later changed to *Mò* (莫) *sāng* (桑) *bǐ* (比) *kè* (克) 'No mulberry tree

compare overcome' which was obviously an improvement as *sāng* has poetic overtones which I won't go into here and *kè* is suitably strong.

Kennedy fared much worse. In Chinese *xiàngshēng* ('cross talk') his name was translated as *kěn* (啃) *ní* (泥) *de* (的) 'gnaw mud person' but officialdom saw fit to change it to *Kěn* (肯) *ní* (尼) *dí* (迪) 'willing Buddhist nun enlighten'!

Exercise 19.4

Translate the following Chinese renderings of foreign words back into English by a looking at the pronunciation and/or by finding out the meaning in a Chinese-English dictionary.

e.g. 罗马尼亚 *Luómǎníyà* → Romania.

- 1 热狗包 *règǒubāo*.
- 2 汉堡牛肉包 *hànbǎoniúròubāo*.
- 3 可口可乐 *kěkǒukělè*.
- 4 雅马哈 *Yā* ___.
- 5 加拿大 *Jiānádà*.
- 6 古巴 *Gǔbā*.
- 7 剑桥 *Jiànqiáo*.
- 8 华沙 *Huáshā*.
- 9 华盛顿 *Huáshèngdùn*.
- 10 撒切尔夫人 *Sāqiě'ěr fūrén*.

Exercise 19.5

Translate the following sentences into colloquial English:

- 1 中国的中秋节是阴历 (*yīnlì* 'lunar calendar') 八月十五日。那天晚上大家要看月亮 (*yuèliàng* 'the moon')、吃月饼。
- 2 唐诗很有名 (*yǒu míng* 'to be famous') 也很有意思, 都值得学中文的人看一看。
- 3 跟朋友一起去买东西一定很好玩儿。
- 4 您贵姓? 您叫什么名字? 我都要记下来好吗?
- 5 要是你有学生证和优待证, 火车票价跟中国人一样, 同时 (*tóngshí* 'moreover') 也可以付人民币。

i On festivals and mooncakes

Prior to 1949, the Chinese followed the lunar calendar which is said to have been in existence for almost 4000 years and is still used to calculate China's traditional festivals. The most important ones are: 春节 *Chūnjié* 'the Spring Festival' or 'Lunar New Year' which falls on the first day of the first lunar month. The Lunar New Year itself may

occur as early as 21 January and as late as 21 February. It is the major festival in China when most Chinese have at least 3–4 days' holiday and everybody tries to get back home to celebrate. (Avoid travelling in China at this time if possible.) Couplets wishing the household happiness, prosperity and longevity are written in the old way, i.e. vertically not horizontally, on red paper and pasted on either side of the door. The children normally get new clothes, everybody consumes vast quantities of food (noodles at midnight on New Year's Eve ensure long life). Firecrackers which ensure a deafening sound are set off, mainly on New Year's Eve and on New Year's Day supposedly to warn off evil spirits, hence the need for a big noise.

元宵节 *Yuánxiāojié* 'the Lantern Festival' or 'the Feast of the First Full Moon' falls on the 15th day of the first lunar month. People (or more usually work-units in the cities) make lanterns (灯 *dēng*) which are then exhibited at colourful lantern fairs, usually held in a park. The lanterns were apparently used as torches to help people see the good spirits which were flying in the sky by the light of the first full moon. Dragon dances and lion dances are performed to the noisy accompaniment of gongs and drums. *Yuánxiāo* are the special food associated with the Lantern Festival. They are small round dumplings made of glutinous rice, usually with a sweet filling. Their roundness symbolizes the full moon.

清明节 *Qīngmíngjié* 'the Pure Brightness Festival' falls during the first few days of the third lunar month. This is the day on which the Chinese traditionally 'sweep' the graves of their dead and pay them their respects. This used to involve making offerings of food and wine, burning incense, candles and paper money. This may still happen in the countryside but people in the towns generally confine themselves to tidying up the graves and laying flowers (white is for mourning in China, so don't give people white flowers).

端午节 *Duānwǔjié* 'the Dragon Boat Festival' falls on the fifth day of the fifth lunar month and commemorates 屈原 *Qū Yuán* a great poet and patriot of the state of Chu during the Warring States period (475–221 BC). Qu Yuan's story is too long to be told here. Why not find it out for yourself? Why do the Chinese hold dragon boat races and eat 粽子 *zòngzi* (pyramid shaped dumplings made of glutinous rice wrapped in bamboo or reed leaves) on *Duānwǔjié*?

中秋节 *Zhōngqiūjié* 'the Mid-Autumn Festival' falls on the 15th day of the eighth lunar month. People traditionally admire the full moon which is said to be at its brightest and clearest on this day of the year, and eat mooncakes 月饼 *yuèbǐng*, special pastries with savoury or sweet fillings of various kinds. Find out who or what lives on the

moon in Chinese mythology. Who was *Cháng'é* (嫦娥) and why did she fly to the moon?

After the founding of the People's Republic in 1949, the solar calendar was adopted in China. The main holidays according to the solar calendar are:

元旦	<i>Yuándàn</i> 'New Year's Day'
国际劳动妇女节	<i>Guójì Láodòng Fùnǚjié</i> 'International Working Women's Day' (8 March)
国际劳动节	<i>Guójì Láodòngjié</i> 'International Labour Day' (1 May)
青年节	<i>Qīngniánjié</i> 'Youth Day' (4 May)
国际儿童节	<i>Guójì Értóngjié</i> 'International Children's Day' (1 June)
	(1 July is the Anniversary of the Founding of the Communist Party of China but there is no set phrase for it with <i>-jié</i>)
建军节	<i>Jiànjūnjié</i> 'Anniversary of the Founding of the People's Liberation Army' (1 August)
国庆节	<i>Guóqìngjié</i> 'National Day' (1 October)

20

change money?

In this chapter you will learn

- how to change money
- how to open an account in China
- about exchange rates
- how to emphasize that something has to be done

▶ The ordinary foreigner used to find him or herself conducting all his or her money matters through the Bank of China (*Zhōngguó Yínháng*).

凡是外国人存钱、取钱、换钱都要通过中国银行。熊先生去北京语言学院的中国银行分行打听一下情况。

熊 请问一下，活期存款和定期存款有什么不一样？

营业员甲 活期存款和定期存款样式不同，利率也不同。定期的利息当然比活期要高得多。

熊 定期存款还有一些什么规定？

营业员甲 定期存款有三个月的，有半年的，也有一、两年的，利(息)率都不同。存的时间越长，利息越高。如果取钱的时候存钱的时间没到期，那就只能按照活期利息计算。

熊 啊，我明白了，跟英国大同小异。在中国可以开一个外币帐户吗？

营业员甲 当然可以。这样就可以从国外直接存钱，是英镑就存英镑，是美元就存美元，依此类推。

熊 那就很方便。我想打听一下，把旅行支票换成外汇券非在中国银行办理不可吗？

营业员甲 对了，但是你尽管放心，基本上所有接待外国人的大旅馆都有中国银行的点儿，大城市的友谊商店里也有。

熊 牌价一样吗？

营业员甲 不管你在什么地方换，牌价都是一模一样的，你甭操心了。别忘了，一定要把外汇兑换证明好好儿保存，千万别丢了，否则出境的时候不能把剩下的人民币再换成外汇。

熊 现在换钱可以吗？

营业员甲 可以。请先填这张取钱表。护照带来了吗？

熊 哎呀，真没想到，怎么办？

营业员甲 护照号码还记得吗？

熊 还记得。

营业员甲 那就算了。按规定换钱的时候应该出示护照，但是除非我们怀疑有什么问题，想对照本人的签字，填上护照号码就行了。(接过熊先生填好的表)你是十一号(给他一个号码牌)请等一会儿吧。

营业员乙 十一号。

熊 欸，在这儿呢。

营业员乙 请把钱点一点。

熊 (点好了)正好。谢谢(对营业员甲说)今天给你添了不少麻烦。

营业员甲 没什么麻烦。欢迎你再来。

(熊出门的时候正好碰到另外一种换钱的!)

换钱的 Change money?

Fánshì wàiguórén cún qián, qǔ qián, huàn qián dōu yào tōngguò Zhōngguó Yínháng. Xióng xiānsheng qù Běijīng Yǔyán Xuéyuàn de Zhōngguó Yínháng fēnháng dǎtīng yíxià qíngkuàng.

Xióng Qǐng wèn yíxià, huóqī cúnkuǎn hé dīngqī cúnkuǎn yǒu shénme bù yíyàng?

Yíngyèyuán Jiǎ Huóqī cúnkuǎn hé dīngqī cúnkuǎn yàngshì bù tóng, lìlǚ yě bù tóng. Dīngqī de lìxī dāngrán bǐ huóqī yào gāo de duō

Xióng Dīngqī cúnkuǎn hái yǒu yìxiē shénme guīdìng?

Yíngyèyuán Jiǎ Dīngqī cúnkuǎn yǒu sān ge yuè de, yǒu bànnián de, yě yǒu yì, liǎng nián de, lì(xī)lǚ dōu bù tóng. Cún de shíjiān yuè cháng, lìxī yuè gāo. Rúguǒ qǔ qián de shíhou cún qián de shíjiān méi dàoqī, nà jiù zhǐ néng ànzhào huóqī lìxī jìsuàn.

Xióng À, wǒ míngbai le, gēn Yīngguó dàtóng-xiǎoyì. Zài Zhōngguó kěyǐ kāi yí ge wàibi zhànghù ma?

Yíngyèyuán Jiǎ Dāngrán kěyǐ. Zhèyàng jiù kěyǐ cóng guówài zhījiē cún qián, shì Yīngbàng jiù cún Yīngbàng, shì Měiyuán jiù cún Měiyuán, yīcǐ làituī.

Xióng Nà jiù hěn fāngbiàn. Wǒ xiǎng dǎtīng yíxià, bǎ lǚxíng zhīpiào huàn chéng wàihuìquàn fēi zài Zhōngguó Yínháng bànlǐ bùkě ma?

Yíngyèyuán Jiǎ Duìle, dànshi nǐ jǐnguǎn fàng xīn, jīběishang suǒyǒu jiēdài wàiguórén de lǚguǎn dōu yǒu Zhōngguó Yínháng de diǎnr, dà chéngshì de Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn lǐ yě yǒu.

Xióng Páijià yíyàng ma?

Yíngyèyuán Jiǎ Bùguǎn nǐ zài shénme dìfang huàn, páijià dōu shì yímó-yíyàng de, nǐ béng cǎo xīn le. Bié wàng le, yídìng yào bǎ wàihuì duìhuàn zhèngmíng hǎohāor bǎocún, qiānwàn bié diū le, fǒuzé chūjìng de shíhou bù néng bǎ shèng xiàlai de rénmínbi zài huàn chéng wàihuì.

Xióng Xiànzài huàn qián kěyǐ ma?

Yíngyèyuán Jiǎ Kěyǐ. Qǐng xiān tián zhè zhāng qǔqiánbiǎo. Hùzhào dài lai le ma?

Xióng Āiyā, zhēn méi xiǎng dào, zěnme bàn?

Yíngyèyuán Jiǎ Hùzhào hàomǎ hái jìde ma?

Xióng Háijìde.

Yíngyèyuán Jiǎ Nà jiù suàn le. Àn guīdìng huàn qián de shíhou yīnggāi chūshì hùzhào, dànshi chūfēi wǒmen huáiyí yǒu shénme wèntí, xiǎng duìzhào běnrén de qiān zì, tián shang hùzhào hàomǎ jiù xíng le.

(*Jiē guò Xióng xiānsheng tián hǎo de biǎo*) Nǐ shì shíyī hào. (*Gěi tā yí ge hàomǎ pái*) Qǐng děng yīhuìr ba.

Shíyī hào.

Èi, zài zhèr ne.

Qǐng bǎ qián diǎnyidiǎn.

(*Diǎn hǎo le*) Zhèng hǎo. Xièxie. (*Duì yíngyèyuán Jiǎ shuō*) Jǐntiān gěi nǐ tiān le bù shǎo máfan.

Méi shénme máfan. Huānyíng nǐ zài lái. (*Xióng chū mén de shíhou zhèng hǎo pèng dào língwài yì zhǒng huàn qián de!*)

Change money?

Yíngyèyuán Yī

Xióng

Yíngyèyuán Yī

Xióng

Yíngyèyuán Jiǎ

Huàn qián de

凡是	fánshì (adv.)	every, any, all
存钱	cún qián (v-o)	deposit money
取钱	qǔ qián (v-o)	withdraw money
换钱	huàn qián (v-o)	change money
通过	tōngguò (v)	to pass through
中国银行	Zhōngguó Yínháng (N)	Bank of China
分行	fēnháng (n)	branch (bank)
打听	dǎtīng (v)	to enquire
活期存款	huóqī cúnkuǎn (n)	current account
定期存款	dìngqī cúnkuǎn (n)	deposit account
一样	yíyàng (adj.)	the same, alike
样式	yàngshì (n)	form, pattern
不同	bù tóng (adj.)	different
利(息)率	lì(xī)lǜ (n)	rate of interest
利息	lìxī (n)	interest
规定	guīdìng (n)	rule, regulation
到期	dàoqī (v-o)	become due, expire
计算	jìsuàn (v)	to count, calculate
明白	míngbai (v; adj.)	to understand; clear
大同小异	dàtóng-xiǎoyì (adj.)	similar in major areas but different on minor points
外币	wàibì (n)	foreign currency
帐户	zhàngù (n)	account
国外	guówài (adj.)	overseas, abroad
直接	zhíjiē (adj.; adv.)	direct, directly
英镑	Yīngbàng (n)	pound Sterling
美元	Měiyuán (n)	US dollar
依此类推	yīcǐ lèitūi	others can be deduced similarly
方便	fāngbiàn (adj.)	convenient

- 旅行支票
V + 成
外汇 (券)
- 非...不可
办理
- 尽管
- 基本 (上)
所有
接待
点儿
城市
友谊商店
牌价
- 不管...都/也
一模一样
甬
操心
忘(记)
兑换
证明
保存
千万
- 丢
否则
出境
取钱表
护照
带
哎呀
- 怎么办?
号码
记得
算了
出示
除非
怀疑
问题
- lǚxíng zhīpiào** (n) *traveller's cheque*
V + chéng
wàihuì(quàn) (n) *foreign exchange (certificate) (FECs abolished in 1994)*
- fēi . . . bùkě**
bànlǐ (v) *see 20.3*
to conduct, handle, transact
- jǐnguǎn** (adv.; conj.) *feel free to; even though, despite*
- jīběn (shàng)** (adj.) *basic(ally)*
suǒyǒu (de) (adj.) *all*
jiēdài (v) *to receive, admit*
diǎnr (n coll.) *spot, small branch*
chéngshì (n) *city, town*
- Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn** (N) *Friendship Store*
páijià (n) *market quotation (exchange rate)*
- bùguǎn . . . dōu/yě**
yí mú - yí yàng
béng (v) *see 20.6*
exactly alike
bú yòng, 'needn't' (coll.)
cāo xīn (v-o) *to worry about*
wàng (jì) (v) *to forget*
duìhuàn (v) *to exchange*
zhèngmíng (n; v) *certificate; to prove*
bǎocún (v) *to keep, preserve*
qiānwàn (adv.) *whatever you do (Lit. ten million)*
diū (v) *to lose*
fǒuzé (conj.) *otherwise, or else*
chūjìng (v-o) *leave the country*
qǔqiánbiǎo (n) *cash withdrawal form*
hùzhào (n) *passport*
dài (v) *to bring, take*
āiyā (interj.) *oh dear (expressing surprise)*
- zěnmě bàn?** *what's to be done?*
hàomǎ (n) *number*
jìde (v) *to remember*
suàn le *forget it, let it pass*
chūshì (v) *to show, produce*
chúfēi (conj.) *unless (see 20.7)*
huáiyí (v) *to suspect*
wèntí (n) *question, problem*

对照	duìzhào (v)	to compare
本人	běnrén (n)	in person, oneself
签字牌	qiān zì (v-o; n)	to sign; signature
牌	pái (n)	plate (here disc); brand; card
欸	èi (interj.)	yes (verbal response to enquiry)
点	diǎn (v)	to check, count (e.g. money)
正好	zhènghǎo (acv.; v)	just right; to happen to
碰到	pèng (dào) (v)	to bump (into)
另外	líng(wài) (adj.; adv.)	another; separately

Grammar

1 *Fánshì* . . . *dōu*

One way of expressing that everyone of a certain category of person, creature or inanimate object possesses the same kind of characteristic is to use the construction: *Fánshì* + identification of group + *dōu* ('all') + characteristic:

Fánshì xiǎoháir dōu xǐhuan chī táng 'All children like eating sweets'.

Fánshì Yìdàlì júzi dōu hěn tián 'All Italian tangerines are very sweet'.

In the text we have *Fánshì wàiguórén . . . dōu yào tōngguò Zhōngguó Yínháng* 'All foreigners . . . have to go through the Bank of China'.

2 Verb + *chéng*

When *chéng* (成) ('to become') is attached to certain verbs such as *xiě* (写) 'write', *fānyì* (翻译) 'translate', *niàn* (念) 'to read aloud', *biàn* (变) 'to change' or 'transform' and *huàn* (换) 'to exchange' (or change clothes, buses, money), it functions like a resultative verb ending (see 5.1). It differs from resultative verb endings like *-hǎo*, *wán*, etc. in that it must be followed by a noun which shows what the subject or object has turned into or become. This construction is often to be found together with *bǎ* (把) but not invariably so, as can be seen from the second example:

Wǒ bǎ gùshi fānyì chéng Xībānyáwén 'I translated the story into Spanish'.

Tā màn mǎnr de biàn chéng yí ge hǎo rén 'He slowly turned into a good person'.

Lǎoshī bǎ nuǎnhuo de 'huó' niàn chéng 'hé'. 'The teacher read the "huo" in "nuǎnhuo" as "he"'. . . bǎ lǚxíng zhīpiào huàn chéng wàihuìquàn . . . 'to change traveller's cheques into FEC'.

Exercise 20.1

Choose a suitable verb to fill the blank in each sentence. Each verb to be used once only. Choose from *biàn*, *fānyì*, *huàn*, *niàn* and *xiě*.

- 1 Xuésheng niàn kèwén (text) de shíhou bǎ 'dàifu' ____ chéng 'dàfu'.
- 2 Kuài sǐ (die) de shíhou, hěn duō rén yào gǎnkuài (hastily) ____ chéng hǎo rén!
- 3 Bǎ kèwén ____ chéng Yīngwén róngyì bu róngyì?
- 4 Lǎoshī (teacher) bìng méi yǒu zhùyì, zài hēibǎn (blackboard) shàng bǎ 'hái' zì ____ chéng 'bù' zì.
- 5 Wǒ yào bǎ mǎkè (DM) ____ chéng Rìyuán (yen).

3 Fēi verb . . . bùkě

This is an emphatic expression meaning 'must', 'have to'. *Fēi* comes from classical Chinese and means *bú shì* (不是), *bùkě* is a shortened form of *bù kěyǐ* 'not permissible' so the whole phrase means 'not to do the action of the verb is not permissible'!

Wǒ fēi qù bùkě 'I absolutely have to go'.

Tā fēi yào jié hūn bùkě 'She insists on getting married'.

. . . fēi zài Zhōngguó Yínháng bàn lǐ bùkě ma? 'Does (it) have to be done (transacted) at the Bank of China?'

4 Adjective/noun + shang

A neat and easy way of forming an adverb from adjectives, such as *jīběn* (基本) 'basic' and nouns such as *shíjì* (实际) 'reality' is simply to add *-shang* (上) so that *jīběnshang* becomes 'basically' and *shíjìshang* becomes 'in reality'. Other examples are:

<i>yìshùshang</i> (艺术上)	'artistically'
<i>zhèngzhìshang</i> (政治上)	'politically'
<i>jīngjìshang</i> (经济上)	'economically'
<i>lǐlùnshang</i> (理论上)	'theoretically'
<i>shìshìshang</i> (事实上)	'in actual fact' (an alternative to <i>shíjìshang</i>)
<i>shēnghuóshang</i> (生活上)	'in life'
<i>lìshìshang</i> (历史上)	'historically'

5 All and all

There are several ways of expressing 'all' in Chinese and it is important to distinguish their different grammatical functions. *Dōu* is an adverb and therefore precedes the verb, *suǒyǒu* (*de*) is an adjective and precedes the noun it is referring to and *yíqiè* is a noun:

Tāmen dōu bù xǐhuan tā 'None of them likes him'.

Suǒyǒu de rén bù xǐhuan tā 'Nobody likes him' (*Lit.* all people don't like him).

Tāmen bù xǐhuan yíqiè 'They like nothing' (*Lit.* they not like all).

Chinese would be more likely to say, however, *Tāmen yíqiè dōu bù xǐhuan* (see 21.11). It sounds so much better balanced and in the end that's what distinguishes the beginner from a fluent speaker of the language.

6 Bùguǎn . . . dōu/yě

Guǎn has several meanings but two of its principal meanings as a verb are 'to be in charge of / to run' and 'to bother about' or 'to mind': *Tā guǎn fángzi* 'He's in charge of the house (or housing)', *Wǒ guǎn háizi* 'I'm in charge of the children', *Nǐ bié guǎn wǒ!* 'Don't bother about me!' Taking this one step further, *bùguǎn* can be used as a verb to express the idea of 'regardless of', 'no matter' (what, how, etc.). *Bùguǎn zěnmeyàng* 'no matter what, in any case'.

Expanded into full sentences it expresses the idea that no matter what happens in the first clause, the state of affairs in the second clause will continue to be so:

Bùguǎn nǐ qù bu qù, wǒ dōu/yě yào qù 'No matter whether you're going or not, I am'.

Bùguǎn jǐngchá ('police') *zěnmè mà* ('curse' berate) *shìwēizhě* ('demonstrator'), *tāmen dōu bù chéngrèn cuòwù* ('acknowledge one's mistake'). Work this one out for yourself:

Bùguǎn nǐ zài shénme dìfang huàn, páijià dōu shì yímó-yíyàng de . . . 'No matter where you change (money), the exchange rate (*Lit.* plate price) is exactly the same . . .'

Búlùn . . . (dōu) and *wúlùn . . . (dōu)* are used very much like *bùguǎn . . . dōu* but are to be found more in the written language:

Búlùn xìngbié ('gender'), *niánlíng* ('age') 'regardless of sex and age'.

Wúlùn nánǚ lǎoshào 'No matter whether male or female, young or old'. *Wúlùn rúhé* is a set adverbial phrase meaning 'whatever happens':

Wúlùn rúhé wǒmen yě yào jìxù ('continue') *díkàng* ('resist').

7 Chúfēi . . . cái

As used in the text, *chúfēi* simply means 'unless' or 'only if' . . . *chúfēi wǒmen huáiyí yǒu shénme wèntí* ' . . . unless we suspect there is a problem . . .'. In a more complicated construction usually coupled with *cái*, it still has this meaning but you have to remember when translating that *cái* already contains the negative. The following examples will hopefully make this point clear:

Chúfēi míngtiān chū tàiyáng, wǒmen cái qù 'We won't go unless it's sunny tomorrow' (*chū tàiyáng* 'to be sunny' Lit. 'come out excessive' *yáng*).

Chúfēi yǒu rén bāngmáng, wǒ cái zuò de wán 'I can't finish (it) unless somebody helps (me)' or 'I can only finish (it) if somebody helps me'.

8 More on the nominalizer *de*

From 5.12 we see that *de* placed after a pronoun or adjective makes it into a noun. Likewise if *de* is placed after a verb-object the whole phrase becomes nominal:

<i>Huàn qián de</i>	'money changer' (person who changes money)
(<i>rén</i> 'understood')	
<i>Zuò fàn de</i>	'cook' (person who makes food)
<i>Hē jiǔ de</i>	'drinker' (person who drinks alcohol)
<i>Jiāo shū de</i>	'teacher' (person who teaches books)
<i>Kāi chē de</i>	'driver' (person who drives vehicles)

i Waiting! More waiting! And yet more waiting!

A lot of time is spent in the big cities in China just waiting. Waiting to attract the attention of the shop assistant, waiting (not queuing note, although it is getting better) to buy tickets, waiting for one's number to come up at the bank (roughly four people check each transaction). This activity (waiting) ties in with my 3 Ps (see Chapter 16) but don't

always hope to be rewarded – the 3 Ms (see Chapter 14) sometimes prevail. Keep trying, or rather keep waiting!

Change money?

It is no longer the case that ordinary foreigners have to conduct all their money matters through the Bank of China. It is now perfectly possible to hold accounts and to change traveller's cheques and so on at other banks as well.

Since US dollars are now readily available and accessible to many Chinese from banks in China, the black market in them has shrunk considerably. A black market doubtless still exists in some parts of China but it is totally illegal and you can get badly burnt.

Exercise 20.2

Using the text, say whether the following statements are true or false.

- 1 Fánshì wàiguórén cún qián, qǔ qián, huàn qián dōu yào tōngguò Zhōngguó Yínháng.
- 2 Zài Zhōngguó, huóqī cúnkuǎn hé dìngqī cúnkuǎn lìlǜ yíyàng.
- 3 Dìngqī cúnkuǎn yǒu bù tóng shíjiān de.
- 4 Cún de shíjiān yuè cháng, lìxī yuè gāo.
- 5 Zài Zhōngguó bù néng kāi yí ge wàibì zhànghù.
- 6 Bǎ lǚxíng zhīpiào huàn chéng wàihuìquàn fēi zài Zhōngguó Yínháng bànlǐ bùkě.
- 7 Dà chéngshì de Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn méi yǒu Zhōngguó Yínháng de diǎnr.
- 8 Huàn qián de shíhou bù tóng de dìfāng yǒu bù tóng de páijià.
- 9 Wàihuì duìhuàn zhèngmíng diū le, chūjìng de shíhou jiù bù néng bǎ shèng xiàlai de rénmínbì zài huàn chéng wàihuì.
- 10 Huàn qián de shíhou zuìhǎo bǎ hùzhào dài qu.
- 11 Zài Zhōngguó zhǐ yǒu yì zhǒng huàn qián de bànfǎ (method).

Exercise 20.3

Put the following sentences into characters and then translate them into colloquial English. The relevant grammar points in the sentence are printed in bold.

- 1 Fánshì Zhōngguó rén dōu xǐhuan chī Zhōngguó cài.
- 2 Fánshì zài Zhōngguó Yínháng huàn qián, páijià dōu yíyàng.
- 3 Huóqī cúnkuǎn hé dìngqī cúnkuǎn lìxīlǜ bù tóng.

- 4 Wǒ jīntiān fēi bǎ lǚxíng zhīpiào huàn chéng měiyuán bùkě.
 5 Qù guówài, fēi dài hùzhào bùkě, fǒuzé bù néng chūjìng.
 6 Lìshìshàng Yàzhōu (亚洲 'Asia') hé Fēizhōu (非洲 'Africa')
 hěn bù yíyàng.
 7 Tā de diànhuà hàomǎ hái jìde ma? Qiānwàn bié wàng le
 míngtiān gěi tā dǎ diànhuà.
 8 Ōuzhōu guójiā (国家 'country') zhèngzhìshàng dàtóng-
 xiǎoyì.
 9 Bùguǎn nǐ qiān le zì méi you, wǒ dōu yào kàn hùzhào.
 10 Bùguǎn yíngyèyuán diǎn le jǐ cì qián, tā yě yào diǎn yí cì.
 11 Nǐ de yìsi shì chūfēi pèng dào tā cái rènshirènsi, duì bu
 dui?
 12 Chūfēi yǒu guīdìng, wǒ cái zhèyàng bàn.

Exercise 20.4

Translate the following sentences into *pinyin* and then into Chinese characters:

- 1 'I've caused you a lot of trouble today'. *Yíngyèyuán*: 'Not at all, please come back tomorrow'.
- 2 She originally (本来 *běnlái*) wanted to go to the bank and change money today but she's forgotten to bring the traveller's cheques.
- 3 'What do you suspect him of?' 'I don't know, but I don't like the way he looks.' (样子 *yàngzi*.)
- 4 The rate of interest (from) a deposit account (use 的) is much higher than that (from) a current account.
- 5 Those who drive shouldn't drink. (Use v-o construction.)

21

traveller's notes

旅途见闻 *lǚtú jiànwén*

In this chapter you will learn

- how to express two actions going on simultaneously
- about Chinese proverbs
- about abbreviations in Chinese
- about similarities and dissimilarities
- how to express the passive
- when to use *chuān* and when to use *dài* for 'to wear'
- about *yīn* and *yáng*

▶ 在中国旅行可以了解中国人生活的各个方面，比如说中国人放假、出差等情况。

王永寿和史爱理正在杭州玩儿，坐在世界闻名的西湖旁边儿，一边吃着三明治，一边聊天儿。

史 来杭州旅行的可真多呀!

王 可不是吗! 没想到中国旅游事业发展得那么快。

史 你知道吗? 中国有一句俗话: ‘上有天堂, 下有苏、杭’, 所以来杭州找人间乐园的人总是很多!

王 那倒是, 你注意了没有? 中国人喜欢照相。

史 是的。他们的照相机有老式的, 也有新式的。‘佳能’、‘尼康’等日本货好象特别受欢迎。听说照相机也是可以租的。

王 对了, 但是凡是有游客的地方都有职业照相的。

史 中国人还有一点不太象我们, 他们很喜欢合伙儿出去玩儿, 或者是同学或者是同事或者是同乡。(说着就有一个戴着太阳镜的年轻小伙子走过来)。

张锡群 (坐下就问) 你们是哪国人? 是来杭州玩儿的吗?

史 是的, 我们是英国人。你是本地人吗?

张锡群 不是, 我是苏州人, 来杭州办一点事。

王 苏州地方不错, 有人叫它中国的威尼斯。也有人说‘苏州出美人’。

(他正在说话的时候有一个小孩儿拉着他妈妈的手指着王永寿和史爱理大声喊着‘老外老外!’)

史 (笑着说) ‘老外’听起来还是有一种亲密的感觉, 但是听到什么‘洋鬼子’、‘高鼻子’, 心里就有一点不自在。

张锡群 这些称呼平常并没有什么坏的意思, 主要是因为一些中国人没有跟外国人接触过, 所以第一次碰到觉得十分新鲜。他们不懂这样称呼很不礼貌。你们听过这句话吗? ‘天不怕, 地不怕, 就怕洋鬼子说中国话!’

王 没听说过, 真好玩儿! 我想问你一个问题, 可以吗?

张锡群 当然可以。什么问题?

王 你觉得中国人有种族偏见吗?

张锡群 这怎么说呢? 我们受过教育的人, 中国人也好, 外国人也好, 一般来说, 都不认为自己有什么偏见, 但是坦率地说, 下意识肯定还是会有一点点的。

王 一点也不错。咱们应该承认是有偏见的, 要不很容易‘自欺欺人’。承认错误等于改了一半儿了。

张锡群 太对了, 我完全同意。

Zài Zhōngguó lǚxíng kěyǐ liǎojiě Zhōngguó rén shēnghuó de gègè fāngmiàn, bǐrú shuō Zhōngguó rén fàng jià, chū chāi děng qíngkuàng. Wáng Yǒngshòu hé Shǐ Àilǐ zhèngzài Hángzhōu wánr, zuò zài shìjiè wénmíng de Xīhú pángbianr, yìbiān chīzhe sǎnmíngzhì, yìbiān liáo tiānr.

- Shī** *Lái Hángzhōu lǚyóu de kě zhēn duō ya!*
- Wáng** *Kěbúshì ma! Méi xiǎng dào Zhōngguó lǚyóu shìyè fāzhǎn de nàme kuài.*
- Shī** *Nǐ zhīdao ma? Zhōngguó yǒu yí jù sùhuà: 'Shàng yǒu tiāntáng, xià yǒu Sū, Háng', suǒyǐ lái Hángzhōu zhǎo rénjiān lèyuán de rén zǒngshì hěn duō!*
- Wáng** *Nà dàoshì. Nǐ zhùyì le méi you: Zhōngguó rén xǐhuan zhào xiàng.*
- Shī** *Shì de. Tāmen de zhàoxiàngjī yǒu lǎoshì de, yě yǒu xīnshì de. 'Jiānéng', 'Níkāng' děng Riběn huò hǎoxiàng tèbié shòu huānyíng. Tīngshuō zhàoxiàngjī yě shì kěyǐ zū de.*
- Wáng** *Duile, dànshì fánshì yǒu yóukè de dìfang dōu yǒu zhíyè zhàoxiàng de.*
- Shī** *Zhōngguó rén hái yǒu yìdiǎn bú tài xiàng wǒmen, tāmen hěn xǐhuan héhuǒr chū qu wánr huòzhě shì tóngxué huòzhě shì tóngshì huòzhě shì tóngxiāng!*
(Shuōzhe jiù yǒu yí ge dàizhe tàiyángjìng de niánqīng xiǎohuǒzi zǒu guòlai)
- Zhāng Xīqún** *(zuò xià jiù wèn) Nǐmen shì nǎ guó rén? Shì lái Hángzhōu wánr de ma?*
- Shī** *Shì de. Wǒmen shì Yīngguó rén. Nǐ shì běndìrén ma?*
- Zhāng Xīqún** *Bú shì, wǒ shì Sūzhōu rén, lái Hángzhōu bàn yìdiǎn shì.*
- Wáng** *Sūzhōu dìfang búcuò, yǒu rén jiào tā Zhōngguó de Wēinísī. Yě yǒu rén shuō 'Sūzhōu chū měirén'. . . . (Tā zhèngzài shuō huà de shíhou yǒu yí ge xiǎoháir lāzhe tā māma de shǒu zhǐzhe Wáng Yǒngshòu hé Shī Àilǐ dà shēng hǎnzhe 'Lǎowài, lǎowài!')*
- Shī** *(xiàozhe shuō) 'Lǎowài' tīng qǐlai hái shì yǒu yì zhǒng qīnmì de gǎnjué, dànshì tīng dào shénme 'yángguǐzi', 'gāo bízi', xīnlǐ jiù yǒu yìdiǎn bú zìzài.*
- Zhāng Xīqún** *Zhè xiē chēnghū jīngcháng bìng méi yǒu shénme huài de yìsi, zhǔyào shì yīnwei yìxiē Zhōngguó rén méi yǒu gēn wàiguó rén jiēchùguo suǒyǐ dì yí cì pèng dào juéde shífēn xīnxiān. Tāmen bù dǒng zhèyàng chēnghū hěn bù lǐmào. Nǐmen tīngguo zhè jù huà ma? 'Tiān bú pà, dì bú pà, jiù pà yángguǐzi shuō Zhōngguó huà'!*
- Wáng** *Méi tīngshuōguo, zhēn hǎo wánr! Wǒ xiǎng wèn nǐ yì ge wèntí, kěyǐ ma?*
- Zhāng Xīqún** *Dāngrán kěyǐ. Shénme wèntí?*
- Wáng** *Nǐ juéde Zhōngguó rén yǒu zhǒngzú piānjiàn ma?*

- Zhāng Xīqún** Zhè zěnmē shuō ne? Wǒmēn shòuguó jiàoyù de rén, Zhōngguó rén yě hǎo, wàiguó rén yě hǎo, yībān lái shuō, dōu bú rènwéi zìjǐ yǒu shénme piānjiàn, dànshi tǎnshuài de shuō, xià yìshí kěndìng hái shì huì yǒu yìdiǎn de.
- Wáng** Yìdiǎn yě bú cuò. Zánmen yīnggāi chéngrèn shì yǒu piānjiàn de, yàobù hěn róngyì 'zì qī qī rén'. Chéngrèn cuòwù dēngyú gǎi le yībàn(r) le.
- Zhāng Xīqún** Tài duìle, wǒ wánquán tóngyì.

旅途	lǚtú (n)	journey, trip
见闻	jiànwén (n)	what one sees and hears
了解	liǎojiě (v)	to find out, understand, know
各个	gègè (adj.)	each, every
放假	fàngjià (v-o)	have a holiday or vacation
出差	chūchāi (v-o)	be on a business trip
杭州	Hángzhōu (N)	Hangzhou
闻名	wénmíng (adj.)	well known, famous
西湖	Xīhú (N)	West Lake
旁边儿	pángbianr (n)	side
一边...一边...	yìbiān . . . yìbiān	see 21.1
三明治	sānmíngzhì (n)	sandwich
旅游	lǚyóu (n; v)	tourism, to tour
可	kě (adv.)	emphasizes tone of speaker
呀	yā (interj.)	indicating surprise
可不是吗?	kěbúshì ma?	exactly; that's just the way it is
事业	shìyè (n)	undertaking, cause
发展	fāzhǎn (v)	to develop
俗话 [句]	súhuà (n) [jù]	common saying, proverb
天堂	tiāntáng (n)	heaven, paradise
苏杭	Sū, Háng (N)	Suzhou and Hangzhou
人间乐园	rénjiān lèyuán (n)	paradise on earth
注意	zhùyì (v)	to pay attention to
照相机	zhàoxiàngjī (n) [tái]	camera
老式	lǎoshì (adj.)	old-fashioned
新式	xīnshì (adj.)	latest type, new-style
佳能	'Jiānéng' (N)	'Canon'

尼康	'Níkāng' (N)	'Nikon'
好象	hǎoxiàng (v)	to seem (see 21.4)
受	shòu (v)	to receive, be subjected to (see 21.6)
租	zū (v)	to rent, hire
职业	zhíyè (n)	occupation, profession
合伙 (儿)	héhuǒ(ér) (v-o)	form a company or partnership
同学	tóngxué (n)	fellow student
同乡	tóngxīāng (n)	person who was born in the same place as oneself
戴	dài (v)	to wear (see 21.8)
太阳镜 [副]	tàiyángjìng (n) [fù]	sunglasses
小伙子	xiǎohuǒzi (n)	young fellow
本地	běndì (n)	this locality
办事	bàn shì (v-o)	to arrange for something to be done
它	tā (p.s.)	it
威尼斯	Wēinísī (N)	Venice
美人	měirén (n)	beautiful woman
拉	lā (v)	to pull; to play (of stringed instruments)
手	shǒu (n)	hand
大声 (地)	dàshēng(de) (adv.)	loudly
喊	hǎn (v)	to shout, cry out
老外	lǎowài (n)	'old foreigner'
听起来	tīng qǐlai (v)	to sound, ring
亲密	qīnmì (adj.)	close, intimate
感觉	gǎnjué (n)	feeling, sense
洋鬼子	yángguǐzi (n)	foreign devil
高鼻子	gāo bízi (adj. + n)	big nose (Lit. tall nose)
心里	xīnlǐ	in the heart or mind
自在	zìzài (adj.)	at ease, comfortable
称呼	chēnghū (n; v)	form of address; to address
坏	huài (adj.)	bad; broken
主要	zhǔyào (adj.; adv.)	principal(ly)
觉得	juéde (v)	to feel
十分	shífēn (adv.)	extremely, very
新鲜	xīnxiān (adj.)	fresh
礼貌	lǐmào (adj.; n)	courteous; manners
话 [句]	huà (n) [jù]	remark, word(s)
怕	pà (v)	to fear, be afraid of

种族	zhǒngzú (n)	race
偏见	piānjiàn (n)	prejudice, bias
教育	jiàoyù (n; v)	education; to educate
A 也好 B 也好	A yě hǎo B yě hǎo	see 21.10
一般来说	yìbān lái shuō	generally speaking
认为	rènwéi (v)	to think, consider
坦率(地)	tǎnshuài(de)	frank(ly)
	(adj.; adv.)	
下意识	xiàyìshí (n)	subconsciousness
肯定	kěndìng (adj.; adv.; v)	definite(ly); affirm
咱们	zánmen (p.p.)	we (see 21.12)
自欺欺人	zì qī qī rén	deceive yourself as well as others
错误	cuòwù (n)	mistake, error
改	gǎi (v)	to alter, change, correct
完全	wánquán (adj.; adv.)	complete(ly)
同意	tóngyì (v)	to agree with

Grammar

1 Yìbiān V₁ . . . yìbiān V₂

When we want to indicate that two actions are going on simultaneously we can use the construction *yìbiān V₁, yìbiān V₂*:

Tāmen yìbiān kàn fēngjǐng, yìbiān liáo tiānr. 'They chatted whilst looking at the scenery.' *Yǒude rén yìbiān kàn diànshì, yìbiān chī fàn.* 'Some people have their meals watching the TV.'

Tāmen yìbiān chīzhe sǎnmíngzhì, yìbiān liáo tiānr. 'They chatted while eating (their) sandwiches.'

When expressing the continuous past or present, one of the two verbs may be followed by *zhe* to emphasize the continuity of that verb (see the example above).

2 Chinese proverbs

Chinese proverbs or idioms are known as *chéngyǔ* (成语) (*Lit.* become language) which are usually set phrases made up of four characters, although they are not necessarily limited to four, or *súhuà* (*Lit.* custom talk, i.e. 'old saying') which can be of any length. Both are an integral part of the Chinese language. All

Chinese of whatever educational level seem to know and use some *chéngyǔ* or *súhuà* and the higher their level the more they are likely to use them. *Chéngyǔ* have their origins in classical poetry which was traditionally regarded in China as the highest medium of artistic expression (as opposed to the novel which is translated as *xiǎoshuō* 'small talk'). Many Chinese are now unaware of which poem a particular *chéngyǔ* comes from and who it was written by, but this cultural inheritance gives weight and beauty to the modern language and a pithiness which it would otherwise lack. The text has some good examples of different proverbs:

Shàng yǒu tiāntáng, xià yǒu Sū, Háng

'Above there is heaven, below there is Suzhou and Hangzhou'

(i.e. these two places are regarded as being very beautiful).

Sūzhōu chū měirén

'Beautiful women come from Suzhou.'

Tiān bú pà, dì bú pà, jiù pà yángguǐzi shuō Zhōngguóhuà

'I'm not afraid of heaven or earth, only of foreign devils speaking Chinese'.

Zì qī qī rén

'Deceive oneself as well as others' (*Lit.* self cheat cheat people).

Four-character phrases are particularly concise and contain a wealth of meaning.

3 More on abbreviations

We looked briefly at abbreviations in 4.5 and can now take things a step further. As you can see in the proverb: *Shàng yǒu tiāntáng, xià yǒu Sū, Háng* the *zhōu* of *Sūzhōu* and *Hángzhōu* has been dropped, so that the famous balance that the Chinese love so much can be retained, giving four characters in each phrase. Try saying it with the two *zhōus* back in place and you'll see what I mean. Not the same effect at all, is it? The same thing is done when referring to two countries one after another.

Zhōng, Yīng liǎng guó

'the two countries China and the UK' (note the reversed word order in Chinese)

Sū, Ōu (Sūlián Ōuzhōu)

'the Soviet Union and Europe'.

This practice gives a much smoother rhythm to the sentence. How unpleasing to the ear it would be to say *Zhōngguó, Yīngguó liǎng guó*.

4 To resemble or not? (*xiàng* and *hǎoxiàng*)

Students often confuse *xiàng* (象) and *hǎoxiàng* (好象) and of course they do appear to be very similar. Memorize a model sentence for each to avoid confusion. *Xiàng* means 'to resemble' in the sense of 'to look like somebody or something' whereas *hǎoxiàng* means 'to seem' or 'to look like something has happened or is going to happen':

<i>Nǐ xiàng nǐ māma</i>	'You look like your mum'
<i>Tā bú xiàng wǒ</i>	'She's not like me'
<i>Nà ge xuésheng hǎoxiàng bìngle</i>	'It seems that student is ill'
<i>Hǎoxiàng yào xià yǔ</i>	'It looks like rain'.

'*Jiānéng*', '*Níkòng*' *děng* *Rìběnhuò hǎoxiàng hěn shòu huānyíng* 'Japanese makes such as "Canon" and "Nikon" seem very popular' (*Lit.* 'Canon', 'Nikon', etc. Japanese goods seem very receive welcome).

Zhōngguó rén hái yǒu yìdiǎn bú tài xiàng wǒmen.

'The Chinese have another way in which they are very different from us' (*Lit.* Chinese people still have one point not too resemble us).

Exercise 21.1

Choose *xiàng* or *hǎoxiàng* to fill the blank space in each sentence. You can rewrite the exercise in characters for extra practice. Check your answers using the Vocabularies at the back of the book. Please take this instruction as read for subsequent exercises.

- Xiǎohuǒzi* ____ *lái Hángzhōu bàn shì.*
- Wǒ jiějie hěn* ____ *wǒ bàba, wǒ bǐjiào* ____ *wǒ māma.*
- Fǎguó rén* (the French) ____ *bu* ____ *Yídàlì rén* (Italians)?
- Zhōngguó lǚyóu shìyè* ____ *fāzhǎn de hěn kuài.*
- Tā tài* ____ *nǐ, jīntiān* ____ *yòu bǎ zhàoxiàngjī wàng le!*

5 Balance with opposites

Balance in Chinese is very important. This sometimes makes for what looks at first sight to be a slightly wordy sentence as the verb is often repeated, but with further study you will appreciate this feeling of balance and harmony within the sentence. Compare the difference in feeling between *Lǎoshī jiāo Zhōngwén hé Yīngwén* and *Lǎoshī jiāo Zhōngwén yě jiāo Yīngwén*. Both are grammatically correct and mean 'The teacher teaches (both) Chinese and English' but the second somehow

feels better. This can be taken one step further in the use of opposites, or contrasting ideas within the same sentence:

Wǒ yǒu cháng de, yě yǒu duǎn de 'I have both long ones and short ones'

Tāmen de zhàoxiàngjī yǒu lǎoshì de, yě yǒu xīnshì de 'They have both modern and old-fashioned cameras' (*Lit.* as for their cameras have old-fashioned ones, also have new style ones).

6 Shòu and the passive

We have already seen in 8.10 that verbs in Chinese are neither active nor passive although some verbs of motion *appear* to be passive, even in Chinese, without changing their form or having anything added to them:

Bào mǐ lái le 'The newspaper has been bought' (by you, me, etc.)

However, the passive is usually expressed by using one of the following constructions:

'Receiving' etc.

To express the idea of 'receiving' or 'accepting', 'suffering' or 'being subjected to something' we use *shòu* (受) + verbal noun. For example:

<i>shòu fá</i> 受罚	'be punished' (suffer punishment)
<i>shòu hài</i> 受害	'be injured or killed' (suffer harm)
<i>shòu huānyíng</i> 受欢迎	'be welcomed' (receive welcome)
<i>shòu jiàoyù</i> 受教育	'be educated' (receive education)
<i>shòu jīng</i> 受惊	'be frightened' (suffer fright)
<i>shòu piàn</i> 受骗	'be fooled or taken in' (suffer cheat)
<i>shòu shāng</i> 受伤	'be wounded' (suffer wound)
<i>shòu tuō</i> 受托	'be commissioned' (accept entrust)
<i>shòu yǐngxiǎng</i> 受影响	'be influenced' (accept influence).

This group should be memorized before use and new ones added to your mental list only when you have read or heard them. Do not make up your own.

Construction

This construction follows the pattern:

Subject + *bèi* (被) + *agent* + verb (+ other elements)
 ràng (让)
 jiào (叫)

Wǒ bèi tā dǎ le 'I was hit by him/her'

Tā ràng gǒu yǎo le 'He was bitten by the dog'

Nǐ jiào xuésheng xuǎn le dāng xuésheng dài biǎo. 'You have been chosen by the students as student representative.'

If it is not clear who (or what) the agent is, an indefinite rén (人) may be used instead:

Dīng lǎoshī jiào } rén qǐng qù hē chá le.
ràng }
bèi }

'Mr Ding was invited (by somebody) to have tea'. Bèi, ràng and jiào can be used interchangeably but bèi is used more in the formal written language, ràng and jiào in the spoken.

NB When no agent is marked in the sentence, only bèi can be used: Wǒ bèi jǐnggào le 'I was warned'.

The negative adverb and/or auxiliary verb go before bèi, etc. Other adverbs such as zuótiān (昨天) and yǐjīng (已经) normally precede bèi (ràng, jiào) too.

Exercise 21.2

Select jiào, ràng, bèi or shòu to fill the blank spaces in the following sentences. Where there is more than one alternative, please give all of them.

- 1 Zhōngguó xuésheng zài 1989 nián liùyuè sān, sì hào ____ zhèngfǔ (government) hài le.
- 2 ____ jiàoyù de rén piānjiàn yīnggāi shǎo yíxiē.
- 3 Wǒ gào su (tell) tā bié zhèyàng zuò, suǒyǐ ____ tā mà (swear at, curse) le yíxià.
- 4 Kěxī, xiǎoháir dōu hěn róngyì ____ piàn.
- 5 Tā ____ mìmì jǐngchá (secret police) bǔ (arrest) le.

7 Tóng with everyone?

Tóng is an adjective with the meaning 'same', 'alike', 'similar' and has given rise to a whole series of useful expressions of which some of the more common are listed below:

tóngbāo (n) 同胞 (same parents)	'compatriot'
tóngháng (n) 同行 (same profession)	'person in the same profession'
tóngjū (v) 同居 (same live)	'cohabit'
tóngnián (n) 同年 (same year)	'of the same age'
tóngqíng (v) 同情 (same emotion)	'to sympathize with'

<i>tóngshí</i> (adv.) 同时 (same time)	'at the same time, in the meantime'
<i>tóngshì</i> (n) 同事 (same job)	'colleague'
<i>tóngxiāng</i> (n) 同乡 (same native place)	'person who comes from the same birth place'
<i>tóngxìng</i> (adj.; n) 同姓 (same surname)	'of the same surname'
<i>tóngxìngliàn</i> (adj.; n) 同性恋 (same sex love)	'homosexual'
<i>tóngxué</i> (n) 同学 (same study)	'fellow student'
<i>tóngyì</i> (v) 同意 (same meaning)	'to agree with'
<i>tóngzhì</i> (n) 同志 (same aspiration)	'comrade'

8 Dài or chuān?

Both these verbs mean 'to wear'. *Chuān* is the more widely used whereas *dài* is confined to items worn on extremities (but *not* shoes on feet!):

<i>dài màozi</i>	'wear a hat' (also 'to be labelled', e.g. counter-revolutionary)
<i>dài yǎnjìng</i>	'wear glasses'
<i>dài lǐngdài</i>	'wear a tie'
<i>dài shǒutào</i>	'wear gloves'
<i>dài shǒubiǎo</i>	'wear a watch'
<i>dài ěrhuan</i>	'wear ear-rings'
<i>dài jièzhǐ</i>	'wear a ring'
<i>dài shǒuzhuó</i>	'wear a bracelet'.

The only exceptions to this 'rule' appear to be 'shoes' and 'socks' which are *chuān*-ed rather than *dài*-ed. NB This *dài* 戴 is not the same *dài* as the verb meaning 'to take' or 'to bring' which is written 带.

Exercise 21.3

Choose *dài* or *chuān* to fill the blank space in each sentence.

- 1 *Yíqián zài jiàotángli* (in church) *fùniǚ yào* ____ *màozi* (hat), *xiànzài bù yídìng dài le*.
- 2 *Dōngtiān, tiānqì lěng* ____ *hěn hòu* (thick) *de shǒutào* (gloves) *hěn yǒu yòng*.
- 3 *Chū qu de shíhou, fēi* ____ *shang xié* (shoes) *bùkě yīnwei jiē* (street) *shàng tài zāng* (dirty) *le*.
- 4 *Yǒu yìxiē jùlèbù* (social club), *chúfēi nánrén* ____ *lǐngdài* (tie) *cái néng jìn qu*.

5 Nǐ jīntiān _____ de máoyī hěn hǎo kàn. Shì zìjǐ zhī (knit, weave) de ma?

9 Yīn and yáng please!

Any of you who have dabbled in Chinese philosophy or traditional Chinese medicine will have some idea of the concept of *yīn* and *yáng*. It all comes back to balance in the end! *Yīn* 阴, written with the moon radical, is the feminine or negative principle in nature whereas *yáng* 阳, written with the sun radical, is the masculine or positive principle. To the Chinese way of thinking each individual (and on a much larger scale the universe) is made up of *yīn* and *yáng* and only when the right balance is achieved between the two will s/he be in good mental and physical health. *Yīn* characteristics include sensitivity, softness, feelings centred around home, family and friends; *yáng* characteristics centre around work, competitiveness, assertion, hence the traditional division into male and female. This is a fascinating subject to explore which could give you a whole different outlook on life – go for it!

Vocabulary items associated with *yīn* and *yáng*:

yīnli 阴历	'lunar calendar' (the Chinese New Year or Spring Festival is based on the lunar calendar)
yángli 阳历	'solar calendar'
yīntiān 阴天	'cloudy, overcast'
tàiyáng 太阳	(excessive <i>yáng</i>) 'the sun'
tàiyángjìng 太阳镜	(excessive <i>yáng</i> mirror) 'sunglasses'
yángdiàn 阳电	'positive electricity'
yīndiàn 阴电	'negative electricity'.

In traditional Chinese medicine a deficiency of *yáng* (*yáng xū* 阳虚) is associated with a lack of vital energy; a deficiency of *yīn* (*yīn xū* 阴虚) with an insufficiency of body fluid, irritability, thirst and constipation being its symptoms.

These are but a few examples, for a much fuller list consult any medium-sized Chinese–English dictionary.

10 A yě hǎo, B yě hǎo

This is a useful expression, meaning 'no matter whether A or B, something is still the case':

Xuéxí Hànyǔ yě hǎo, xuéxí Ālābóyǔ yě hǎo, tā dōu hěn gǎn xìngqù (gǎn xìngqù 'be interested in something') 'He's very interested in studying both Chinese and Arabic'.

Zhōngguó rén yě hǎo, wàiguó rén yě hǎo, yìbān lái shuō, dōu bú rènwéi zìjǐ yǒu shénme piānjiàn 'Generally speaking, neither Chinese nor foreigners think they have any prejudices'.

11 (*lián*) *yìdiǎn yě/dōu bù*

This construction shares some similarities with 9.10 iii, question words used to indicate inclusiveness or exclusiveness. The pattern here is: (*lián*) *yìdiǎn yě/dōu bù* + adjective/verb (*Lit.* even little bit also not adj./v), (*lián*) *yìdiǎn yě bú cuò* 'absolutely right', *Wǒ (lián) yìdiǎn yě bù tóngyì* 'I don't agree at all', 'I disagree entirely'.

If the action took place in the past then *méi* is used instead of *bù*: *Zhè běn xiǎoshuō tā (lián) yìdiǎn yě méi kàn* 'He hasn't read a word of this novel'. The *yìdiǎn* may be replaced by such expressions as *yì fēn zhōng* ('one minute') *yì fēn qián* ('one cent/penny'), any expression indeed consisting of *yī* (one) MW + noun:

Jiějie yì fēn qián yě méi huā 'My (elder) sister didn't spend any money at all'

Kāi huì de shíhou, wǒ de tóngshì yí jù huà yě bù shuō 'My colleague never says a word at meetings' (*kāi huì* v-o 'hold a meeting').

In such cases the construction can also be used in the affirmative, i.e. without *bù* in which case *lián* is normally retained.

Tā lián xìn dōu kàn le 'She even read the letter'.

Wèile dádào (达到 'achieve, reach') *tāmen de mùbiāo* (aim), *lǐngdǎo lián zìjǐ de rénmin dōu huì xīshēng* (sacrifice). 'In order to achieve their objective, leaders will even sacrifice their own people'.

12 *Zánmen* and *wǒmen*

Both these personal pronouns mean 'we' but *zánmen* specifically includes both the speaker and the person or persons spoken to, so if you want to make this point use *zánmen*. You will find several examples of *zánmen* in the texts of this chapter and Chapter 22.

13 False friends?

As I have already tried to indicate in 21.7, *tóngqíng* 'to sympathize with' and *tóngyì* 'to agree with' already contain the idea of 'with' in the verb and so there is no need to add anything else. This means that the direct object follows on directly after the verb:

Wǒ tóngyì nǐ de yìjiàn 'I agree with your opinion'
Tóngqíng tā méi yǒu yòng 'There's no point in sympathizing with him'.

By the way, 'wear one's hair long' does not use *chuān* or *dài* as the verb but *liú* 留 'let grow'.

i Doing your own thing?

In Chinese society, particularly since Liberation, the emphasis has been on the collective, not on the individual, although the advent of the responsibility system *zérènzhì* (责任制) the open-door policy and the economic reforms of the 1980s have led to more people thinking for themselves and making their own decisions about their future. The Democratic Movement *mínzhǔ yùndòng* (民主运动) of 1989 has also to be seen in this light. Nevertheless, the general trend is still for everyone to know everyone else's business. The ever resourceful Chinese have devised various methods of coping with this social phenomenon, one of which is the use of the term *bàn shì* (办事) 'to go and get something done'. When asked why you are late for work or why you are leaving early or why you happen to be in a particular place, the answers might be, respectively:

Duìbuqǐ, lái wǎn le, wǒ bàn le yìdiǎn shì.
Wǒ yào qù bàn yìdiǎn shì.
Wǒ lái bàn yìdiǎn shì.

Curiously enough, people rarely ask what the *shì* is. I suspect everybody needs to use this let-out clause from time to time and therefore respects other people's right to use it too.

Foreign devils and 'old' foreigners

Non-Chinese used to be classified as 'devils' *guǐ(zi)* 鬼(子) which is generally regarded as a term of abuse in China, *guǐ* traditionally being regarded as unhappy spirits who have to be placated in some way by those still on earth. In Imperial times Westerners were called *yángguǐzi* 'devils from across the sea' or 'foreign devils', while the

Japanese were called *Riběn guī(zì)*. Mr Qian's eldest son in Lu Xun's famous novel *The True Story of Ah Q* is called Imitation Foreign Devil *Jiǎ yángguīzì* because he came back from Japan with straight legs, i.e. he walked differently and had had his pigtail cut off. I have not heard the term *yángguīzì* for many years but I can't say the same for the term involving the Japanese who have a more recent unhappy history with China. Another expression still in use to refer to caucasian non-Chinese is *gāo bízi* 'tall noses'. Some Chinese might cite their noses not being sufficiently 'tall', *bízi bú gòu gāo* as a reason for not being able to enjoy certain privileges accorded to foreigners – funny, but not without irony you might say. We have discussed the use of *lǎo* 'old' and *xiǎo* 'young' in 5.10 and it is in this light that I have never found the term *lǎowài* offensive. Children and adolescents use it most, but it has always seemed to me to express active curiosity rather than any animosity. *Wài* is, of course, an abbreviation for *wàiguórén* 'foreigner'.

Exercise 21.4

Answer the following questions based on the text: Work in *pinyin* or characters.

- 1 *Zài Zhōngguó lǚxíng kěyǐ liǎojiě shénme ne?*
- 2 *Wáng Yǒngshòu hé Shǐ Àilǐ zài shénme dìfang?*
- 3 *Tāmen yìbiān chīzhe sānmíngzhì, yìbiān zuò shénme?*
- 4 *Zhōngguó rén xǐhuan bu xǐhuan zhào xiàng? Tāmen de zhào xiàng jī zěnmeyàng?*
- 5 *Riběn zhào xiàng jī shòu huānyíng ma?*
- 6 *Zhíyè zhào xiàng de duō bu duō?*
- 7 *Zhōngguó rén xǐhuan yí ge rén chū qu wánr ma?*
- 8 *Zhāng Xīqún shì shénme dìfang rén?*
- 9 *Shǐ Àilǐ tīng dào yángguīzì, gāo bízi zhè yàng de chēnghū tā xīnlǐ gāoxíng bu gāoxíng?*
- 10 *Wǒmen shòuguo jiàoyù de rén yě yǒu zhǒngzú piānjiàn ma?*
- 11 *Wáng Yǒngshòu tóngyì bu tóngyì Zhāng Xīqún de shuōfǎ (way of saying things)?*
- 12 *Wǒmen wèi shénme yào chéngrèn cuòwù ne?*

Exercise 21.5

Translate the following passages into colloquial English:

- 1 *Zài yǒuxiē fāngmiàn Zhōngguó rén hé wàiguó rén dàtóng-xiǎoyì, dōu xǐhuan chū qu wánr, zhǎo rénjiān lèyuán! Shéi bú yuànyì zhù de hǎo, chuān de hǎo, chī de hǎo ne? Zhōngguó rén yě bú liúwài (exception). Yìqián zài Zhōngguó lǚyóu de Zhōngguó rén hěn shǎo, xiànzài yì nián bǐ yì nián duō le.*

在有些方面中国人和外国人大同小异，都喜欢出去玩儿，找人间乐园！谁不愿意住得好，穿得好，吃得好呢？中国人也不是什么例外。以前在中国旅游的中国人很少，现在一年比一年多。

- 2 *Liǎojiě língwài yí ge mínzú (nation) hěn bù róngyì, lián liǎojiě zìjǐ de mínzú yě bù róngyì. Zhōngguó mínzú shì ge gǔlǎo (ancient) de mínzú. Tā de lìshǐ, wénhuà (culture) gēn wǒmen de hěn bù yíyàng, gèng bú bì shuō tā de wénzì (script) ne! Xué qǐ Zhōngwén lái bú dàn (not only) hěn yǒu yìsi érqiě (but also) duì wǒmen gèrén (individual) hěn yǒu yòng.*

了解另外一个民族很不容易，连了解自己的民族也不容易。中华民族是个古老的民族。它的历史、文化跟我们的很不一样，更不必说它的文字呢！学起中文来不但很有意思而且对我们个人很有用。

Exercise 21.6

Translate the following sentences into *pinyin* and then into Chinese characters:

- 1 Let's (use *zánmen*) talk about education whilst watching the sunset.
- 2 'Deceiving oneself as well as others' is a proverb well worth paying attention to.
- 3 Because of the Hong Kong (香港 *Xiānggǎng*) question, relations between Britain and China have become very complex (复杂 *fùzá*).
- 4 He is my colleague so of course that influences my opinion (意见 *yìjiàn*). (Use the passive.)
- 5 You haven't had a single day's holiday this year, so no wonder you're so tired.
- 6 She hasn't even eaten a sandwich today, so how come she's not starving?

22

farewell to all that!

In this chapter you will learn

- how to make a toast
- how to give presents and make appropriate remarks on receiving them
- about exclamations
- about the Chinese zodiac
- more about Chinese proverbs
- about classical Chinese poetry

▶ Mr King and Miss Scurfield are preparing to return to the UK, the former after teaching one year at Beida, the latter after completing her compulsory year of study abroad. The Lis have invited them for a farewell dinner.

王永寿和史爱理打算回英国。前者在北大教了一年书，后者在中国学了一年必修课程。李先生和夫人为他们饯行。

李 欢迎，欢迎。请进。

李太太 外面冷吗？

史 有一点。风很大，我们是顶着风骑车来的，真费劲儿。

王 这是我们的一点心意（给李太太几个罐头和一些水果）。

李 你们太客气了，又让你们破费。

史 没什么，一点小意思吧。

李 那就谢谢你们了。不过，好朋友之间是不讲客气的。

李太太 别老站在外面厅里，请屋里坐，暖暖和和。

李 喝茶还是喝咖啡？

王 还是喝茶吧。

李太太 唉，爱理，你要回国了，今天可算是‘最后的晚餐’了，多遗憾哪！

史 别这么说，听了，心里不是滋味。

李太太 东西收拾好了没有？

史 差不多都收拾好了。

李太太 你们需要帮忙，尽管说吧，千万别客气。

史 我不会客气，不过真的没什么事儿。大部分书已经寄走了，邮费挺贵的，但是不寄不行。

李 行李会不会超重？

史 一般超重两、三公斤没什么关系，我打算把一些重的东西放在手提包里。象磁带什么的，我已经分给朋友了。贝多芬、莫扎特等古典音乐磁带就送给你们吧。

李 好极了！谢谢你。（转向王永寿）永寿，你教书教了一年了，有什么感想呢？听说有一点儿想留在中国是吗？

王 这叫做‘流连忘返’，但是最近父母身体不怎么样，想回去看一看再说。啊——一年过得真快，‘光阴似箭，日月如梭’！

李 你真是地地道道的中国通，跟中国人打成一片。难怪你的学生那么喜欢你，又认真又能干，又富于幽默感。爱理，你也舍不得走，是不是？

史 是的。今年收获很大，可惜不能多留。

李 你可算是‘满载而归’了！

史 也可以这么说。

李太太 来吃饭吧。饺子包好了。正在煮。先喝酒吧，这儿有冷盘。文华，把酒打开吧！

- 李 这瓶酒不错，是白葡萄酒，合资企业的产品。中国酒一般是甜的，但是我们知道你们不太喜欢喝甜的。好，干杯！祝你们一路平安，早日回来！
- 史 祝你们身体健康，万事如意！
- 李 咱们来照几张相吧。不过，等饺子来了再照，更有中国味道。啊，饺子来了！
- 王 你有闪光灯吗？
- 李 有。准备好了吗？笑一笑！哦，我忘了把镜头盖打开了。
- 李太太 你这个人太糊涂，浪费人的表情，快一点儿吧！
- 王 我也来照几张，洗好了就给你们寄来。有没有我们在英国的地址？
- 李 没有。
- 王 我给你们写下来，爱理，有笔吗？我的圆珠笔坏了。
- 史 有，给你。李太太，你的饺子真好吃，下一次一定要教我怎么包。
- 李太太 好吧，欢迎你尽早回来……酱油和醋都在这儿。
- 史 谢谢你。我放一点酱油。我这个人绝对不会吃醋的，哈哈！
- 李太太 永寿，你看，你要多留一年，一点问题都没有！
- 王 我比爱理安静，稳定。她朋友满天下，要有一个人吃醋的话，肯定是我！
- 史 胡说 my dear！你的多少女生跟我说你这个人真帅！
- 李 来，再喝一杯。祝咱们之间的友谊万古长存！干杯！
- 王 李老师，下个星期五是你的生日，可惜那个时候我们已经离开中国了，所以我们现在要再敬你一杯，提前祝你‘寿比南山，福如东海’！我们还给你准备了一点小东西。
- 李 那怎么行？来的时候已经送东西了，怎么又送了？
- 史 那是给你们两个人的，这是生日礼物。希望你能为虎年添点虎气！
- 李 你们实在太客气了。
- 李太太 爱理，你怎么了？别哭了，‘后会有期’，毕业以后再来吧。
- 史 别管我。没事儿。我是一个伤感主义者！跟朋友告别的时候，总会想起‘相见时难别亦难’这句话来。
- 李太太 那倒是。你们‘不远万里而来’，确实不容易。但是你们来中国的机会还是会很多的。
- 李 等你们再来，我们开一个联欢会，怎么样？为了明、后年我们再相会，来，再干一杯！
- 李太太 这次不能不回去，爱理，你还要读一年书。但是以后机会多得很。
- 李 飞机几点钟起飞？
- 王 下午四点四十。应该三点钟到。

- 李 我们去送送你们吧。
 史 不用了，机场太远了，太不方便了。今天晚上就算告别了吧。要不，我受不了，还要告一次别！
 李 看情况吧。如果能早一点儿下课，我们一定去。好，不谈这个了。再干最后一杯吧。
 李太太 我不行了，再喝，我就要醉了！你们看，脸都红了！
 李 没关系，你不是开车的！来，为了大家幸福、快乐，干杯！
 李太太、
 史、
 王 } 干杯！

Wáng Yǒngshòu hé Shǐ Àilǐ dǎsuàn huí Yīngguó. Qiánzhě zài Běidà jiāo le yì nián shù, hòuzhě zài Zhōngguó xué le yì nián bixiūkèchéng. Lǐ xiānsheng hé fūrén wèi tāmen jiànxíng.

- Lǐ Huānyíng, huānyíng. Qǐng jìn.
 Lǐ (t) Wàimiàn lěng ma?
 Shǐ Yǒu yidiǎn. Fēng hěn dà, wǒmen shì dǐngzhe fēng qí chē lái de, zhēn fèijīnr.
 Wáng Zhè shì wǒmen de yidiǎn xīnyì. (Gěi Lǐ tàitai jǐ ge guàntóu hé yìxiē shuǐguǒ.)
 Lǐ Nǐmen tài kèqi le, yòu ràng nǐmen pòfèi.
 Shǐ Méi shénme, yidiǎn xiǎoyisi ba.
 Lǐ Nà jiù xièxie nǐmen le. Búguò, hǎo péngyou zhī jiān shì bu jiǎng kèqi de.
 Lǐ (t) Bié lǎo zhàn zài wàimian tīng lǐ, qǐng wǎlǐ zuò, nuǎnhuo nuǎnhuo.
 Lǐ Hē chá háishi hē kāfēi?
 Wáng Háishi hē chá ba.
 Lǐ (t) Ài, Àilǐ, nǐ yào huí guó le, jīntiān kě suàn shì 'zuihòu de wǎncān' le, duō yíhàn na!
 Shǐ Bié zhème shuō, tīng le, xīnlǐ bú shì zīwèi.
 Lǐ (t) Dōngxī shōushi hǎo le méi you?
 Shǐ Chàbuduō dōu shōushi hǎo le.
 Lǐ (t) Nǐmen xūyào bāngmáng, jīnguǎn shuō ba, qiānwàn bié kèqi.
 Shǐ Wǒ bú huì kèqi, búguò zhēnde méi shénme shìr. Dà bùfēn shū yǐjīng jì zǒu le, yóufèi tǐng guì de, dànshì bú jì bù xíng.
 Lǐ Xínglǐ huì bu huì chāozhòng?
 Shǐ Yíban chāozhòng liǎng, sān gōngjīn méi shénme guānxi. Wǒ dǎsuàn bǎ yìxiē zhòng de dōngxī fàng zài shǒutǎo lǐ. Xiàng cídài shénmede, wǒ yǐjīng fēn gěi péngyou le. Bèiduōfēn, Mòzhātè děng gǔdiǎn yīnyuè cídài jiù sòng gěi nǐmen ba.

- Lǐ** Hǎo jǐle! Xièxie nǐ. (Zhuǎn xiàng Wáng Yǒngshòu.) Yǒngshòu, nǐ jiāo shū jiāo le yì nián le, yǒu shénme gǎnxiǎng ne? Tingshuō yǒu yìdiǎnr xiǎng liú zài Zhōngguó shì ma?
- Wáng** Zhè jiàozuò 'liúlián wàng fǎn', dànshi zuijìn fùmǔ shēntǐ bù zěnmeyàng, xiǎng huí qu kànyikàn zài shuō. Ā— yì nián guò de zhēn kuài, 'guāngyīn sì jiàn, rìyuè rú suō'.
- Lǐ** Nǐ zhēn shì dìdìdàodào de Zhōngguótōng, gēn Zhōngguó-rén dǎchéng yípiàn. Nánguài nǐ de xuésheng nàme xǐhuan nǐ, yòu rènzhēn yòu nénggàn, yǒu fùyú yōumògǎn. Āilǐ, nǐ yě shèbude zǒu, shì bu shì?
- Shǐ** Shì de. Jīnnián shōuhuò hěn dà, kěxī bù néng duō liú.
- Lǐ** Nǐ kě suàn shì 'mǎn zài ér guī' le!
- Shǐ** Yě kěyǐ zhème shuō.
- Lǐ (t)** Lái chǐ fàn ba. Jiǎozi bāo hǎo le, zhèngzài zhǔ. Xiān hē jiǔ ba. Zhèr yǒu lěngpán. Wénhuá, bǎ jiǔ dǎkāi ba.
- Lǐ** Zhè píng jiǔ búcuò, shì bái pútáojiǔ, hézǐ qǐyè de chǎnpǐn. Zhōngguó jiǔ yìbān shì tián de, dànshi wǒmen zhīdao nǐmen bú tài xǐhuan hē tián de. Hǎo, gān bēi! Zhù nǐmen yǐlù píng'ān, zǎorì huí lai!
- Shǐ** Zhù nǐmen shēntǐ jiànkāng, wànshì rú yì!
- Lǐ** Zánmen lái zhào jǐ zhāng xiàng ba. Búguò děng jiǎozi lái le zài zhào, gèng yǒu Zhōngguó wèidao. Ā, jiǎozi lái le!
- Wáng** Nǐ yǒu shǎnguāngdēng ma?
- Lǐ** Yǒu. Zhǔnbèi hǎo le ma? Qǐng xiàoyìxiào! Ò, wǒ wàng le bǎ jìngtóugài dǎkāi le.
- Lǐ (t)** Nǐ zhè ge rén tài hútū, làngfèi rén de biǎoqíng, kuài yìdiǎnr ba!
- Wáng** Wǒ yě lái zhào jǐ zhāng. Xǐ hǎo le jiù gěi nǐmen jì lai. Yǒu méi yǒu wǒmen zài Yíngguó de dìzhǐ?
- Lǐ** Méi yǒu.
- Wáng** Wǒ gěi nǐmen xiě xiàlai. Āilǐ, yǒu bǐ ma? Wǒ de yuánzhūbǐ huài le.
- Shǐ** Yǒu, gěi nǐ. Lǐ tàitai, nǐ de jiǎozi zhēn hǎo chī, xià yí cì yíding yào jiāo wǒ zěnmè bāo.
- Lǐ (t)** Hǎo ba, huānyíng nǐ jǐnzǎo huí lai . . . jiàngyóu hé cù dōu zài zhèr.
- Shǐ** Xièxie nǐ. Wǒ fàng yìdiǎn jiàngyóu. Wǒ zhè ge rén shì juéduì bú huì chī cù de, hāhā!
- Lǐ (t)** Yǒngshòu, nǐ kàn, nǐ yào duō liú yì nián, yìdiǎn wèntí dōu méi yǒu!
- Wáng** Wǒ bǐ Āilǐ ānjìng, wěndìng. Tā péngyou mǎn tiānxià, yào yǒu yí ge rén chī cù de huà, kěndìng shì wǒ!
- Shǐ** Húshuō my dear! Nǐ de duōshao nǚshēng gēn wǒ shuō nǐ zhè ge rén zhēn shuài!

- Lǐ Lái, zài hē yì bēi. Zhù zánmen zhī jiān de yǒuyì wàngù chángcún! Gān bēi!
- Wáng Lǐ lǎoshī, xià ge xīngqīwǔ shì nǐ de shēngri, kěxī nà ge shíhou wǒmen yǐjīng líkāi Zhōngguó le, suǒyǐ wǒmen xiànzài yào zài jìng nǐ yì bēi, tíqián zhù nǐ 'Shòu bǐ Nánshān, fú rú Dōnghǎi!' Wǒmen hái gěi nǐ zhǔnbèi le yìdiǎn xiǎo dōngxī.
- Lǐ Nà zěnme xíng? Lái de shíhou yǐjīng sòng dōngxī le, zěnme yòu sòng le?
- Shǐ Nà shì gěi nǐmen liǎng ge rén de, zhè shì shēngri líwù. Xīwàng nǐ néng wèi hūnián tiān diǎn hǔqì!
- Lǐ Nǐmen shízài tài kèqì le.
- Lǐ (t) Àilǐ, nǐ zěnme le? Bié kū le, 'hòu huì yǒu qī', biè yè yǐhòu zài lái ba.
- Shǐ Bié guǎn wǒ. Méishìr. Wǒ shì yí ge shānggǎnzhǔyìzhě! Gēn péngyou gàobié de shíhou, zǒng huì xiǎng qǐ 'Xiāng jiàn shì nán, bié yì nán' zhè jù huà lai.
- Lǐ (t) Nà dào shì. Nǐmen 'bù yuǎn wàn lǐ ér lái', quèshí bù róngyì. Dànshì nǐmen lái Zhōngguó de jīhuì hái shì huì hěn duō de.
- Lǐ Děng nǐmen zài lái, wǒmen kāi yí ge liánhuānhuì, zěnmeyàng? Wèile míng、hòunián wǒmen zài xiānghuì, lái, zài gān yì bēi!
- Lǐ (t) Zhè cì bù néng bù huí qu, Àilǐ, nǐ hái yào dú yì nián shū. Dànshì yǐhòu jīhuì duō dehěn.
- Lǐ Fēijī jǐ diǎn zhōng qǐfēi?
- Wáng Xiàwǔ sì diǎn sishí . . . Yīnggāi sān diǎn zhōng dào.
- Lǐ Wǒmen qù sòngsong nǐmen ba.
- Shǐ Bú yòng le, jīchǎng tài yuǎn le, tài bù fāngbiàn le. Jīntiān wǎnshang jiù suàn gàobié le ba. Yàobù wǒ shòu bù liǎo, hái yào gào yí cì bié!
- Lǐ Kàn qíngkuàng ba. Rúguǒ néng zǎo yìdiǎnr xià kè, wǒmen yíding qù. Hǎo, bù tán zhè ge le. Zài gān zuìhòu yì bēi ba.
- Lǐ (t) Wǒ bù xíng le, zài hē, wǒ jiù yào zuì le! Nǐmen kàn, liǎn dǒu hóng le!
- Lǐ Méi guānxi, nǐ bú shì kāi chē de! Lái, wèile dàjiā xìngfú、kuàilè, gān bēi!
- Lǐ (t) }
Shǐ } Gān bēi!
Wáng }

打算	dǎsuàn (v)	to intend, plan
前者	qiánzhě (n)	the former
后者	hòuzhě (n)	the latter
必修课 (程)	bìxiūkè(chéng) (n)	obligatory or required course

夫人	fūrén (n)	Mrs; Madame (formal)
为	wèi (prep.)	for, for the sake of
钱行	jiànxíng (n)	give a farewell dinner
风	fēng (n)	wind
顶	dǐng (v)	to go against
骑	qí (v)	to ride (as of horse, bicycle)
费劲 (儿)	fèijìn(r) (adj.)	strenuous, energy consuming
心意	xīnyì (n)	kindly feelings, regard
水果	shuǐguǒ (n)	fruit
让	ràng (v)	to let, allow
破费	pòfèi (v-o)	to go to some expense
小意思	xiǎoyìsi (n)	small token, mere trifle
之间	zhī jiān	between, amongst
老	lǎo (adj.)	always
站	zhàn (v)	to stand; station, stop (bus etc)
屋里	wūlǐ (PW)	in the room
暖和	nuǎnhuo (adj.)	warm
算	suàn (v)	to regard as, count as
最后	zuìhòu (adj., adv.)	the last, finally
晚餐	wǎncān (n)	supper, dinner
多	duō	how
遗憾	yíhàn (v; n)	to regret, be a pity; regret
哪	na	particle showing mood
这么	zhème	so, this way, like this
滋味	zīwèi (n)	(good) taste, flavour
收拾	shōushi (v)	to pack, tidy up, put in order
差不多	chàbuduō (adv.)	almost, nearly
需要	xūyào (v; n)	to need, require; needs
不过	búguò (conj.)	but, however, only
邮费	yóufèi (n)	postage
行李	xínglǐ (n)	luggage, baggage
超重	chāozhòng (v-o)	overweight
手提包	shǒutíbāo (n)	bag, handbag
磁带	cídài (n)	tape
分	fēn (v)	to divide, distribute, distinguish
贝多芬	Bèiduōfēn (N)	Beethoven
莫扎特	Mòzhātè (N)	Mozart
古典	gǔdiǎn (adj.)	classical
音乐	yīnyuè (n)	music

送	sòng (v)	to give as a present; see somebody off
转向	zhuǎn (v)	to turn, transfer
感想	xiàng (prep.; v)	towards; to face
叫做	gǎnxiǎng (n)	reflections, thoughts
流连忘返	jiàozuò (v)	be called, be known as
	liúlián wàng fǎn	enjoy oneself so much as to forget to go home
最近	zuìjìn (adv.; adj.)	recently, nearest, latest
再说	zài shuō (v; conj.)	not tackle a problem until some other time; what's more
光阴似箭， 日月如梭	guāngyīn sì jiàn, rìyuè rú suō	time flies (see 22.5)
地道	dīdào (adj.)	genuine
中国通	Zhōngguótōng (n)	an old China hand, expert on China
打成一片	dǎchéng yípiàn (v-o)	to become one with, identify with
认真	rènzhēn (adj.)	conscientious
能干	nénggàn (adj.)	capable, competent
富于	fùyú (adj.)	full of
幽默感	yōumògǎn (n)	sense of humour
舍不得	shěbude (v)	be unwilling to part with, grudge
收获	shōuhuò (n)	gains, results, harvest
满载而归	mǎn zài ér guī	return with fruitful results
饺子	jiǎozi (n)	a kind of ravioli, dumpling
包	bāo (v)	to make (jiǎozi); to wrap; to include
煮	zhǔ (v)	to boil, cook
冷盘	lěngpán (n)	cold dish; hors d'oeuvres
打开	dǎkāi (v)	to open (up); switch on
瓶	píng (MW)	for bottles
白	bái (adj.)	white; blank
葡萄酒	pútáojiǔ (n)	wine
合资企业	hézī qǐyè (n)	joint venture
产品	chǎnpǐn (n)	product
甜	tián (adj.)	sweet
干杯	gān bēi (v-o)	drink a toast
一路平安	yílù píng'ān	Bon voyage, have a pleasant journey
早日	zǎorì (TW)	at an early date; soon
健康	jiànkāng (adj.)	healthy, sound

万事如意	wànshì rúyì	your heart's desire
味道	wèidao (n)	flavour, taste
闪光灯	shǎnguāngdēng (n)	flash (light)
笑	xiào (v)	to smile, laugh
哦	ò (inter.)	oh!
镜头盖	jìngtóugài (n)	lens cap
糊涂	hútu (adj.)	muddle-headed
浪费	làngfèi (v)	to waste, squander
表情	biǎoqing (n; v)	expression; to express one's feelings
(冲) 洗	(chōng)xǐ (v)	to develop (as of film); to wash
圆珠笔	yuánzhūbǐ (n)	ballpoint pen
尽早	jǐnzǎo (adv.)	as soon as possible, at the earliest possible date
醋	cù (n)	vinegar; jealousy (as in love affairs)
绝对	juéduì (adj.; adv.)	absolute(ly)
吃醋	chī cù (v-o)	to feel jealous
哈哈	hāhā (onom.)	haha
稳定	wěndìng (adj.; v)	stable, steady; to stabilize
满	mǎn (adj.; v)	full; to reach the limit, expire
天下	tiānxià (n)	land under heaven - the world or China
胡说	húshuō (n; v)	nonsense; to talk nonsense
女生	nǚshēng (n)	female student(s)
帅	shuài (adj. coll; adv.)	handsome; beautifully
友谊	yǒuyì (n)	friendship
万古长存	wàngǔ chángcún	last forever, be everlasting
生日	shēngrì (n)	birthday
离开	líkāi (v)	to leave
敬	jìng (v)	to propose (a toast), toast
提前	tíqián (v)	bring forward a date
寿比南山,	shòu bǐ Nánshān,	May you live as long
福如东海	fú rú Dōnghǎi	as the Southern Mountain and be as blessed as the Eastern Sea
礼物	lǐwù (n)	present, gift
虎年	hǔnián (n)	the year of the Tiger

虎气	hǔqì (n)	vigour (Lit. tiger energy)
实在	shízài (adv.; adj.)	really, honestly; true, real
怎么了	zěnmé le?	what's the matter?
哭	kū (v)	to weep, cry
后会有期	hòu huì yǒu qī	we'll meet again some day
毕业	bìyè (v)	to graduate
管	guǎn (v)	bother about; be in charge of
没事儿	meishìr	it's OK, it's nothing; have nothing planned
伤感主义者	shānggǎn zhūyìzhě (n)	sentimentalist
告别	gàobié (v-o)	to take leave of
想起来	xiǎng qǐlái (v)	to remember, call to mind
相见时难， 别亦难	xiāng jiàn shí nán, bié yì nán	meeting and parting are both difficult (see Chapter 22, p.255)
不远万里而来	bù yuǎn wàn lǐ ér lái	not considering 10 000 li too far to come
确实	quèshí (adv.; adj.)	really, indeed; true, certain
机会	jīhuì (n)	opportunity, chance
联欢会	liánhuānhuì (n)	get-together, party
明年	míngnián (TW)	next year
后年	hòunián (TW)	the year after next
相会	xiānghuì (v)	meet one another
多得很	duō dehěn (adj.)	very many
飞机 [架]	fēijī (n) [jià]	aeroplane
起飞	qǐfēi (v)	to take off (of aircraft)
不用	bú yòng (v)	need not
飞机场	fēijīchǎng (n)	airport
受不了	shòu bù liǎo (v)	be unable to bear or endure
醉	zuì (adj.)	drunk
脸	liǎn (n)	face
红	hóng (adj.)	red
开车的	kāi chē de (n)	a person who drives, driver
为了	wèile (prep.)	for the sake of, in order to
幸福	xìngfú (adj.; n)	enjoy good fortune, happy; well-being
快乐	kuàilè (adj.)	happy, joyful

1 Exclamations!

The Chinese language has an infinite variety of its own particular version of ahs, oohs and ohs but it is perhaps the modal particles which occur at the end of the sentence which are of particular interest. Some of these have been scattered throughout the various texts in this book. In this chapter, we have 哪 *na*, 呢 *ne* and the all-time favourite 吧 *ba*. Apart from the few guidelines you have been given, for instance that 呢 *ne* tends to appear with the question words *shénme*, *zěnmé*, *wèi shénme*, etc. and set-phrases such as *Nǐ zěnmé le?* you should rely on your 'feel' of the language as to whether a *ya*, a *na*, or a *ne*, etc. is needed. Chinese has a lot to do with feeling rather than specific rules so start with your exclamations and expressions of surprise. If you have the opportunity, listen to Chinese speakers and imitate them as far as possible. Failing that, just remember that such things are the icing on the cake rather than the cake itself.

2 Eating bitterness?

I have always teased Chinese friends about the emphasis that Chinese culture puts on food. Chinese people can talk for hours (and I mean hours) about the merits of various dishes, how to make them and how difficult (or expensive) it is to find such and such an ingredient. We can speculate endlessly on the reasons for this, which could vary from peasant poverty to magnificent Imperial banquets. Whatever the reason, it has left the Chinese language with a rich heritage based on eating. Note the following phrases which are just some of the ones in common usage:

吃醋	<i>chī cù</i> 'be jealous' (<i>Lit.</i> eat vinegar)
吃惊	<i>chī jīng</i> 'be shocked, amazed' (<i>Lit.</i> eat alarm)
吃苦	<i>chī kǔ</i> 'bear hardship' (<i>Lit.</i> eat bitterness)
吃亏	<i>chī kuī</i> 'stand to lose', 'come to grief', 'get the worst of it' (<i>Lit.</i> eat loss)
吃力	<i>chī lì</i> 'strenuous, difficult' (<i>Lit.</i> eat strength)
吃软不吃硬	<i>chī ruǎn bù chī yìng</i> 'be open to persuasion but not to coercion' (<i>Lit.</i> eat soft not eat hard)
吃闲饭	<i>chī xiánfàn</i> 'lead an idle life, be a sponger' (<i>Lit.</i> eat idle rice)
吃香	<i>chī xiāng</i> 'be popular' (<i>coll.</i>) (<i>Lit.</i> eat spice)
吃药	<i>chī yào</i> 'take medicine' (<i>Lit.</i> eat medicine).

i The Chinese zodiac

The existence of the **Ten Heavenly Stems** was mentioned in the vocabulary of Chapter 17, but not elaborated upon further. They are 甲 *jiǎ*, 乙 *yǐ*, 丙 *bǐng*, 丁 *dīng*, 戊 *wù*, 己 *jǐ*, 庚 *gēng*, 辛 *xīn*, 壬 *rén* and 癸 *guǐ* in that order, 甲 *jiǎ* being the first. The Ten Heavenly Stems also combine in pairs, each pair corresponding to each of the five elements used in traditional Chinese medicine, *viz.* wood, fire, earth, metal and water. Thus *jiǎ* and *yǐ* are associated with 木 *mù* 'wood', *bǐng* and *dīng* with 火 *huǒ* 'fire' and so on.

In addition to the Ten Heavenly Stems, there are also the **Twelve Earthly Branches**, each of which is associated with a different animal which occurs in 12 year cycles. Each of us is born in the lunar year of a particular animal. 1950 was the Year of the Tiger, therefore everyone born in 1950, 1962, 1974 and 1986 is a tiger. 1951 was the Year of the Rabbit so all those born in 1951, 1963, 1975 and 1987 are rabbits. Of course each Animal Year is said to possess certain characteristics and in the old days this played a role in deciding whether or not you were a suitable bride or bridegroom for somebody. Tiger women were thought of as being particularly difficult to handle! The order is as follows:

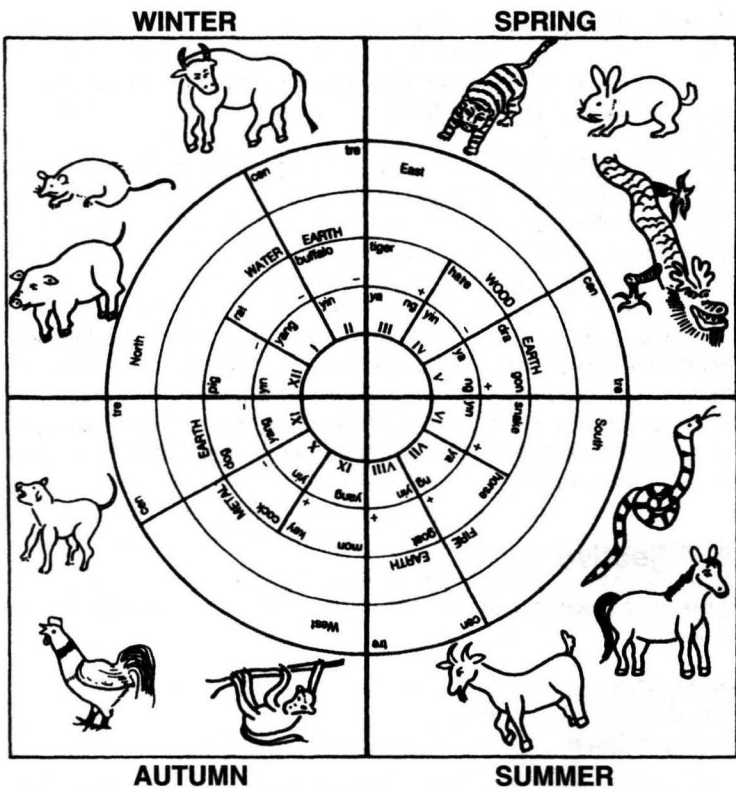
Earthly branches

- | | | |
|----|---|-------------|
| 1 | 子 | <i>zǐ</i> |
| 2 | 丑 | <i>chǒu</i> |
| 3 | 寅 | <i>yín</i> |
| 4 | 卯 | <i>mǎo</i> |
| 5 | 辰 | <i>chén</i> |
| 6 | 巳 | <i>sì</i> |
| 7 | 午 | <i>wǔ</i> |
| 8 | 未 | <i>wèi</i> |
| 9 | 申 | <i>shēn</i> |
| 10 | 酉 | <i>yǒu</i> |
| 11 | 戌 | <i>xū</i> |
| 12 | 亥 | <i>hài</i> |

Symbolical animals

- | | | |
|---|-------------|-------------|
| 鼠 | <i>shǔ</i> | rat |
| 牛 | <i>niú</i> | ox |
| 虎 | <i>hǔ</i> | tiger |
| 兔 | <i>tù</i> | rabbit/hare |
| 龙 | <i>lóng</i> | dragon |
| 蛇 | <i>shé</i> | snake |
| 马 | <i>mǎ</i> | horse |
| 羊 | <i>yáng</i> | ram |
| 猴 | <i>hóu</i> | monkey |
| 鸡 | <i>jī</i> | cockerel |
| 犬 | <i>quǎn</i> | dog |
| 猪 | <i>zhū</i> | pig |

Astrology books are now being produced combining the Chinese zodiac with our own Western one. A Tiger who is also a Scorpio probably presents quite a challenge wouldn't you say? What are you? (NB The Chinese have traditionally used the Ten Heavenly Stems and the Twelve Earthly Branches in a sequential order of two-character combinations to denote different years, months and days.)



the Chinese zodiac

3 Zhě as nominalizer

Zhě 者 used after an adjective or verb (or adjectival or verbal phrase) serves to nominalize it or make it into a noun phrase. This is considerably more stylish than merely adding *de rén* 的人 ('the person who...') or *de shì* 的事 ('the thing/matter which...') after the character(s) involved and is in keeping with the fact that modern Chinese has managed to retain elements of its classical past. Certain collocations have become virtually set phrases and a few are listed below:

<i>ruòzhě</i>	弱者	'the weak'
<i>qiángzhě</i>	强者	'the strong'
<i>qiánzhě</i>	前者	'the former'
<i>hòuzhě</i>	后者	'the latter'

- dúzhě* 读者 ‘reader’ (there is a popular newspaper column in some newspapers entitled *Dúzhě lái xìn* ‘Readers’ Letters’)
- xuézhě* 学者 ‘scholar’.

Note the much more formal register of the introduction to this chapter which uses terms such as *qiánzhě* and *hòuzhě*. *Zhě* is commonly used after 工作 *gōngzuò* ‘work’ to indicate a person engaged in the profession under discussion. It is also used to change an -ism (-*zhǔyì* 主义) into an -ist. Hence *shèhuì* ‘society’, *shèhuìzhǔyì* ‘socialism’ and *shèhuìzhǔyìzhě* ‘socialist’: *Mǎkèsī* ‘Marx’, *Mǎkèsīzhǔyì* ‘Marxism’ and *Mǎkèsīzhǔyìzhě* ‘Marxist’; *gòngchǎnzhǔyìzhě* ‘communist’ (Lit. together property-ism person); *fǎxīsīzhǔyìzhě* ‘fascist’. We have the word for ‘sentimentalist’ *shānggǎnzhǔyìzhě* in the text and it is also used when referring to gays and lesbians *tóngxìngliànzhě* (Lit. same sex love person).

4 Adjective + *dehěn*

This is a simple construction meaning ‘very much’ of the adjective:

- duō dehěn* ‘very many’
hǎo dehěn ‘very good’
yǒu yìsi dehěn ‘very interesting’.

It is different from *hěn duō* and *hěn hǎo* insofar as the *hěn* in the latter phrases does not really carry the force of ‘very’ (see 4.8.4) or is put there merely for balance.

5 More on proverbs (II)

To put proverbs in their historical context we are going to trace the origins of two of the proverbs that occur in this text.

- i *Guāngyīn sì jiàn, rìyuè rú suō*. A similar phrase *guāng liú sì jiàn* (time flows like (an) arrow) first appeared in a Tang poem by Wei Zhuang but it was the famous Song Dynasty (960–1279) poet Su Shi (also known as Su Dongpo) who used *guāngyīn sì jiàn* in one of his poems. The complete proverb *guāngyīn sì jiàn, rìyuè rú suō* occurred in Chapter 9 of the Ming dynasty novel *Xīyóujì* 西游记 translated variously as *Journey to the West* or *Monkey*, written by one Wu Cheng’en.

- ii *Bù yuǎn wàn lǐ ér lái*. An alternative version *bù yuǎn qiān lǐ ér lái* may sometimes be found but *wàn* (10 000) makes it sound more of a big thing than *qiān* (1000) so I have used the former rather than the latter. (NB *lǐ* 'half a kilometre'.) This phrase first appeared in one of the books of Mencius, the famous Chinese Confucian philosopher of the fourth century BC who believed in the intrinsic goodness of human nature.

To end on a really positive note, particularly appropriate for aspiring students of Chinese, there is *Yǒu zhìzhě shì jìng chéng* 'Where there's a will there's a way' (*Lit.* have aspiration person, matter finally achieve). This occurred in a chapter of the *Hànshū* 'A History of the Han Dynasty' (in 120 volumes) written by 班固 Ban Gu who died in AD 92. As you can see, Chinese history is still alive and well today if we know where to go and look for it.

i On Chinese poetry

To understand the Chinese, you also have to understand their poetry. People who regularly use poetry in their language also have poetry in their hearts.

Xiāng jiàn shí nán, bié yì nán quoted in the text comes from an untitled poem by Li Shangyin (812?–868). This line has come to symbolize in seven brief characters, the difficulties often involved in meeting someone and the pain involved in parting. (*Nán* means *kùnnán* 'difficult' in the first case, *nánkān* 'unbearable' in the second.)

Perhaps if I quote a poem written by Li Yu (937–978), the last emperor of the Southern Tang, you will get a taste of the beauty I am referring to. Li Yu was captured by the Song army and taken north to Kaifeng. This poem was written during his captivity, shortly before his death and laments his grievous loss and heavy heart.

无言独上西楼，
月如钩。
寂寞梧桐深院锁清秋。
剪不断，
理还乱，
是离愁，
别是一般滋味在心头。

Wú yán dú shàng Xīlóu
No word(s) alone climb West Tower

Yuè rú gōu.

moon like sickle

Jimò wútóng shēn yuàn suǒ qīng qiū.

Lonely wútóng dark (deep?) courtyard lock clear autumn

Jiǎn bú duàn,

cut not sever

Lǐ hái luàn,

reason still disorderly

Shì lí chóu

Is separation melancholy

Bié shì yìbān zīwèi zài xīntóu.

Parting is just like (bitter) taste in heart.

Even after more than 1000 years, the lines still rhyme, an incredible comment on the nature of the Chinese language. The visual impact of the characters is very important in poetry. *Chóu*, the character for 'sorrow' or 'melancholy' is made up of an autumn over a heart (愁), with all the symbolism which that conjures up.

The fact that classical Chinese poetry does not have a grammatical subject makes it seem so much more universal and heightens its effect. Let us look at the content of the poem more closely. Whoever it is, climbs the Western Tower, (the west – the setting sun, the end of one's life?) alone and in silence, the moon like a sickle overhead. (A new moon to heighten his grief, or the last sliver of a waning one?) The *wútóng* (it has a straight trunk of a beautiful shade of green and is said to be the only tree on which the phoenix will rest) is 'lonely' and the clear autumn is as though locked into the dark, deep courtyard. There is a great deal to be got from this line if you only think about it carefully.

The next four lines are truly famous and speak of the pain of parting and separation. Had you ever thought of this pain as being like a skein of wool which refuses to be disentangled and cannot be cut off cleanly? Or of the word 'parting' as leaving 'a taste in the heart'? These four lines are known to millions of Chinese and written as they were, by an emperor, prisoner in a foreign land, who had lost everything and was soon to die (forced to take poison by his captors), they take on a particular poignancy. May they say something to you as they have done to me over a period of many years.

Chinese language and culture are rich treasure-troves for us to explore. My hope is that, through this book, as well as learning some useful Chinese, you have been able to catch glimpses of them and are eager for more.

Exercise 22.1

Answer the following questions based on the text.

- 1 Wáng xiānsheng hé Shǐ xiǎojié lái de shíhòu guā bu guā fēng?
 - 2 Wáng xiānsheng gěi Lǐ tài tai shénme xiǎo lǐwù?
 - 3 Shǐ Àilǐ juéde bǎ shū jì dào Yīngguó guì bu guì?
 - 4 Rúguǒ xínglǐ chāozhòng Shǐ Àilǐ dǎsuàn zěnme bàn?
 - 5 Wáng xiānsheng juéde tā zài Zhōngguó de yì nián guò de kuài bu kuài? Tā yòng shénme chéngyǔ lái miáoxiě zhè diǎn?
 - 6 Lǐ xiānsheng yòng shénme huà lái shuōmíng ('show, explain') Wáng Yǒngshòu hěn liǎojiě Zhōngguó rén?
 - 7 Shǐ Àilǐ zài Zhōngguó xué de zěnmeyàng? Nǐ zěnme zhīdao ne?
 - 8 Tāmen hē de jiǔ shì guóchǎn de ma?
 - 9 Lǐ xiānsheng wèi shénme kāishǐ zhào bu liǎo xiàng ne? (see Chapter 12, p.126 for liǎo)
 - 10 Wáng xiānsheng wèi shénme xiàng Shǐ Àilǐ yào bǐ? (xiàng Y yào X: 'to want X from Y')
 - 11 Chī jiǎozi de shíhòu kěyǐ fàng shénme?
 - 12 Wáng xiānsheng zěnme huì chī cù ne?
 - 13 Lǐ xiānsheng shénme shíhòu guò shēng rì? Nà ge shíhòu Wáng Yǒngshòu hé Shǐ Àilǐ dàgài ('probably') zài nǎr?
 - 14 Lǐ lǎoshī shǔ (属 'belong to') shénme ('animal sign')?
 - 15 Shǐ Àilǐ wèi shénme kǔ qilai ne?
 - 16 Lǐ xiānsheng dǎsuàn shénme shíhòu kāi yí ge liánhuānhuì?
 - 17 Tāmen fēiji shénme shíhòu qǐfēi? Tāmen yīnggāi jǐ diǎn zhōng dào jīchǎng?
 - 18 Shǐ Àilǐ wèi shénme bú ràng Lǐ xiānsheng hé Lǐ tài tai qù sòng tāmen ne?
 - 19 Lǐ tài tai zěnme zhèngmíng (证明 'prove') tā kuài yào zuì le?
 - 20 Lǐ xiānsheng wèi shénme shuō Lǐ tài tai duō hē yìdiǎn jiǔ méi yǒu guānxi?
- 1 王先生和史小姐来的时候刮不刮风?
 - 2 王先生给李太太什么小礼物?
 - 3 史爱理觉得把书寄到英国贵不贵?
 - 4 如果行李超重史爱理打算怎么办?
 - 5 王先生觉得他在中国的一年过得快不快? 他用什么成语来描写这点?
 - 6 李先生用什么话来说明王永寿很了解中国人?
 - 7 史爱理在中国学得怎么样? 你怎么知道呢?
 - 8 他们喝的酒是国产的吗?
 - 9 李先生为什么开始照不了相呢?
 - 10 王先生为什么向史爱理要笔?

- 11 吃饺子的时候可以放什么?
- 12 王先生怎么会吃醋呢?
- 13 李先生什么时候过生日? 那个时候王永寿和史爱理大概在哪儿?
- 14 李老师属什么?
- 15 史爱理为什么哭起来呢?
- 16 李先生打算什么时候开一个联欢会?
- 17 他们飞机什么时候起飞? 他们应该几点钟到机场?
- 18 史爱理为什么不让李先生和李太太去送他们呢?
- 19 李太太怎么证明她快要醉了?
- 20 李先生为什么说李太太多喝一点酒没有关系?

Exercise 22.2

Translate the text into colloquial English.

Exercise 22.3

Correct the following *bìngjù* ('sick sentences'). Give the correct version (This exercise is based on the grammar of Chapters 16-22.)

Běijīng cóng Tiānjīn hěn jìn → *Běijīng lí Tiānjīn hěn jìn.*

- 1 *Zhǔnbèi hǎo le ma? Wǒ liǎng diǎn zhōng kuài yào zǒu le.*
- 2 *Yúnnán zài Zhōngguó de nánxī bù.*
- 3 *Bǎ zhàoxiàngjī bù kěyǐ jiè* ('lend; borrow') *gěi tā.*
- 4 *Wǒ yǒu sishí zhī bǎi fēn de bǎwò* (把握 'certainty').
- 5 *Yīngguó de shēnghuófèi bǐ Zhōngguó hěn guì.*
- 6 *Gǔdiǎn yīnyuè gēn xiàndài* (现代 'modern') *yīnyuè hǎo tīng yíyàng.*
- 7 *Fánsì lǎoshī cái xǐhuan jiāo shū.*
- 8 *Chúfēi nǐ yuánliàng* (原谅 'forgive') *wǒ, wǒ jiù bù kǔ le.*
- 9 *Zài guówài shíjiān hěn cháng, kǒngpà* (恐怕 'be afraid') *huàn qián fēi bùkě.*
- 10 *Shàngjí* (上级 'superiors') *xiàng bù xǐhuan tā, bù zhīdao shénme yuányīn* (原因 'reason, cause').
- 11 *Nǐ chuān shàng tàiyángjìng qù cānjiā* (参加 'take part in') *liánhuānhuì tài bù héshì* (合适 'suitable') *ne.*
- 12 *Tā jiào dǎ le yì tā hūtu* (一塌糊涂 'a terrible mess').
- 13 *Shèhuìzhǔyìyuán yīnggāi tóngqíng qióng rén* (穷人 'poor person').
- 14 *Wǒ gēn nǐ bú tóngyì - tā bìng bú shì ge huài rén.*
- 15 *Qǐng nǐ bǎ èrshí'èr kè de kèwén fānyì Yīngwén.*

Exercise 1.1

- 1 Wǒ bú zuò. 2 Nǐ bù hǎo.
 3 Wǒ bù hē chá. 4 Nǐ bù xǐhuan Zhōngguó.
 5 Lǐ xiānsheng bú xièxie wǒ.
 6 Wáng xiānsheng bù qǐng nǐ hē Zhōngguó chá.

Exercise 1.2

- 1 Wǒ xǐhuan bu xǐhuan hē kāfēi? Wǒ xǐhuan hē kāfēi. Wǒ bù xǐhuan hē kāfēi.
 2 Nǐ xièxie bu xièxie wǒ? Nǐ xièxie wǒ. Nǐ bú xièxie wǒ.
 3 Wáng xiānsheng qǐng bu qǐng wǒ zuò? Wáng xiānsheng qǐng wǒ zuò. Wáng xiānsheng bù qǐng wǒ zuò.
 4 Lǐ xiānsheng xǐhuan bu xǐhuan hē shuǐ? Lǐ xiānsheng xǐhuan hē shuǐ. Lǐ xiānsheng bu xǐhuan hē shuǐ.

Exercise 1.3

- 1 Mr King invites me to drink Chinese tea.
 2 Mr Li greatly dislikes Mr King. (Mr Li can't stand Mr King.)
 3 Mr King doesn't like Mr Li much either.
 4 You don't thank me so I don't thank you either.

Exercise 1.4

- 1 Wáng xiānsheng, nǐ hǎo. Qǐng zuò.
 2 Wǒ bù hē chá.
 3 Nàme, kāfēi xíng ma? (Nàme, kāfēi xíng bu xíng?)
 4 Xièxie, kāfēi hěn hǎo. 5 Wǒ hěn xǐhuan nǐ.
 6 Qǐng hē Zhōngguó chá. 7 Tā yě bù xǐhuan wǒ.

Exercise 2.1

- 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 F.

Exercise 2.2

- 1 *Lǐ tàitai, rènshi nín wǒ zhēn gāoxìng.*
- 2 *Nàme, júzìzhī hǎo ba?*
- 3 *Wǒ hěn xǐhuan hē jiǔ.*
- 4 *Nín bú huì hē sì bēi pútáojiǔ.*
- 5 *Wǒ gěi Lǐ xiānsheng jièshào wǒ àiren.*

Exercise 2.3

Mr King invites Mr Li for a drink. Mr Li is very pleased. He's a great drinker. What about his wife Zhou Dejin? His wife doesn't drink. She drinks orange juice. She is also very much against Mr Li drinking.

Exercise 2.4

- 1 *Nǐ hē jiǔ ma?*
- 2 *Wǒ bú huì hē jiǔ. Nín ne?*
- 3 *Zhōu xiānsheng, wǒ gěi nǐ jièshào wǒ àiren.*
- 4 *Tā rènshi tā ma? (Tā rènshi bu rènshi tā?)*
- 5 *Wǒ àiren xī yān, wǒ hěn bù gāoxìng.*
- 6 *Kāfēi hǎo ba?*
- 7 *Zhāng xiānsheng bú huì Yīngyǔ.*
- 8 *Nǐ bú huì hē qī bēi jiǔ.*

Exercise 3.1

- 1 *Wǒmen hē shénme?*
- 2 *Lǐ xiānsheng hé Lǐ tàitai yǒu jǐ ge xiǎoháir?*
- 3 *Pútáojiǔ zěnmeyàng?*
- 4 *Wáng xiānsheng de nǚ péngyou zài nǎr?*
- 5 *Tāmen míngtiān wǎnshàng jǐ diǎn zhōng qù chī fàn?*
- 6 *Wáng xiānsheng qǐng shéi chī fàn?*

Exercise 3.2

- 1 *Jiǔ diǎn (zhōng)*
- 2 *Shíyī diǎn bàn*
- 3 *Liǎng diǎn èrshíwǔ fēn*
- 4 *Sān diǎn wǔshí fēn or Chà shí fēn sì diǎn*
- 5 *Yì diǎn yí kè or yì diǎn shíwǔ fēn*
- 6 *Bā diǎn (líng) wǔ fēn*
- 7 *Wǔ diǎn sìshíwǔ fēn or wǔ diǎn sān kè or chà yí kè liù diǎn*
- 8 *Shí'èr diǎn shí fēn.*

Exercise 3.3

- 1 *Wǒ yǒu liǎng ge xiǎoháir.*
- 2 *Tā méi yǒu nǚháir.*
- 3 *Nǐmen yǒu liù ge péngyou.*
- 4 *Zhōngguó zài nǎr?*
- 5 *Tāmen jǐ suì?*
- 6 *Wǒmen shí diǎn zhōng qù.*
- 7 *Hē lùchá zěnmeyàng?*
- 8 *Zhōu Déjīn méi yǒu jié hūn.*

9 Wáng tàitai wǎnshang bù chī fàn.

10 Zhāng xiānsheng xiǎng qǐng wǒmen, wǒmen jiù bù qǐng tā.

Exercise 3.4

We have four children, three girls and a boy. I have many friends. I have invited two friends to come to our house tomorrow evening for a meal. My wife is very put out because she doesn't know them.

Exercise 3.5

1 Nǚhái sān suì, nánhái liǎng suì.

2 Tā jié hūn le ma? / Tā jié hūn le méi you? / Tā jié hūn méi jié hūn / Méi yǒu.

3 Nǐmen míngtiān wǎnshang qù tā jiā chī fàn ma?

4 Tā xiànzài zài nǎr? Tā zài Lúndūn.

5 Nǐ yǒu duìxiàng ma? / Nǐ yǒu mei yǒu duìxiàng? Méi yǒu, wǒ cái shíwǔ suì.

6 Wǒmen liǎ hěn xǐhuan hē kāfēi.

7 Nǐ jǐ diǎn zhōng zài jiā? / Qī diǎn zěnmeyàng? / Hǎo, jiù qī diǎn ba.

8 Wǒ àiren hěn hǎo dànshi tā bú tài xǐhuan shuō huà.

9 Nǐ de péngyou zài nǎr? Wǒ xiǎng qǐng tā chī fàn.

Exercise 4.1

1 Zhè wèi xiǎojié zài Běijīng Dàxué xuéxí Hànyǔ.

2 Nǎ wèi xiānsheng shì nǐ àiren?

3 Wáng tàitai yǒu jǐ ge xiǎoháir?

4 Nà wǔ ge rén dōu shì nǐ péngyou ma?

5 Tāmen jǐ diǎn zhōng lái wǒmen jiā chī fàn?

Exercise 4.2

1 Wǒmen xuéxí de hěn shǎo.

2 Nǐmen shuō Hànyǔ, shuō de búcuò. Nǐmen Hànyǔ shuō de búcuò. Hànyǔ nǐmen shuō de búcuò.

3 Tā shēnghuó de bù zěnmeyàng.

4 Nà ge rén zuò Zhōngguó cài zuò de hěn hǎo. Nà ge rén Zhōngguó cài zuò de hěn hǎo. Zhōngguó cài nà ge rén zuò de hěn hǎo.

5 Zhè ge péngyou shuō huà shuō de bù duō. Zhè ge péngyou huà shuō de bù duō. Huà zhè ge péngyou shuō de bù duō.

Exercise 4.3

1 Tā shuō Hànyǔ shuō de hǎo ma? Tā shuō Hànyǔ shuō de hǎo bu hǎo? Tā shuō Hànyǔ shuō de zěnmeyàng? Tā shuō Hànyǔ shuō de bù hǎo.

- 2 Wǒ yí ge péngyou hē jiǔ hē de duō ma? Wǒ yí ge péngyou hē jiǔ hē de duō bu duō? Wǒ yí ge péngyou hē jiǔ hē de zěnmeyàng? Wǒ yí ge péngyou hē jiǔ hē de bù duō.
- 3 Shǐ xiǎojie xuéxí de màn ma? Shǐ xiǎojie xuéxí de màn bu màn? Shǐ xiǎojie xuéxí de zěnmeyàng? Shǐ xiǎojie xuéxí de bú màn.
- 4 Gōngrén jīntiān lái de shǎo ma? Gōngrén jīntiān lái de shǎo bu shǎo? Gōngrén jīntiān lái de zěnmeyàng? Gōngrén jīntiān lái de bù shǎo.
- 5 Yīngguórén zuò Yīngguó cài, zuò de hǎo ma? Yīngguórén zuò Yīngguó cài, zuò de hǎo bu hǎo? Yīngguórén zuò Yīngguó cài, zuò de zěnmeyàng? Yīngguórén zuò Yīngguó cài, zuò de bù hǎo.

Exercise 4.4

- 1 Wáng xiāngsheng de nǚ péngyou shì Shǐ xiǎojie.
- 2 Shǐ xiǎojie shì Yīngguórén.
- 3 Shǐ xiǎojie zài Zhōngguó xuéxí Hànyǔ.
- 4 Zài Běijīng Dàxué shēnghuó hěn búcuò (hěn hǎo).
- 5 Tāmen jīntiān wǎnshàng chī Zhōngguó cài.
- 6 Wáng xiānsheng hé Shǐ xiǎojie kuàizi yòng de búcuò (hǎo).
- 7 Lǐ tàitai zuò cài zuò de hěn hǎo.
- 8 Shǐ xiǎojie huì zuò Yīngguó cài.

Exercise 4.5

- 1 I can cook but not very well. My girlfriend says I'm a very plain cook. We have many Chinese friends, they cook Chinese food very well. They use chopsticks very well too. What about you?
- 2 A friend of mine went to France to work. French food is delicious – he ate a lot of it. Now he's very fat. His wife says 'How about your eating less and working more?' My friend says 'Eating less is OK but not working more!'

Exercise 4.6

- 1 Wǒ zìjǐ bú huì zuò cài dànshi wǒ àiren zuò cài zuò de fēicháng hǎo.
- 2 Nǐ shì Fǎguórén ma? Wǒmen liǎ yě (dōu) shì Fǎguórén.
- 3 Nà wèi xiānsheng shì liǎng diǎn bàn lái de ma? Bù, tā shì sān diǎn lái de.
- 4 Nǐ zài nǎ xuéxí Hànyǔ? Xuéxí de zěnmeyàng?
- 5 Tā shì cóng Měiguó lái de. Tā zài zhèr gōngzuò.
- 6 Xiànzài jǐ diǎn? Nǐ(men) yídìng hěn è le!
- 7 Wǒ jīntiān méi yǒu kòng dànshi (wǒ) míngtiān bù gōngzuò. Shí diǎn (zhōng) xíng ma?

- 8 Tā yòng kuàizì yòng de bú tài hǎo dànsi (tā) zuò Zhōngguó cài zuò de hǎo jile (hěn hǎofēicháng hǎo).

Exercise 5.1

- 1 Dèng xiǎojie yào huí Zhōngguó qu.
- 2 Érzi jìn kètīng lai le.
- 3 Tā jìn wòshì qu le.
- 4 Nǐmen yīnggāi huí jiā lai.
- 5 Wǒ xiǎng huí Yīngguó qu.

Exercise 5.2

- 1 Tāmen xǐhuan chī fàn háishi xǐhuan shuō huà?
- 2 Dèng tàitai yào mǎi bīngxiāng háishi yào mǎi xǐyījī?
- 3 Zhōu xiānsheng qù Fǎguó háishi Zhāng xiānsheng qù (Fǎguó)?
- 4 Shíjiān guò de kuài háishi guò de màn?
- 5 Wǒ péngyou de fángzi méi yǒu chūfáng háishi méi yǒu yùshì?
- 6 Nǐ xuéxí Hànyǔ háishi xuéxí dìlǐ?

Exercise 5.3

- 1 Dìfang xiǎo, bīngxiāng, xǐyījī dōu fàng zài zhèr.
- 2 Xiǎoháir xiànzài zài chūfáng hē niúniǎi.
- 3 Tā yuànyì zǎozāo qù.
- 4 Wǒ gěi nǐmen tiān le bù shǎo máfan.
- 5 Lǐ lǎoshī gāogāoxìngxìng de huí dàxué qu le.
- 6 Wàimiàn de rén dōu shì nán de.

Exercise 5.4

The kids are going to my mum's place this evening. She's got a lot of space and has both a washing machine and a fridge. The children like to enjoy themselves, my mum also likes to take them to the cinema but she has neither the time nor the money so she has to let them play in the big garden. When they stop playing they can sit in the kitchen and chat and have something to eat. After the meal they can watch the (colour) TV.

Exercise 5.5

- 1 Wǒ hé wǒ péngyou xiǎng qù Měiguó.
- 2 Tā zài nǎr kàn diànshì? Zài wòshì háishi zài kètīng?
- 3 Fùqīn shuō tā bú rènshi nǐ le.
- 4 Lǎo le, tā jiù bù hē jiǔ le.
- 5 Tā yòu xǐhuan jiāo shū yòu xǐhuan dú shū.
- 6 Tā zhǐ hǎo zhàn zài nàr.
- 7 Wǒ bùzhī wán kètīng, jiù ānānjìngjìng de kàn shū.
- 8 Xièxie nǐ de rèqíng zhāodài, wǒ yídìng zài lái.

Exercise 7.1

- 1 *Érzi bǐ nǚ'ér dà wǔ suì.*
- 2 *Jiějie bǐ mèimei dà liù suì.*
- 3 *Shǐ Àilǐ bǐ Wáng Yǒngshòu xiǎo liǎng suì.*
- 4 *Lǐ tàitai bǐ Lǐ xiānsheng xiǎo sān suì.*
- 5 *Zhōngguó chá bǐ Zhōngguó jiǔ hǎo hē.*
- 6 *Zhōngguó cài bǐ Yīngguó cài hǎo chī.*
- 7 *Tā de shēntǐ bǐ nǐ (de shēntǐ) hǎo.*
- 8 *Wǒ nán péngyou bǐ wǒ gāoxìng.*

Exercise 7.2

- 1 *Shǐ xiǎojie yǒu liǎng ge gēge hé yí ge mèimei.*
- 2 *Wǒ dìdi èrshíqī suì.*
- 3 *Lǎo jiàoyuán bāshí suì, shēntǐ hěn hǎo.*
- 4 *Zhè ge gōngrén bǐ nà ge gōngrén xiǎo wǔ suì.*
- 5 *Tā àiren bǐ tā māma dà sì suì.*
- 6 *Jiùshíjiǔ ge fúwùyuán zài Běijīng Fàndiàn gōngzuò.*
- 7 *Nà ge yīshēng hē liù bēi jiǔ hé liǎng bēi kāfēi.*

Exercise 7.3

- 1 *Zhāng Zhànyī de jiā zài Běijīng.*
- 2 *Tā jiā yǒu wǔ kǒu rén.*
- 3 *Tā méi yǒu dìdi, (yě méi yǒu) mèimei.*
- 4 *Tā jiějie méi yǒu jié hūn.*
- 5 *Tā gēge èrshíbā suì.*
- 6 *Zhāng Zhànyī èrshíliù suì bàn.*
- 7 *Tā bàba zài Běijīng Yǔyán Xuéyuàn jiāo Hànyǔ.*
- 8 *Tā jiāo wàiguó liúxuéshēng Hànyǔ.*
- 9 *Bù, tā māma bǐ bàba xiǎo. Māma wǔshíbā suì le. Bù gōngzuò, yǐjīng tuìxiū le.*
- 10 *Tāmen liǎ shēntǐ fēicháng hǎo.*
- 11 *Zhāng Zhànyī bù dāng gōngrén.*
- 12 *Tā de gōngzuò hái guò de qù.*
- 13 *Tāmen yì jiā rén gǎnqíng (dōu) hěn hǎo.*

Exercise 7.4

- 1 My elder sister is 29 years old and is still not married. She is a doctor in Shanghai. She really likes her job. My mum says she ought to get married – that it's not OK for a girl not to. My sister says it doesn't matter if she gets married a bit later on (in life) but my mum doesn't agree.
- 2 Zhou Gengxin is from Tianjin. He is a worker. There are four people in his family – his dad, mum, his younger brother and himself. His (younger) brother is 21, one and a half years younger than him. His brother is studying English at Beijing

University. Zhou Gengxin is also studying English but he has very little time to study so his English is very bad.

Exercise 7.5

- 1 Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi? Wǒ jiào Shǐ Àilí.
- 2 Tā méi yǒu xiōngdì, yě méi yǒu jiěmèi.
- 3 Wǒ qǐng liǎng ge Zhōngguó péngyou míngtiān wǎnshang lái wǒ jiā chī wǎnfàn.
- 4 Zài Běijīng Yǔyán Dàxué xuéxí Hànyǔ de nà ge rén hái méi yǒu lái ne.
- 5 Wǒ péngyou èrshíbā suì hái méi yǒu jié hūn ne.
- 6 Zài Shànghǎi de nà ge Měiguó yīshēng yǐjīng tuìxiū le ma?
- 7 Zài Běijīng Dàxué xuéxí Hànyǔ de nà ge Yīngguó nǚ hái zi zuò cài zuò de hǎo jǐle (fēicháng hǎo).
- 8 Wǒ àiren hé tā liǎng ge mèimei gǎnqíng (dōu) hěn hǎo.
- 9 Hěn duō Zhōngguó rén shuō Yīngyǔ shuō de fēicháng hǎo.
- 10 Wǒ nǚ péngyou bǐ wǒ dà yí suì dànshi bǐ wǒ gēge xiǎo liǎng suì.
- 11 Nà ge rén bú tài hǎo suǒyǐ wǒ méi qǐng tā hē yì bēi.
- 12 Xǔyǐjī hé cǎisè diànshì (cǎidiàn) dōu méi yǒu dànshi wǒmen hái guò de búcuò (rìzì guò de hái kěyǐ).

Exercise 8.1

- 1 Fùmǔ zǒu jìn kètīng lái.
- 2 Tāmen bān chū shūzhuō qu.
- 3 Xiōngdì bān jìn shuāngrénchuáng qu.
- 4 Xiǎoháir pǎo chū cèsuǒ lái.
- 5 Jiàoyuán nà xià liǎng běn shū lai. Jiàoyuán nà xiàlai liǎng běn shū.

Exercise 8.2

- 1 Zhāng Zhànyī de jiā yǒu sān jiān fáng.
- 2 Zhè bù bāokuò chúfáng hé cèsuǒ.
- 3 Tā fùmǔ shuì zài kètīng (lǐ).
- 4 Tā hé tā gēge shuì yí ge fángjiān.
- 5 Tāmen xiōngdì de fángjiān dà.
- 6 Jiějie de fángjiān fāng de xià yì zhāng chuáng, yì zhāng xiǎo zhuōzi hé yì bǎ yǐzi.
- 7 Tāmen xiōngdì, zǐmèi bù cháng(cháng) zài jiā.
- 8 Shuāngrénchuáng zài kètīng lǐ.
- 9 Bú shì, shì Rìběn huò.
- 10 Dà yuánzhuō hé yǐzi (dōu) bú zài kètīng lǐ.
- 11 Zhōngguó fángzū, shuǐdiànfèi piányi.
- 12 Àn Zhōngguó xiànzài de biāozhǔn Zhāng Zhànyī hé tā yì jiā rén guò de hái búcuò.

Exercise 8.3

- 1 Měi ge fādá guójiā fángzū dōu hěn guì.
- 2 Zhōngguó rén hǎo, Yīngguó rén yě dōu hěn hǎo.
- 3 Féng rèn jī méi yǒu zǔ hé yīn xiǎng nà me guì.
- 4 Shuǐ jiào yì qián yīng gāi shuā yá.
- 5 Tā nà tiān xiūxi le.
- 6 Yǒu de yī fu wǒ bú yuàn yì xǐ.
- 7 Fú wù yuán pǎo jìn fàn diàn lái.
- 8 Yì xiē Rì běn rén gōng zī hěn gāo.
- 9 Sū gé lán bǐ měi guó ān jìng de duō.
- 10 Tiān qì hǎo de shí hou, yào hǎo hāo wán(r).

Exercise 8.4

What's your own room like? Do you have much furniture? What is there besides a bed? Do you have a hi-fi, a washing machine and a TV? What about a fridge? Do you live more comfortably than you used to? Do you have high wages? Are (your) rent, water and electricity dear? Who turns on your central heating for you? I bet it's not your boss? Is life OK for you? I hope things are going well for you!

Exercise 8.5

- 1 Fàn tīng lǐ yǒu yì zhāng zhuō zi hé liù bǎ yǐ zi.
- 2 Suǐ rán shū fáng lǐ yì bān hěn ān jìng, dàn shì hěn duō rén dōu méi yǒu.
- 3 Tiān qì lěng de shí hou, dài jiā (dōu) xǐ huan shāo nuǎn qì.
- 4 Gōng zī gāo de shí hou, shuǐ diàn fèi guì yě méi (yǒu) guān xi.
- 5 Àn xiàn zài de biāo zhǔn, Yīng guó suàn shì (yì) ge fādá guó jiā.
- 6 Bú shì měi ge shā fā dōu hǎo zuò.
- 7 Zǔ hé yīn xiǎng méi yǒu yì qián nà me guì.
- 8 Fù mǔ zuó tiān méi qu, wǒ hé jiě jie jīn tiān yě bú qù.
- 9 Dān rén chuáng bǐ shuāng rén chuáng hái (gèng) pián yi.
- 10 Shēng huó chū le chī fàn yǐ wài, hái yǒu shén me?
- 11 Xiūxi yì qián, qǐng bāng zhù wǒ bān chū yī guì qu.
- 12 Suǐ rán chuāng hu, mén dēng dōu hěn gān jìng, dàn shì zhuō zi, yǐ zi dōu hěn zāng.

Exercise 9.1

1 F 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 F 8 T 9 F 10 T.

Exercise 9.2

- a hái shì; shuǐ guō zhǐ; shuǐ jiào; huò zhě kě kě; cóng qián; zěn me; jiù; bù.
- b jiù; nǎr; tǐng; suǐ rán; mǒu; zěn me; dōu.

Exercise 9.3

- 1 Rúguǒ méi yǒu càidān, wǒ jiù bù kěyǐ dīng cài.
- 2 Nǐmen cóngqián méi zhùguo lǚguǎn.
- 3 Fādá guójiā shēnghuó yuè lái yuè nán.
- 4 Yǒu shíhou suàn zhàng yòng jìsuànjī hěn fāngbiàn or Suàn zhàng yòng jìsuànjī yǒu shíhou hěn fāngbiàn.
- 5 Chéng qiān shàng wǎn de yóukè měi nián qù yóulǎn Chángchéng or Měi nián chéng qiān shàng wǎn de yóukè qù yóulǎn Chángchéng.
- 6 Jǐntiān bú è le. Wǒ shénme yě bù xiǎng chī.
- 7 Tā nà ge rén hǎo jǐle, tā shuō tiānqì zěnme lěng, dōu méi guānxi.

Exercise 9.4

- 1 The Chinese like using Thermos flasks a lot because they're generally very keen on drinking tea. Most Chinese prefer drinking green tea (China tea) but Indian tea is OK too on occasions. When they drink Indian tea the vast majority of Chinese drink it with milk and sugar (add milk and sugar).
- 2 There are many types of cups – teacups, coffee cups, glass cups and cups for wine. It's the same for bottles. There are bottles for flowers, milk and for hot water.

Exercise 9.5

- 1 Suān niú'nǎi méi yǒu le. Nǐ kěyǐ hē rě niú'nǎi huòzhě liáng niú'nǎi.
- 2 Nǐ qùguo Chángchéng ma? Chéng qiān shàng wǎn de yóukè měi nián qù yóulǎn.
- 3 Yàoshi méi yǒu wèishēngzhǐ, shàng cèsuǒ jiù hěn nán (bù fāngbiàn).
- 4 Dàjiā yīnggāi xiǎngshòu yíyàng de quánlì.
- 5 Wǒmen búdé bù chéngrèn Ruìshì qiǎokèlì fēicháng hǎo chī.
- 6 Rúguǒ nǐ yuànyì yòng jìsuànjī suàn zhàng, jiù qǐng ba.
- 7 Jǐntiān wǎnshàng nǐ qǐng shéi chī fàn? Wǒ shéi dōu bù qǐng.
- 8 Kèwén yuè lái yuè nán (le).
- 9 Qíshí tā de zuòfǎ zuì hǎo.
- 10 Zhù shuāngrénfángjiān de nà ge rén shì Dōngjīng shāngrén or shì cóng Dōngjīng lái de shāngrén.
- 11 Suǐrán xià yǔ, tā shuō tā (hái) huì lái.
- 12 Guòqù wàiguó gōngsī zhù Zhōngguó de dàibiǎo hěn shǎo, (dànshi) xiànzài yuè lái yuè duō le.

Exercise 10.1

- 1 Tā xī shí fēn zhōng de yān.
- 2 Lǎoshī jiāo yí ge xiǎoshí de shū.

- 3 Gēge lù bàn ge zhōngtóu de yīn.
- 4 Wǒ àiren huà sǎn kè zhōng de huà.
- 5 Chǎngzhǎng kāi sǎn ge bàn xiǎoshí de chē.
- 6 Dìdi kàn shū, kàn bàn ge xiǎoshí.
- 7 Lǎorén shuì jiào, shuì yí ge bàn xiǎoshí.
- 8 Wǒ yí ge péngyou zǒu lù, zǒu qī ge zhōngtóu.
- 9 Nà wèi xiānsheng shuō huà, shuō hěn cháng shíjiān le.
- 10 Nǎ wèi xiǎojie néng dǎ zì, néng dǎ jiǔ ge xiǎoshí?

Exercise 10.2

- 1 Xīngqīsi 2 xīngqījǐ? xīngqīyī 3 qīyuè
- 4 shí'èr ge yuè 5 qī tiān 6 sānshí tiān
- 7 èrshíbā tiān; èrshíjiǔ tiān
- 8 sānbǎiliùshíwǔ tiān; sānbǎiliùshíliù tiān.

Exercise 10.3

- 1 (-) 2 (-) 3 (+) 4 (-) 5 (+) 6 (+) 7 (-) 8 (-)
- 9 (-) 10 (+)

Exercise 10.4

Some people think (that) British weather is pretty awful but conversely there are also some people who feel that British weather is pretty good – neither hot nor cold, nor does it always snow in winter but there's no getting away from one thing and that's no matter where you are, it often rains (in Britain). In China there are normally many sunny days and few cloudy ones but Britain is just the opposite with lots of cloudy days and few sunny ones. Some say this ties in with British people's peculiar temperament but others say it is related to their lovable character. Which view is right? Over to you!

Exercise 10.5

- 1 Xīngqītiān wǒ péngyou lái de shíhou, wǒ zhèngzài kàn diànshì ne.
- 2 Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ yìqǐ qù Yíhéyuán sǎn (sǎn) bù.
- 3 Tā yī kāishǐ dǎ hūlu wǒ jiù zǒu!
- 4 Chuānghu kāizhè dànsì mén guānzhe.
- 5 Gōngyuán lǐ rènào jǐle, dǎ tàijǐquán de dǎ tàijǐquán, zhào xiàng de zhào xiàng, shài tàiyáng de shài tàiyáng.
- 6 Tiānqì hǎo de shíhou, wǒ zài wàimiàn zuòzhe kàn shū.
- 7 Wǒmen měi tiān wǎnshàng cháng bàn ge xiǎoshí de gēr jiù shàng chuáng. Wǒmen měi tiān wǎnshàng cháng gēr cháng bàn ge xiǎoshí jiù qù shuì jiào.
- 8 Yīnwèi tā xīngqī'èr bìng méi yǒu dǎ diànhuà, suǒyǐ wǒ bù zhīdao wǒ qù bu qù.

- 9 Yàoshi zài fùmǔ jiā, wǒ chángcháng dào fùjìn de gōngyuán qù dǎ wǎngqiú.
 10 Tā xiàozhe shuō tā yǐjīng jié hūn le.
 11 Nǐmen zài tīng shōuyīnjī ma? Méi yǒu, wǒmen tīngzhe lǜ yīn.
 12 Nǐ míngtiān qù kàn xì shì bu shì? Kěxī wǒ bù néng gēn nǐ yìqǐ qù.

Exercise 11.1

- 1 Tā de fāyīn qīngchū shì qīngchū dànshi ...
 2 Wáng xiānsheng de Hànyǔ shuǐpíng gāo shì gāo kěshì ...
 3 Zhè běn xiǎoshuō yǒu yìsì shì yǒu yìsì kěshì ...
 4 Duì wàiguórén lái shuō, Zhōngwén de sīhēng nán shì nán dànshi ...
 5 Qīngdǎo píjiǔ hǎo hē shì hǎo hē kěshì ...

Exercise 11.2

- 1 cái 2 jiù 3 jiù 4 cái 5 cái 6 cái 7 jiù 8 cái.

Exercise 11.3

- 1 dǒng 2 chūqu/chūlai or jìnqu/jìnlai
 3 chūlai 4 wán
 5 bǎo 6 shàng
 7 jiàn 8 qǐlai
 9 xià 10 qīngchū; dǒng
 11 dào/zhào 12 xiàqu.

Exercise 11.5

Zhang Zhanyi is an attendant. He likes his job a lot because he has the chance to meet lots of different people. They may be American or British or then again Chinese or Japanese. Some foreigners can speak very fluent Chinese (*putonghua*) but with a strong foreign accent, their pronunciation and grammar are not very accurate but you can still understand them. It's very funny when some foreigners start speaking Chinese because they don't use tones. There are also some foreigners, with a very high level of Chinese who have been living in China for ages and can read (and understand) Chinese newspapers and novels and can also write Chinese more or less. It's not at all easy for adults to learn Chinese (start learning Chinese), you have to take your hat off to them. Some people can't even speak their own language properly let alone a foreign one!

Exercise 11.6

- 1 Wǒ cāi bú shì Měiguórén jiù shì Yīngguórén.
 2 Tā de shēngdiào fēicháng hǎo dànshi tā de fāyīn bù xíng.

- 3 Wǒ yǐjīng qù le liù cì Zhōngguó kěshì wǒ háishi tīng bu dǒng Zhōngguó rén shuō shénme.
- 4 Duì wǒ zuì hǎo de péngyou lái shuō, xiě zì bǐ kàn shū gèng (hái) yǒu yìsi.
- 5 Tā (de) tóufa zhēn cháng. Tā zěnmē hái méi jiǎn ne?
- 6 Tā zhǐ yòng le liǎng nián (de shíjiān) jiù xué hǎo (xǎngwò) le pùtōnghuà.
- 7 Tā xué Zhōngwén xué le sān nián le suǒyǐ tā de shuǐpíng xiāngdāng gāo.
- 8 Wǒ (shì) zuótiān cái zhīdao tā bú huì chá Zhōngwén cídiǎn/zìdiǎn (de).
- 9 Dàjiā dōu xǐhuan gēn yǒu yìsi de rén jiǎng huà dànshi zhè yàng de rén bù duō.
- 10 Chūfēi yǒu zhòngyào (de) shìqing wǒ cái dǎrǎo nǐ.
- 11 Wǒ cái gēn tā shuō le yì, liǎng cì huà, jiù hěn xǐhuan tā le. (This one is difficult!)
- 12 Tā tèbié lǎn. Tā jīntiān cái kàn wán yí yè.

Exercise 14.1

- 1 zhāng 张. 2 jiàn 件. 3 jiàn 件.
- 4 bāo 包. 5 kuài 块. 6 jiàn 件, mǐ 米.

Exercise 14.2

- 1 二十块. 2 四块八. 3 三块九.
- 4 六块九. 5 一毛二. 6 八毛四.

Exercise 14.4

- 1 píng 'grass'. 2 chèn 'clothing'.
- 3 méi 'water'. 4 xiè 'speech'.
- 5 kuà 'earth'. 6 běn 'tree'.
- 7 shì 'sun'. 8 yān 'fire'.
- 9 zhì 'heart'. 10 mǎi 'big'.

Exercise 14.5

- 1 4 (一). 2 4 (四). 3 5 (口). 4 3 (女). 5 3 (戈).
- 6 4 (扌). 7 5 (卩). 8 7 (大). 9 7 (心). 10 4 (扌).

Exercise 14.6

- 1 售货员是中国人。The shop assistant is Chinese.
- 2 地图三毛二一张。Maps are 0.32 yuan each.
- 3 那本杂志八毛九。That magazine costs 0.89 yuan.
- 4 您没买东西。You haven't bought anything. You haven't been shopping.
- 5 苹果一块四一斤。Apples are 1.4 yuan a catty.

Exercise 14.7

- 1 我要买三本杂志和一份报。(张 is used as the MW for newspaper if there are only 4 pages!)
- 2 我昨天买了两件衬衫。
- 3 他要买东西。
- 4 你(您)要几米丝绸?
- 5 谢谢。再见。

Exercise 15.2

- 1 yì, zhì, zǎn (心).
- 2 bào, tǐng, pái (才).
- 3 hào, yuán, wèn (口).
- 4 dōu, bù, yóu (不).
- 5 lái, qī, xià (一).

Exercise 15.3

- 1 地、块、去。
- 2 要、好。
- 3 中、出。
- 4 杂、本、果、乐、样。
- 5 服、有、期。
- 6 图、四、国。
- 7 影。
- 8 会、个。
- 9 件、份、什、你。
- 10 这、还。

Exercise 15.4

- 1 看电影怎么样? How about seeing a film?
- 2 楼下有人吗? Is anybody downstairs? Are there people downstairs?
- 3 《日出》这部电影有没有意思? Is the film *Sunrise* any good? (interesting).
- 4 上个星期你没来。You didn't come last week.
- 5 音乐会几月几号? When is the concert? (What day of what month).

Exercise 15.5

- 1 今天十一月三号(日)。
- 2 请问,今天几月几号?
- 3 楼上没有人。
- 4 大家说买东西很有意思。
- 5 你还有钱吗? 你要多少?
- 6 我一九六八年在中国。

Exercise 16.2

- 1 yǎn 'water'.
- 2 xíng 'to step with left foot'.
- 3 jì 'speech'.
- 4 dǎ 'hand'.
- 5 qǐ 'ear'.
- 6 guò 'walking'.
- 7 yīng 'grass'.
- 8 jiē 'hand'.
- 9 mài 'ten'.
- 10 tiān 'horizontal line'.

Exercise 16.3

- 1 6 (六).
- 2 8 (八).
- 3 3 (三).
- 4 2 (口).
- 5 2 (二).
- 6 10 (十).
- 7 5 (日).
- 8 5 (贝).
- 9 6 (六).
- 10 5 (女).

Exercise 16.4

- 1 心 → 意、您、思、怎。 2 扌 → 报、接、拔、打。
 3 口 → 喂、叫、哪、名。 4 宀 → 客、定、字、家。
 5 彳 → 没、演、满。

Exercise 16.5

- 1 今天没有人给我打电话。 Nobody phoned me today.
 2 首都剧场在哪儿? Where is the Capital Theatre?
 3 他明天下午就要去北京了。 He's going to Beijing tomorrow afternoon.
 4 你后天能不能来接我? Can you come and meet me the day after tomorrow?
 5 星期五行不行? 不行, 就星期六吧。 Is Friday OK? If not, then how about Saturday?

Exercise 16.6

- 1 我今天去首都剧场了。
 2 您贵姓? 我姓史, 名字叫史爱理。
 3 他说他给我们留两张票。
 4 他们要今天下午看那部电影, 可是客满了。
 5 我下个星期五来取票行吧?

Exercise 17.1

- 1 *Jǐngshān Gōngyuán zài Gùgōng běibianr.*
 2 *Qiánmén zài Máo Zhǔxí Jìniàntáng nánbianr.*
 3 *Rénmín Dàhuítáng zài Rénmín Yīngxióng Jìniànbēi xībianr.*
 4 *Zhōngguó Lìshǐ Bówùguǎn zài Rénmín Yīngxióng Jìniànbēi dōngbianr.*
 5 *Máo Zhǔxí Jìniàntáng zài Rénmín Dàhuítáng dōngnánbianr.*

Exercise 17.2

- 1 *Jǐngshān Gōngyuán lí Qiánmén bǐjiào yuǎn.*
 2 *Rénmín Dàhuítáng lí Rénmín Yīngxióng Jìniànbēi hěn jìn. Wàng dōng zǒu jiù dào le.*
 3 *Máo Zhǔxí Jìniàntáng lí Tiān'ānmén bú tài yuǎn wàng běi zǒu jiù dào le.*
 4 *Shì, jiù zài Zhōngguó Lìshǐ Bówùguǎn duìmiàn. (jiù zài Zhōngguó Lìshǐ Bówùguǎn hé Rénmín Dàhuítáng zhōngjiān)*
 5 *Niújīn lí Lúndūn yǒu jiǔshíyī gōnglǐ.*
 6 *Sānshí hào lí èrshíqī hào yǒu sān tiān.*
 7 *Yuándàn lí Shèngdànjie yǒu yí ge xīngqī.*

Exercise 17.4

(Exercise 17.1)

- 1 景山公园在故宫北边儿。
- 2 前门在毛主席纪念堂南边儿。
- 3 人民大会堂在人民英雄纪念碑西边儿。
- 4 中国历史博物馆在人民英雄纪念碑东边儿。
- 5 毛主席纪念堂在人民大会堂东南边儿。

(Exercise 17.2)

- 1 景山公园离前门比较远。
- 2 人民大会堂离人民英雄纪念碑很近，往东走就到了。
- 3 毛主席纪念堂离天安门不太远，往北走就到了。
- 4 是，就在中国历史博物馆对面。（就在中国历史博物馆和人民大会堂中间。）

Exercise 17.5

- 1 请问，天坛在哪儿？怎么走？
- 2 人民大会堂离这儿远吗？不远，就在对面。
- 3 人民英雄纪念碑在人民大会堂东边儿，中国历史博物馆西边儿。

Exercise 18.1

- 1 *Qǐng nǐ bǎ shōujù shōu hǎo.*
- 2 *Bāoguǒdān shàng yào bǎ jìjiànrén de dìzhǐ he xìngmíng xiě qīngchū.*
- 3 *Bǎ guàhào fēi jiā shàng yí gòng yào duōshao qián?*
- 4 *Tā méi bǎ bāoguǒdān tián hǎo.*
- 5 *Yóukè méi bǎ Gùgōng hǎohāor kànyikàn.*
- 6 *Shòupiàoyuán liú gěi le Wáng xiānsheng liǎng zhāng hǎo piào.*
- 7 *Wàiguó zhuānjiā yīnggāi jì xiàlai jùchǎng de diànhuà hàomǎ.*
- 8 *Shòuhuòyuán bú yuànyì mài gěi tā sīchóu chènshān.*
- 9 *Dàifu yào sòng bìngrén dào yīyuàn.*
- 10 *Wǒ yí ge Zhōngguó péngyou yì tiān néng xī wán liǎng bāo yān.*

Exercise 18.2

- 1 *xiǎng, nín, zěn, yì, sī, zhì (心).*
- 2 *qǐng, shuō, xiè, huà (ì).*
- 3 *wèi, shòu, yuán, ma, wèn, hào (口).*
- 4 *jìn, hái, guò, zhè, yuán, biān (ì).*
- 5 *bù, nà, yóu, dōu (ß).*

Exercise 18.3

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 1 东西、东边。 | 2 外国、中国。 |
| 3 售货员、售票员。 | 4 毛衣、衣服。 |
| 5 电影、电话、电报。 | 6 星期二、星期四。 |
| 7 地图、地方、地址。 | 8 收件人、寄件人。 |

Exercise 18.4

Mr King is a very nice person but he has one small defect, he really likes spending money. If he goes to buy a shirt, he ends up with three, if you want him to buy a magazine he buys you ten. He says they were all very interesting so he bought them all. How can you feel relaxed if you let him go and do the shopping? 王先生人很好,但是他有一个小毛病,他很喜欢花钱。去买一件衬衫,他就买三件;你要他买一本杂志,就给你买十本。他说都很有意思,所以都买了。让他去买东西,你怎么能放心呢?

Exercise 18.5

- 1 (Zài) Zhōngguó yóudiànjú kěyǐ dǎ chángtú diànhuà.
- 2 Zhè shì shōujù, qǐng shōu hǎo.
- 3 Qǐng tián zhè zhāng bāoguǒdān. Bǎ shōujiànren hé jìjiànren de dìzhǐ hé xìngmíng (tián) xiě qīngchū.
- 4 Yóupiào tiē hǎo le ma? Hái méi yǒu ne.
- 5 Jì shū hěn máfan, dànshi (hěn) zhíde.

- 1 (在)中国邮电局可以打长途电话。
- 2 这是收据,请收好。
- 3 请填写这张包裹单,把收件人和寄件人的地址和姓名(填)写清楚。
- 4 邮票贴好了吗?还没有呢。
- 5 寄书很麻烦,但是(很)值得。

Exercise 19.1

- 1 硬卧跟软卧一样吗?不一样,软卧比硬卧贵多了。
- 2 硬卧跟硬座有什么不一样?硬座比硬卧便宜得多。
- 3 你跟他一样不喜欢听音乐吗?不,我很喜欢听古典音乐。
- 4 我跟我的未婚妻一样浪漫,都喜欢写诗。
- 5 在欧洲日本电视机跟在中国一样难买吗?

- 1 Is a hard sleeper the same as a soft sleeper? No, a soft sleeper is much more expensive than a hard sleeper.
- 2 What's the difference between a hard seat and a hard sleeper? A hard seat is much cheaper than a hard sleeper.
- 3 Are you and she alike in not enjoying listening to music? No, I like listening to classical music very much.

- 4 I am as romantic as my fiancée, we both like writing poetry.
 5 Are Japanese TVs as hard to buy in Europe as they are in China?

Exercise 19.2

- 1 国际饭店比北京饭店贵百分之五十。
- 2 水电费比去年贵百分之十。
- 3 下铺比上铺贵百分之二十。
- 4 打长途电话比打电报贵百分之多少? 贵百分之二百。
- 5 日本衣服比中国衣服贵百分之三百。
- 6 苹果不好吃, 我只吃了四分之一。
- 7 外国烟好抽, 这包已经抽了三分之二。
- 8 音乐会的票昨天卖了八分之七。
- 9 国产电视比外国电视便宜一倍。
- 10 在中国美国专家比英国专家多十倍。

Exercise 19.3

- 1 坐火车比坐公共汽车快多了。
- 2 开飞机的人工资很高。
- 3 在中国骑自行车的人非常多。
- 4 有的人喜欢骑摩托车, 因为很自由。
- 5 英国人十七岁才可以开车。

Exercise 19.4

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1 Hot dog. | 2 Hamburger. |
| 3 Coca Cola. | 4 Yamaha. |
| 5 Canada. | 6 Cuba. |
| 7 Cambridge. | 8 Warsaw. |
| 9 Washington. | 10 Mrs Thatcher. |

Exercise 19.5

- 1 The Chinese mid-Autumn Festival falls on the 15th day of the 8th lunar month. On that evening everybody will look at the moon and eat mooncakes(!).
- 2 Tang poems are very famous and also very interesting. Students of Chinese will find them all worth looking at.
- 3 It's certainly fun to go shopping with friends.
- 4 What is your surname? And what is your Christian/given name? I'll make a note of them both if that's OK with you.
- 5 If you have a student card and a preferential card (yellow card), you pay the same price as the Chinese on the train, plus you can pay in RMB.

Exercise 20.1

- 1 niàn. 2 biàn. 3 fānyì. 4 xiě. 5 huàn.

Exercise 20.2

1 F 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 F 8 F 9 T 10 T 11 F

Exercise 20.3

- 1 凡是中国人喜欢吃中国菜。
- 2 凡是在中国银行换钱，牌价都一样。
- 3 活期存款和定期存款利息率不同。
- 4 我今天非把旅行支票换成美元不可。
- 5 去国外，非带护照不可，否则不能出境。
- 6 历史上亚洲和非洲很不一样。
- 7 他(她)的电话号码还记得吗？千万别忘了明天给他(她)打电话。
- 8 欧洲国家政治上大同小异。
- 9 不管你签了字没有，我都要看护照。
- 10 不管营业员点了几次钱，他也要点一次。
- 11 你的意思是除非碰到他才认识认识，对不对？
- 12 除非有规定，我才这么办。

- 1 All Chinese like eating Chinese food.
- 2 Any branch of the Bank of China has the same exchange rate for changing money.
- 3 Current accounts and deposit accounts have different rates of interest.
- 4 I have to change my traveller's cheques into US dollars today.
- 5 When you go abroad you have to take your passport (with you) otherwise you can't leave the country.
- 6 Asia and Africa are very different from a historical point of view.
- 7 Do you still remember his (her) telephone number? Don't forget to give him (her) a call tomorrow whatever you do.
- 8 Politically speaking European countries are pretty much the same with a few minor differences.
- 9 Regardless of whether you've signed (your name) or not, I want to look at your passport.
- 10 No matter whether the bank clerk had counted the money several times or not, he wanted to (had to) count it (once).
- 11 What you're saying is that you'll only get to know him if you happen to bump into him, is that it?
- 12 I won't do it like this unless there are regulations (to that effect).

Exercise 20.4

- 1 *Wǒ jīntiān gěi nǐ tiān le bù shǎo máfan. Yíngyèyuán: Méi shénme, huānyíng nǐ míngtiān zài lái.*

- 2 Tā jīntiān běnlái yào qù yínháng huàn qián dànshi tā wàng le bǎ lǚxíng zhīpiào dài lai.
- 3 Nǐ huáiyí tā shénme? Wǒ bù zhīdao, kěshì wǒ bù xǐhuan tā nà ge yàngzi.
- 4 Dìngqī cúnkuǎn de lì(xī)lǜ bǐ huóqī cúnkuǎn (yào) gāo de duō.
- 5 Kāi chē de bù yīnggāi hē jiǔ.

- 1 我今天给你添了不少麻烦。营业员：没什么，欢迎你明天再来。
- 2 她今天本来要去银行换钱，但是她忘了把旅行支票带来。
- 3 你怀疑他什么？我不知道，可是我不喜欢他那个样子。
- 4 定期存款的利(息)率比活期存款(要)高得多。
- 5 开车的不应该喝酒。

Exercise 21.1

- 1 hǎoxiàng. 2 xiàng, xiàng. 3 xiàng, xiàng.
- 4 hǎoxiàng. 5 xiàng, hǎoxiàng.

Exercise 21.2

- 1 bèi, jiào, ràng. 2 shòu. 3 bèi, ràng, jiào.
- 4 shòu. 5 bèi, ràng, jiào.

Exercise 21.3

- 1 dài. 2 dài. 3 chuān. 4 dài. 5 chuān.

Exercise 21.4

- 1 Kěyǐ liǎojiě Zhōngguó rén shēnghuó de gègè fāngmiàn.
 - 2 Tāmen zài Hángzhōu.
 - 3 Tāmen yìbiān chīzhe sānmíngzhì, yìbiān liáo tiān(r).
 - 4 Zhōngguó rén xǐhuan zhào xiàng. Tāmen de zhàoxiàngjī yǒu lǎoshì de, yě yǒu xīnshì de.
 - 5 Rìběn zhàoxiàngjī tèbié shòu huānyíng.
 - 6 Zhíyè zhàoxiàng de hěn duō.
 - 7 Zhōngguó rén bù xǐhuan yí ge rén chū qu wán(r).
 - 8 Zhāng Xīqún shì Sūzhōu rén. Tā lái Hángzhōu bàn shì(!).
 - 9 Tā xīnlǐ bú tài gāoxìng.
 - 10 Wǒmen shòuguó jiàoyù de rén yě yǒu yìdiǎn zhǒngzú piānjiàn.
 - 11 Tā wánquán tóngyì tā de shuōfǎ.
 - 12 Yīnwèi chéngrèn cuòwù dēngyú gǎi le yíbàn(r) le.
- 1 可以了解中国人生活的各个方面。
 - 2 他们在杭州。
 - 3 他们一边吃着三明治一边聊天(儿)。
 - 4 中国人喜欢照相。他们的照相机有老式的，也有新式的。

- 5 日本照相机特别受欢迎。
- 6 职业照相的很多。
- 7 中国人不喜欢一个人出去玩(儿)。
- 8 张锡群是苏州人。他来杭州办事。
- 9 她心里不太高兴。
- 10 我们受过教育的人也有点种族偏见。
- 11 他完全同意他的说法。
- 12 因为承认错误等于改了一半(儿)了。

Exercise 21.5

- 1 In some ways Chinese and foreigners are pretty similar – they both like to go out and enjoy themselves and seek paradise on earth! Who doesn't want to live comfortably, wear nice clothes and eat well? The Chinese are no exception. In the past there were very few Chinese tourists but now they are getting more and more numerous every year.
- 2 It is very difficult to understand another nationality (ethnic group), it's not even easy to understand your own! The Chinese people are a very ancient people. Their history and culture are very different from our own, let alone their script! Learning Chinese is not only very interesting but also of use to us as individuals.

Exercise 21.6

- 1 *Zánmen yìbiān tán jiàoyù yìbiān kàn rìluò ba.*
- 2 *'Zì qī qī rén' shì yí jù hěn zhíde zhùyì de chéngyǔ.*
- 3 *Yīnwei Xiānggǎng wèntí, Zhōng、Yīng guānxi biàn de hěn fùzá.*
- 4 *Tā shì wǒ de tóngshì suǒyǐ wǒ de yìjiàn dāngrán (huì) shòu yǐngxiǎng.*
- 5 *Nǐ jīnnián lián yì tiān jià dōu méi yǒu (fàng), nánguài nǐ nàme (or zhème) lèi.*
- 6 *Tā jīntiān lián yí ge sānmíngzhì dōu méi chī, tā zěnme bú è ne?*

- 1 咱们一边谈教育，一边看日落吧。
- 2 “自欺欺人”是一句很值得注意的成语。
- 3 因为香港问题，中、英关系变得很复杂。
- 4 他是我的同事，所以我的意见当然(会)受影响。
- 5 你今年连一天假都没有(放)，难怪你那么(or 这么)累。
- 6 她今天连一个三明治都没吃，怎么不饿呢？

Exercise 22.1

- 1 *Tāmen lái de shíhou guā dà fēng.*
- 2 *Tā gěi tā jǐ ge guàntóu hé yìxiē shuǐguǒ.*
- 3 *Tā juéde bǎ shū jì dào Yīngguó hěn guì.*
- 4 *Tā dǎsuàn bǎ yìxiē zhòng de dōngxi fàng zài shǒutíbāo lǐ.*

- 5 Tā juéde tā zài Zhōngguó de yì nián guò de hěn kuài. Tā yòng 'guāngyīn sī jiàn, rìyuè rú suō' zhè jù chéngyǔ lái miáoxiě zhè diǎn.
- 6 Tā shuō Wáng Yǒngshòu shì dìdìdào dào de Zhōngguótōng, gēn Zhōngguó rén dǎchéng yípiàn.
- 7 Tā xué dào le hěn duō dōngxi (tā xué de hěn hǎo) yīnwei tā shuō 'jīnnián shōuhuò hěn dà'.
- 8 Shì guóchǎn de.
- 9 Yīnwei tā wàng le bǎ jìngtóugài dǎkāi (le).
- 10 Yīnwei tā de yuánzhūbǐ huài le.
- 11 Hái kěyǐ fàng jiàngyóu hé cù.
- 12 Yīnwei tā juéde Shǐ Àilǐ de péngyou tài duō le.
- 13 Lǐ xiānsheng xià ge xīngqīwǔ guò shēng rì. Nà ge shíhou tāmen dàgài zài Yīngguó.
- 14 Tā shǔ hú.
- 15 Yīnwei tā bù xǐhuan gēn péngyou gào bié.
- 16 Tā dǎsuàn děng Shǐ Àilǐ hé Wáng Yǒngshòu zài lái Zhōngguó kāi yí ge liánhuānhuì.
- 17 Tāmen (de) fēijī xiàwǔ sì diǎn sìshí qīfēi. Tāmen yīnggāi sān diǎn (zhōng) dào.
- 18 Yīnwei tā bù xiǎng zài gào yí cì bié. (NB bù xiǎng not bú yào)
- 19 Tā ràng tāmen kàn tā de liǎn, dōu hóng le.
- 20 Yīnwei Lǐ tàitai bú (shì) kāi chē (de).

- 1 他们来的时候刮大风。
- 2 他给她几个罐头和一些水果。
- 3 她觉得把书寄到英国很贵。
- 4 她打算把一些重的东西放在手提包里。
- 5 他觉得他在中国的一年过得很快。他用“光阴似箭”，“日月如梭”这句成语来描写这点。
- 6 他说王永寿是地地道道的中国通，跟中国人打成一片。
- 7 她学到了很多(她学得很好)因为她说“今年收获很大”。
- 8 是国产的。
- 9 因为他忘了把镜头盖打开(了)。
- 10 因为他的圆珠笔坏了。
- 11 还可以放酱油和醋。
- 12 因为他觉得史爱理的朋友太多了。
- 13 李先生下个星期五过生日，那个时候他们大概在英国。
- 14 他属虎。
- 15 因为她不喜欢跟朋友告别。
- 16 他打算等史爱理和王永寿再来中国开一个联欢会。
- 17 他们的(的)飞机下午四点四十起飞。他们应该三点(钟)到。

- 18 因为她不想再告一次别。
 19 她让他们看她的脸，都红了。
 20 因为李太太不(是)开车(的)。

Exercise 22.2

- Li** There you are (welcome, welcome). Come in.
Mrs Li Is it cold outside?
S A bit. It's very windy, we were cycling against the wind, it was really strenuous.
K This is a little token of our regard. (*He gives Mrs Li several tins and some fruit.*)
Li You're too kind, you've gone to too much expense again.
S It's nothing, it's just a small token.
Li Well thank you both, but good friends shouldn't stand on ceremony.
Mrs Li Stop hanging about (don't keep standing) in the hall, come inside and sit down and warm up.
Li Would you like tea or coffee?
K Tea I think.
Mrs Li Ah, Aili, you're going back soon, so today is really your 'last supper', what a (great) shame.
S Don't say that. When I hear that I feel really uncomfortable.
Mrs Li Have you finished packing?
S Almost.
Mrs Li If you need any help don't hesitate to say so, for goodness sake don't stand on ceremony.
S I wouldn't, but really there isn't anything. I've posted (mailed) off most of the books, (gosh) the postage cost a fortune but there was no way round it.
Li Will you (your luggage) be overweight?
S Normally it doesn't matter if you're two or three kilos over. I'm planning to put some of the heavy things in my hand luggage. I've already shared out tapes and things amongst friends. I'll give you the classical tapes of Beethoven, Mozart and so on.
Li Great! Thanks. (*Turning to King*) Yongshou, you've been teaching for a year now, what thoughts do you have on it all? I've heard that in a way you'd like to stay on in China, is that true?
K This is called 'enjoying yourself so much that you forget to go home', but recently my parents haven't been too well so I want to go back and take stock before deciding anything. Ah - a year has passed really quickly, how time flies.

- Li** You're a real old China hand, as Chinese as the Chinese. No wonder your students like you so much, hard-working (conscientious), capable plus a great sense of humour. Aili, you don't want to leave either do you?
- S** No, I've really got a lot out of this year. What a pity I can't stay any longer.
- Li** You really are returning with a sack full of goodies!
- S** I suppose you could put it like that.
- Mrs Li** Come and eat. I've made the dumplings and they're cooking. Let's have some wine first. Here's a plate of hors d'oeuvres. Wenhua, how about opening the wine?
- Li** This is a pretty good bottle. It's white wine from (made by) a joint venture. Most Chinese wine is sweet but we know that you're not too keen on sweet wines. Right, bottoms up! Bon voyage (safe journey) and come back soon!
- S** Here's to your good health and your heart's desire!
- Li** Let's take a few photos. Hang on (wait though) let's take them after the dumplings have come, there'll be more of a Chinese atmosphere (flavour!) then. Ah, here they are.
- K** Have you got a flash?
- Li** Yes. Is everybody ready? Smile please! Oh, I've forgotten to take the lens cap off.
- Mrs Li** You're so muddleheaded (you're such a twit!), wasting (other) people's expressions, now hurry up!
- K** I'll take a few snaps too. When I've had them developed, I'll post (mail) them to you. Have you got our address in England?
- Li** No.
- K** I'll write it down for you. Aili, have you got a pen? My ballpoint doesn't work (is broken).
- S** Yes, here you are. Zhou Dejin, your dumplings are really delicious, next time you'll definitely have to teach me how to make them.
- Mrs Li** No problem (fine), I hope you'll come back as soon as possible . . . the soya sauce and vinegar are both here.
- S** Thanks. I'll have a little soya sauce. There's no way that a person like me can take vinegar (be jealous), ha ha!
- Mrs Li** You see, Yongshou, if you were to stay for another year there'd be absolutely no problem!
- K** I'm quieter and more stable than Aili. She has friends all over the world. If anybody's going to be jealous it would certainly be me!
- S** What rubbish my dear! How many female students of yours have told me how handsome (attractive) you are!

- Li** Come on, let's have another drink. May our friendship last for ever! Bottoms up!
- K** Next Friday is your birthday, (Mr/teacher) Li, what a shame that we'll have already left China by then so we're going to propose a toast to you now and wish you 'a life as long as the Southern Mountain and as blessed as the Eastern Sea' in advance. We've also got you a little something.
- Li** You can't do that! You've already given (us) some things when you came, how come you're giving some more?
- S** They were for you both, this is a birthday present. We hope you can add a little tiger energy to the Year of the Tiger!
- Li** You really shouldn't have.
- Mrs Li** What's the matter Aili? Don't cry, we'll meet again some day(!) Come back (again) after you've graduated.
- S** Don't take any notice of me. It's OK (it's nothing), I'm just being sentimental! Whenever I part from friends, I always think of the phrase 'meeting and parting are both difficult'.
- Mrs Li** That is true. Your coming from so many thousands of miles away was really quite something but you'll still have plenty of opportunities to come to China in the future.
- Li** How about our having a get-together when you come back? Come on, another toast, to our meeting again next year or the year after.
- Mrs Li** You have to (can't not) go back, this time Aili, you've still got one year of studying to do but later on there'll be masses of opportunities.
- Li** When's the plane leaving?
- K** 4.40 pm. We should get there by 3.
- Li** We'll come and see you off eh?
- S** There's no need. The airport's miles away, it's much too inconvenient. Let's count this evening as our goodbye otherwise I won't be able to stand it if we have to say yet another one.
- Li** We'll see. If I can get off class a bit earlier we'll definitely go. All right, that's enough of that (the subject's closed). Let's drink a last toast.
- Mrs Li** No more for me (I've had it!), I'll be drunk if I drink any more. Look, my face is all red.
- Li** Never mind, you're not driving! Come on, joy and happiness to us all! Bottoms up!
- Mrs Li, K and S** } Bottoms up!

Exercise 22.3

- 1 Zhǔnbèi hǎo le ma? Wǒ liǎng diǎn zhōng jiù yào zǒu le.
- 2 Yúnnán zài Zhōngguó de xīnán bù.
- 3 Bù kěyǐ bǎ zhàoxiàngjī jiè gěi tā.
- 4 Wǒ yǒu bǎifēn zhī sìshí de bǎwò.
- 5 Yīngguó de shēnghuófēi bǐ Zhōngguó guì duō le (or guì de duō).
- 6 Gǔdiǎn yīnyuè gēn xiàndài yīnyuè yīyàng hǎo tīng.
- 7 Fánshì lǎoshī dōu xǐhuan jiāo shū.
- 8 Chúfēi nǐ yuánliàng wǒ, wǒ cái bù kǔ.
- 9 Zài guówài shíjiān hěn cháng, kǒngpà fēi huàn qián bùkě.
- 10 Shàngjí hǎoxiàng bù xǐhuan tā, bù zhīdao shénme yuányīn.
- 11 Nǐ dài shang tàiyángjìng qù cānjiā liánhuānhuì tài bù héshì ne!
- 12 Tā bèi dǎ le yì tā hútú.
- 13 Shèhuìzhǔyìzhě yīnggāi tóngqíng qióng rén.
- 14 Wǒ bù tóngyì nǐ – tā bìng bú shì ge huài rén.
- 15 Qǐng nǐ bǎ èrshí'èr kè de kèwén fānyì chéng Yīngwén.

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
à	啊	4	ah, oh (expressing sudden realization)
àiren	爱人	2	husband, wife
āiyā	哎呀	20	oh dear (expressing surprise)
àn (zhào)	按(照)	8	according to, on the basis of
ānjìng	安静	5	quiet
ba	吧	2	particle indicating suggestion
bā	八	14	eight
bǎ	把	18	preposition showing disposal; also MW for things with handles
bàba	爸爸	7	daddy, dad
bái	白	22	white; blank
bǎi	百	19	hundred
bǎifēn zhī -	百分之 -	19	per cent
bān	搬	8	remove, move
bàn	半	7	half
bàn	办		handle, attend to, do
bàn dào	办到	10	get something done, accomplish
bàn shì	办事	21	arrange for something to be done

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>bànfǎ</i>	办法		method
<i>bàng</i>	棒	11	excellent (coll.)
<i>bāngmáng</i>	帮忙	19	help, do a favour
<i>bāngzhù</i>	帮助		help
<i>bànlǐ</i>	办理	20	conduct, handle, transact
<i>bāo</i>	包	14	packet (of), package
<i>bāo</i>	包	22	make (<i>jiǎozi</i>); to wrap; include
<i>bào (zhǐ)</i> MW <i>zhāng</i> or <i>fēn(r)</i>	报(纸) 张、份儿	11	newspaper
<i>bǎocún</i>	保存	20	keep, preserve
<i>bāoguǒ</i>	包裹	18	parcel, package
<i>bāoguǒdān</i>	包裹单	18	parcel form
<i>bāokuò</i>	包括	9	include
<i>bāo shàng</i>	包上		wrap up
<i>bào xiāo</i>	报销		reimbursement of expenses
<i>bǎwò</i>	把握		certainty
<i>bēi</i>	杯	2	cup (ful)
<i>běi</i>	北	17	north
<i>Bèiduōfēn</i>	贝多芬	22	Beethoven
<i>Běihǎi Gōngyuán</i>	北海公园	10	Beihai Park
<i>Běijīng Dàxué</i>	北京大学	4	Beijing University
<i>Běijīng Fàndiàn</i>	北京饭店	7	Beijing Hotel
<i>Běijīng Yǔyán Xuéyuàn</i>	北京语言 学院	7	Beijing Languages Institute (Now known as the Beijing Language [and Culture] University)
<i>bēizi</i>	杯子	6	cup
<i>bèizi</i> MW <i>chuáng</i>	被子 床	6	duvet, quilt
<i>běn</i>	本	14	MW for books, magazines
<i>bèn</i>	笨		stupid
<i>běndì</i>	本地	21	this locality
<i>béng</i>	甬	20	needn't
<i>běnlái</i>	本来		originally

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>běnrén</i>	本人	20	in person; oneself
<i>bǐ</i>	比	7	compared with
<i>biàn</i>	变	10	change
<i>biǎoqíng</i>	表情	22	expression; to express one's feelings
<i>biāozhǔn</i>	标准	8	criterion; standard
<i>bié</i>	别	4	don't
<i>bǐfang shuō</i>	比方说	11	for example
<i>bǐjiào</i>	比较	7	relatively
<i>bīng</i>	兵	7	soldier
<i>bìng</i>	并	10	negative emphasizer
<i>bīngguì</i>	冰柜	6	freezer
<i>bīngxiāng</i>	冰箱	5	refrigerator
<i>bìngrén</i>	病人		patient, sick person
<i>bǐrú</i>	比如	10	for example, such as
<i>bìxiūkè(chéng)</i>	必修课(程)	22	obligatory or required course
<i>bìyè</i>	毕业	22	graduate
<i>bō</i>	拨	16	dial
<i>bōlibēi</i>	玻璃杯	6	glass (tumbler)
<i>bǔ</i>	捕		arrest
<i>bù</i>	布		cloth
<i>bù</i>	部	15	MW for films
<i>bù</i>	不	1	not
<i>bù shǎo</i>	不少	19	quite a bit, quite a few
<i>bú shì ... ér shì</i>	不是...而是	11	not ... but
<i>bú shì ... jiù shì</i>	不是...就是	11	if it's not ... then it's ...
<i>bù tóng</i>	不同	20	different
<i>bù yuǎn wàn lǐ</i>	不远万里	22	not considering
<i>ér lái</i>	而来		10 000 <i>li</i> too far to come
<i>bù zěnmeyàng</i>	不怎么样	4	not up to much
<i>bù ... le</i>	不...了	5	not ... any more
<i>búbì</i>	不必		not have to
<i>búcuò</i>	不错	4	pretty good
<i>búdàn ... érqǐě</i>	不但...而且		not only ... but also

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>bùdé bù</i>	不得不	9	cannot but, have to
<i>bùduì</i>	部队	7	army
<i>bùfen</i>	部分	9	part, section
<i>bùguǎn</i>	不管		no matter
<i>bùguò</i>	不过	22	but, however, only
<i>bùyòng</i>	不用	22	need not
<i>bùzhì</i>	布置	5	decorate
<i>cāi</i>	猜	11	guess
<i>cái</i>	才	11	not . . . until . . . ; only
<i>cài</i>	菜	4	dish, vegetable
<i>càidān</i>	菜单	9	menu
<i>cǎisè</i>	彩色	5	colour; multicoloured
<i>cānjiā</i>	参加	8	join; attend
<i>cāo xīn</i>	操心	20	worry about
<i>cèsuǒ</i>	厕所	6	toilet
<i>chá</i>	茶	1	tea
<i>chá</i>	查	11	check; investigate
<i>chà</i>	差		lack, short of
<i>chá zìdiǎn</i>	查字典	11	consult a dictionary
<i>chábēi</i>	茶杯	9	teacup
<i>chàbudoō</i>	差不多	22	almost, nearly
<i>chágǔǎn</i>	茶馆	10	teahouse
<i>chájī</i>	茶几	6	coffee table
<i>cháng (cháng)</i>	常(常)	7	often
<i>cháng</i>	长	11	long
<i>Chángchéng</i>	长城		Great Wall
<i>chángshòu</i>	长寿	16	long life
<i>chángtú diànhuà</i>	长途电话	18	long-distance telephone call
<i>chǎnpǐn</i>	产品	22	product
<i>chǎojīdàn</i>	炒鸡蛋	9	scrambled eggs
<i>chāozhòng</i>	超重	22	overweight
<i>chātóu</i>	插头	6	plug (electric)
<i>cháyè</i>	茶叶	9	tea (leaves)
<i>chāzi</i>	叉子	6	fork
<i>chāzuò</i>	插座	6	socket
<i>chēkù</i>	车库	6	garage
<i>chéng</i>	成		become

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>chéng qiān</i>	成千上万	9	thousands and thousands
<i>shàng wàn</i>			
<i>chēnghū</i>	称呼	21	form of address; to address
<i>chéngniánrén</i>	成年人	11	adult
<i>chéngrèn</i>	承认	9	admit (e.g. mistake)
<i>chéngshì</i>	城市	20	city, town
<i>chèshān</i>	衬衫	14	shirt, blouse
<i>MW jiàn</i>	件		
<i>chī bǎo</i>	吃饱	5	eat one's fill
<i>chī cù</i>	吃醋	22	feel jealous
<i>chī fàn</i>	吃饭	3	eat (meal)
<i>chízi</i>	池子	6	sink
<i>(chōng)xǐ</i>	(冲)洗	22	develop (as of film); to wash smoke (v-o)
<i>chōu yān</i>	抽烟		
<i>chū</i>	出	10	come or go out
<i>chū chāi</i>	出差	21	be on a business trip
<i>chuān</i>	穿		wear (clothes)
<i>chuán</i>	船		boat (n)
<i>chuáng</i>	床	8	bed
<i>chuángdān</i>	床单	6	sheet
<i>chuángdiàn</i>	床垫	6	mattress
<i>chuānghu</i>	窗户	6	window
<i>chuānglián</i>	窗帘	6	curtain
<i>chúfáng</i>	厨房	5	kitchen
<i>chúfēi</i>	除非	20	unless
<i>chūjìng</i>	出境	20	leave the country
<i>chúle . . . (yǐwài)</i>	除了... (以外)	8	except, apart from
<i>chūntiān</i>	春天	10	spring (season)
<i>chūshì</i>	出示	20	show, produce
<i>cì</i>	次	11	time, occasion
		19	MW with number of train
<i>cídài</i>	磁带	22	tape
<i>cóng</i>	从	4	from (movement involved)
<i>cóngqián</i>	从前	9	previously, in the past

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>cù</i>	醋	6	vinegar; jealousy (as in love affair)
<i>cún qián</i>	存钱	20	deposit money
<i>cuòwù</i>	错误	21	mistake, error
<i>dà</i>	大	7	grown up; big
<i>dǎ diànbào</i>	打电报		send a telegram
<i>dǎ diànhuà</i>	打电话	16	telephone (v-o)
<i>dǎ gē(r)</i>	打嗝(儿)		belch, burp, hiccup (v-o)
<i>dǎ gǔ</i>	打鼓		beat a drum
<i>dǎ hān</i>	打鼾		snore (v-o)
<i>dǎ hāqian</i>	打哈欠		yawn (v-o)
<i>dǎ hū(lu)</i>	打呼噜		snore (colloq.) (v-o)
<i>dà máojīn</i>	大毛巾	6	bath towel
<i>dǎ pái</i>	打牌	10	play cards or mahjong
<i>dǎ pìgu</i>	打屁股		spank (v-o)
<i>dǎ qì</i>	打气		pump, inflate (v-o)
<i>dǎ qiú</i>	打球		play ball
<i>dǎ tàijíquán</i>	打太极拳	10	do taijiquan
<i>dǎ zhēn</i>	打针		give/have an injection
<i>dǎ zì</i>	打字		type (v-o)
<i>dǎchéng yípiàn</i>	打成一片	22	become one with, identify with
<i>dàgài</i>	大概		probably
<i>dàhòutiān</i>	大后天	16	day after the day after tomorrow
<i>dāi</i>	呆	10	stay (v)
<i>dài</i>	带	20	bring; take
<i>dài</i>	戴	21	wear (hats, gloves, glasses etc.)
<i>dàibiǎo</i>	代表	9	representative
<i>dàifu</i>	大夫		doctor
<i>dàjiā</i>	大家	15	everybody
<i>dǎkāi</i>	打开	22	open (up); switch on
<i>dāndiào</i>	单调	7	monotonous, dull
<i>dāng</i>	当	5	serve as; be

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>dāngrán</i>	当然	9	of course, naturally
<i>dānrénchuáng</i>	单人床	6	single bed
<i>MW zhāng</i>	张		
<i>dānrénfángjiān</i>	单人房间	9	single room
<i>dànshì</i>	但是	4	but
<i>dānwèi</i>	单位	8	unit
<i>-dào</i>	到	7	manage to do action of verb up to; to
<i>dào</i>	到	17	arrive, go to
<i>dào... qù/lái</i>	到...去/ (来)	10	go/come to...; to arrive at...
<i>dào chù</i>	到处	10	everywhere
<i>dàoqī</i>	到期	20	become due, expire
<i>dàoshì</i>	倒是	11	indeed, as it happens
<i>dāozi</i>	刀子	6	knife
<i>dǎrǎo</i>	打扰	11	disturb
<i>dàrén</i>	大人		adult
<i>dàshēng (de)</i>	大声(地)	21	loudly
<i>dǎsuàn</i>	打算	22	intend, to plan
<i>dǎtīng</i>	打听	20	enquire
<i>dàtóng-xiǎoyì</i>	大同小异	20	similar in major area but different on minor points
<i>dàiyī</i>	大衣		overcoat
<i>MW jiàn</i>	件		
<i>de</i>	的	3	marker
<i>de shíhòu</i>	的时候	8	when
<i>Déguó</i>	德国		Germany
<i>děi</i>	得	5	must, need
<i>děng</i>	等	8	etc.
<i>děng</i>	等	19	wait
<i>děngyú</i>	等于	19	be equal to; be equivalent to
<i>dì</i>	地	10	locality, land; the earth
<i>dì</i>	第	11	ordinal prefix
<i>diǎn</i>	点	11	point, aspect
<i>diǎn</i>	点	20	count, check (e.g. money to see if correct)

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>diǎn zhōng</i>	点钟	3	o'clock
<i>diànbào</i>	电报	18	telegram
MW <i>fèn</i>	份		
<i>diàndēng</i>	电灯	6	electric light
<i>diànhuà (jī)</i>	电话(机)	6	telephone
<i>diànhuà hàomǎ</i>	电话号码		telephone number
<i>diànnǎo</i>	电脑	8	computer
<i>diǎnr (coll.)</i>	点儿	20	spot, small branch
<i>diànshàn</i>	电扇	6	electric fan
<i>diànshì (jī)</i>	电视(机)	5	television
MW <i>tái</i>	台		
<i>diànxiàn</i>	电线	6	electric cable
<i>diànyǐng</i>	电影	15	film
MW <i>bù</i>	部		
<i>dìdào</i>	地道	22	genuine
<i>dìdi</i>	弟弟	7	younger brother
<i>dìfang</i>	地方	5	place
<i>dìlǐ</i>	地理		geography
<i>dǐng</i>	顶	19	top, peak; MW for hats
<i>dǐng</i>	顶	22	go against
<i>dǐng</i>	订	9	order (in advance)
<i>dǐng</i>	订	19	book, reserve; subscribe to
<i>dìnghūn</i>	订婚	19	be or get engaged
<i>dìngqī cúnkuǎn</i>	定期存款	20	deposit account
<i>dírén</i>	敌人		enemy
<i>dītǎn</i>	地毯	6	carpet
<i>dìtú</i>	地图	14	map
MW <i>zhāng</i>	张		
<i>diū</i>	丢	20	lose
<i>dìxiōng</i>	弟兄		brothers
<i>dìzhǐ</i>	地址	18	address
<i>dōng (bianr)</i>	东(边儿)	17	east (side)
<i>dǒng</i>	懂	11	understand
<i>Dōngjīng</i>	东京		Tokyo
<i>dōngtiān</i>	冬天	8	winter
<i>dōngxi</i>	东西	14	thing(s)
<i>dōu</i>	都	4	both, all
<i>dòu</i>	逗	19	funny
<i>dú shū</i>	读书	5	study
<i>duǎn</i>	短	10	short (in length)

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>duì</i>	对	3	correct
<i>duì . . . lái shuō</i>	对...来说	11	as far as . . . /is concerned
<i>duìbuqǐ</i>	对不起	19	sorry; excuse me
<i>duìhuàn</i>	兑换	20	exchange (money)
<i>duìmiàn</i>	对面	17	opposite
<i>duìxiàng</i>	对象	3	steady boy- or girlfriend
<i>duìzhào</i>	对照	20	compare
<i>duō</i>	多	4	many; more
<i>duō</i>	多	11	more than, odd
<i>duō(me)</i>	多(么)	22	how
<i>duō de hěn</i>	多得很	22	very many
<i>duōshao</i>	多少	14	how many, how much
<i>duōshù</i>	多数	9	majority
<i>è</i>	饿	4	hungry
<i>èi</i>	欸	20	yes (verbal response to enquiry)
<i>ér</i>	而	19	but; and
<i>èr</i>	二	14	two (number)
<i>èrlóu</i>	二楼	6	first floor
<i>érqiě</i>	而且	9	moreover
<i>érzi</i>	儿子	5	son
<i>fādá</i>	发达	8	developed, advanced
<i>Fǎguó</i>	法国		France
<i>Fǎguórén</i>	法国人		French (person)
<i>fǎn'ér</i>	反而	10	on the contrary
<i>fàng (zài)</i>	放(在)	5	put (in or on)
<i>fàng jià</i>	放假	21	have a holiday or vacation
<i>fàng xīn</i>	放心	16	set one's mind at rest
<i>fāngbiàn</i>	方便	20	convenient
<i>fāngfèi</i>	房费	9	room charge
<i>fǎnguòlái</i>	反过来		conversely
<i>fāngjiān</i>	房间	5	room

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>fāngmiàn</i>	方面	9	aspect, respect
<i>fángzi</i>	房子	5	house
<i>MW suǒ/ge</i>	所/个		
<i>fángzū</i>	房租	8	rent (for house)
<i>fānqiézhī</i>	蕃茄汁	9	tomato juice
<i>fánsì</i>	凡是	20	every, any, all
<i>fàntīng</i>	饭厅	6	dining room
<i>fānyì</i>	翻译		translate, interpret
<i>fǎnzhèng</i>	反正	10	anyway, in any case
<i>fāxiàn</i>	发现		discover
<i>fāyīn</i>	发音	11	pronunciation
<i>fāzhǎn</i>	发展	21	develop
<i>fēicháng</i>	非常	4	extremely
<i>fēijī</i>	飞机	22	aeroplane
<i>MW jià</i>	架		
<i>(fēi) jīchǎng</i>	(飞)机场	22	airport
<i>fèijìn(r)</i>	费劲(儿)	22	strenuous, energy consuming
<i>féizào</i>	肥皂	9	soap
<i>MW kuài</i>	块		
<i>Fēizhōu</i>	非洲		Africa
<i>fēn</i>	分	14	portion; MW for money
<i>fēn</i>	分	22	divide; distribute; distinguish
<i>fèn(r)</i>	份(儿)		copy
<i>fēng</i>	封	17	MW for letter
<i>fēng</i>	风	22	wind
<i>féng shàng</i>	缝上		sew up
<i>féngrenjī</i>	缝纫机	8	sewing-machine
<i>MW tái</i>	台		
<i>fēnháng</i>	分行	20	branch (bank)
<i>fǒuzé</i>	否则	20	otherwise, or else
<i>fù</i>	付	9	pay
<i>fùjìn</i>	附近	10	nearby
<i>fùmǔ</i>	父母	8	parents
<i>fùnǚ</i>	妇女		woman
<i>fùqīn</i>	父亲		father
<i>fūrén</i>	夫人	22	Mrs; Madame (formal)

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>fúwù</i>	服务	9	service; to serve
<i>fúwùyuán</i>	服务员	7	attendant
<i>fùyú</i>	富于	22	rich in, full of
<i>fuzá</i>	复杂		complex, complicated
<i>gǎi</i>	改	21	alter, change, correct
<i>gān bēi</i>	干杯	22	drink a toast
<i>gǎn xìngqù</i>	感兴趣		be interested in something
<i>gànbù</i>	干部	10	cadre
<i>gāng</i>	刚	19	just
<i>gāngcái</i>	刚才	11	just now
<i>gānjìng</i>	干净		clean
<i>gǎnjué</i>	感觉	21	feeling, sense
<i>gǎnkuài</i>	赶快		hastily
<i>gǎnqíng</i>	感情	7	feeling, emotion
<i>gǎnxiǎng</i>	感想	22	reflections, thoughts
<i>gāo</i>	高	4	tall, high
<i>gāo bízi</i>	高鼻子	21	big nose
<i>gàobié</i>	告别	22	take leave of
<i>gàosu</i>	告诉		tell, let know
<i>gāoxìng</i>	高兴	2	happy
<i>gébì</i>	隔壁	18	next door
<i>gēge</i>	哥哥	7	elder brother
<i>gègè</i>	各个	21	each, every
<i>gěi</i>	给	2	to, for; give
<i>gēn</i>	跟	10	with; and
<i>gēn . . . yíyàng</i>	跟...一样	19	the same as . . .
<i>gèng</i>	更	11	even more, still more
<i>gēnshàng</i>	跟上	9	keep pace with
<i>gèrén</i>	个人		individual (person)
<i>gōngchǎng</i>	工厂	10	factory
<i>gōnggòng</i>	公共	9	public
<i>gōnggòngqìchē</i>	公共汽车		bus
<i>MW liàng</i>	辆		
<i>gōngjīn</i>	公斤	18	kilogram
<i>gōnglǐ</i>	公里		kilometre

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>gōngrén</i>	工人	7	worker
<i>gōngsī</i>	公司	9	company
<i>gōngyuán</i>	公园	10	park
<i>gōngzī</i>	工资	8	wages
<i>gōngzuò</i>	工作	7	work; to work
<i>gōngzuòzhèng</i>	工作证	9	ID card (employee's)
<i>gòu</i>	够	19	rather, quite; enough
<i>gòuwùzhīfùzhèng</i>	购物 支付证		preferential card (new type)
<i>guàhào</i>	挂号	18	register
<i>guàhàofèi</i>	挂号费	18	registration charge
<i>guài</i>	怪		strange, odd
<i>guǎn</i>	管	22	bother about; be in charge of
<i>guàng dà jiē</i>	逛大街	10	go window- shopping
<i>guāngpán bōfàngjī</i>	光盘 播放机	6	CD player (Note: the Chinese also use the English abbreviation 'CD'.)
<i>Guǎngdōng</i>	广东	10	Canton
<i>guāngyīn sì jiàn, rìyuè rú suǒ</i>	光阴似箭, 日月如梭	22	time flies
<i>guàntóu</i>	罐头	6	tin, can
<i>guānxi</i>	关系	7	relation(ship)
<i>gǔdiǎn</i>	古典	22	classical
<i>Gùgōng</i>	故宫	17	Forbidden City (Imperial Palace)
<i>guì</i>	贵	9	expensive
<i>guīdìng</i>	规定	20	rule, regulation
<i>guìtái</i>	柜台	18	counter
<i>guìxìng</i>	贵姓	16	may I ask your name?
<i>gǔlǎo</i>	古老		ancient
<i>guò</i>	过	5	pass, cross
<i>-guo</i>	过	9	verbal suffix
<i>guóchǎn</i>	国产	8	made in one's country
<i>Guójì Fàndiàn</i>	国际饭店	19	International Hotel

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>guójiā</i>	国家	8	country
<i>guǒjiàng</i>	果酱	9	jam
<i>guòjiǎng</i>	过奖	11	you flatter me
<i>guòqù</i>	过去		(the) past
<i>guówài</i>	国外	20	overseas, abroad
<i>hāhā</i>	哈哈	22	ha ha
<i>hái</i>	还	7	still, in addition
<i>háishi</i>	还是	5	or (used in questions)
<i>háishi</i>	还是	11	after all; still (emphatic)
<i>hǎishuǐ</i>	海水		sea-water
<i>háizi</i>	孩子	5	child
<i>hǎn</i>	喊	21	shout, cry out
<i>hángkōng</i>	航空	18	airmail
<i>Hángzhōu</i>	杭州	21	Hangzhou
<i>Hànyǔ</i>	汉语	4	Chinese language
<i>Hànzì</i>	汉字	11	Chinese character(s)
<i>hǎo</i>	好	1	good
<i>-hǎo</i>	好	11	do the action of the verb satisfactorily
<i>hào</i>	号	15	number, date
<i>hǎo chī</i>	好吃	5	tasty, delicious
<i>hǎo jǐ</i>	好几	19	a good many
<i>hàomǎ</i>	号码	20	number (e.g. telephone)
<i>hǎowán(r)</i>	好玩(儿)	19	entertaining, enjoyable
<i>hǎoxiàng</i>	好象	21	seem
<i>hǎoxiào</i>	好笑		funny
<i>hē</i>	喝	1	drink
<i>hé</i>	和	5	and
<i>héhuǒ</i>	合伙	21	form a company or partnership
<i>hēi-bái</i>	黑白	5	black and white
<i>hěn</i>	很	1	very
<i>héng</i>	横	16	horizontal
<i>héshì</i>	合适		suitable
<i>hézi qīyè</i>	合资企业	22	joint venture

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>hóng</i>	红	22	red
<i>hóngchá</i>	红茶	6	black tea (Indian)
<i>hòu</i>	厚		thick
<i>hòubianr</i>	后边儿	17	back, behind
<i>hòuhuì yǒu qī</i>	后会有期	22	we'll meet again some day
<i>hòunián</i>	后年	22	year after next
<i>hòutiān</i>	后天	16	day after tomorrow
<i>hòuzhě</i>	后者	22	the latter
<i>huā</i>	花	6	flowers; to spend
<i>huà</i>	话	21	remark, words(s)
<i>MW jù</i>	句		
<i>huá bīng</i>	滑冰	10	skate (<i>Lit.</i> slide ice)
<i>huà huàr</i>	画画儿		draw, paint (v-o)
<i>huá xuě</i>	滑雪		ski (v-o) (<i>Lit.</i> slide snow)
<i>huāchá</i>	花茶	6	jasmine tea
<i>huài</i>	坏	21	bad; broken
<i>huáiyí</i>	怀疑	20	suspect
<i>huán</i>	还		give or pay back, return
<i>huàn qián</i>	换钱	20	change money
<i>huángyóu</i>	黄油	9	butter
<i>huānyíng</i>	欢迎	5	welcome
<i>huāpíng</i>	花瓶儿	6	vase
<i>huàr</i>	画儿	6	painting
<i>MW zhāng</i>	张		
<i>huāyuán</i>	花园	6	garden
<i>huí</i>	回	5	return
<i>huì</i>	会	2	know how to, can; will
<i>huì</i>	会	9	will (showing possibility)
<i>huí guó</i>	回国	19	return to your own country
<i>hújiāo</i>	胡椒	6	pepper
<i>hǔnián</i>	虎年	22	year of the Tiger
<i>huò (zhě)</i>	或(者)	9	or, perhaps
<i>huò</i>	货	8	goods
<i>huǒchē</i>	火车	19	train
<i>huǒchēzhàn</i>	火车站	19	railway station

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>huópo</i>	活泼		lively
<i>huóqī cúnkuǎn</i>	活期存款	20	current account
<i>huǒtuǐ</i>	火腿	9	ham
<i>hǔqì</i>	虎气	22	vigour
<i>húshuō</i>	胡说	22	nonsense; talk nonsense
<i>hútu</i>	糊涂	22	muddle-headed
<i>hùzhào</i>	护照	20	passport
<i>jí</i>	即	9	that is, <i>viz</i>
<i>jǐ</i>	几	3	how many (less than ten)?; several
<i>jǐ</i>	挤	8	crowded; squeeze
<i>jì</i>	寄	18	post, mail (v)
<i>jì (xiàlai)</i>	记下来	16	note down, record
<i>jiā</i>	家	3	home; family
<i>jiā (shang)</i>	加(上)	8	add (on)
<i>jiǎ</i>	甲	17	A (as in A says . . .)
<i>jiājù</i>	家具	8	furniture
<i>jiān</i>	间	5	MW for room
<i>jiǎn</i>	剪		cut (as of hair)
<i>jiàn</i>	见	9	see; meet
<i>jiàn</i>	件	14	MW for piece, article, item e.g. clothing
<i>jiǎndān</i>	简单	8	simple
<i>Jiānéng</i>	佳能	21	Canon
<i>jiǎng</i>	讲	19	speak; to explain
<i>jiàngyóu</i>	酱油	6	soya sauce
<i>jiānjīdàn</i>	煎鸡蛋	9	fried egg(s)
<i>jiànkāng</i>	健康	22	healthy, sound
<i>jiànwén</i>	见闻	21	what one sees and hears
<i>jiànxíng</i>	饯行	22	give a farewell dinner
<i>jiāo</i>	教	7	teach
<i>jiào</i>	叫	7	call, be called
<i>jiàotáng</i>	教堂		church
<i>jiàoyù</i>	教育	21	education; to educate

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>jiàoyuán</i>	教员	7	teacher
<i>jiǎozi</i>	饺子	22	kind of ravioli, dumpling
<i>jiàozuò</i>	叫做	22	be called, be known as
<i>jiàqī</i>	假期		holidays, vacation
<i>jiàqián</i>	价钱	9	price
<i>jīběn (shang)</i>	基本(上)	20	basic(ally)
<i>jīdàn</i>	鸡蛋	9	egg
<i>jìde</i>	记得	20	remember
<i>jiē</i>	接	16	take hold of, receive; to meet
<i>jiē</i>	街		street
<i>jiè</i>	借		borrow; lend
<i>jié bīng</i>	结冰	10	freeze, ice over
<i>jié hūn</i>	结婚	3	marry, get married
<i>jiēchù</i>	接触	9	come into contact with
<i>jiēdài</i>	接待	20	receive; admit
<i>jiějie</i>	姐姐	7	elder sister
<i>jiěmèi</i>	姐妹		sisters
<i>jièmo</i>	芥末	6	mustard
<i>jièshào</i>	介绍	2	introduce
<i>jiēzhe</i>	接着	19	carry on; to follow
<i>jīguān</i>	机关	10	offices, organization
<i>jīhuì</i>	机会	22	opportunity, chance
<i>jìjiàn rén</i>	寄件人	18	sender
<i>jìjié</i>	季节	10	season (of year)
<i>-jìle</i>	极了	4	extremely
<i>jīn</i>	斤	14	catty (1/2 kilogram)
<i>jìn</i>	进	9	enter
<i>jìn</i>	近	17	near
<i>jìng</i>	敬	22	propose (a toast), toast
<i>jǐngchá</i>	警察		police, policeman
<i>jīngcháng</i>	经常	10	regularly, frequently
<i>jīngguò</i>	经过	19	go through, pass
<i>jǐnguǎn</i>	尽管	20	feel free to; even though, despite

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>jìngtóugài</i>	镜头盖	22	lens cap
<i>jìngzi</i>	镜子	6	mirror
<i>-jìnlai</i>	进来	8	verb + in
<i>jīnnián</i>	今年	7	this year
<i>jīntiān</i>	今天	4	today
<i>jǐnzǎo</i>	尽早	22	as soon as possible, at the earliest possible date
<i>jíshǐ</i>	即使	9	even if, even though
<i>jìshù</i>	技术	4	technique
<i>jìsuàn</i>	计算	20	count, to calculate
<i>jìsuànjī</i>	计算机	9	calculating machine, computer
<i>jiǔ</i>	酒	2	alcohol
<i>jiǔ</i>	九	14	nine
<i>jiù</i>	就	3	then; just, only, merely
<i>jiù</i>	旧		old
<i>jiǔpíng</i>	酒瓶	6	wine bottle
<i>jiùshì</i>	就是	11	precisely
<i>juéde</i>	觉得	21	feel
<i>juéduì</i>	绝对	22	absolute(ly)
<i>jùlèbù</i>	俱乐部		social club
<i>júzi zhī</i>	桔子汁	2	orange juice
<i>kāfēi</i>	咖啡	1	coffee
<i>kāi</i>	开	19	start; to open; to drive
<i>kāi chē de</i>	开车的	22	person who drives, driver
<i>kāiguān</i>	开关	6	switch (n)
<i>kāilǎng</i>	开朗		open (personality)
<i>kāishǐ</i>	开始	11	begin
<i>kāishuǐ</i>	开水	9	boiled water
<i>kàn</i>	看	5	look, see, watch, read
<i>kàn xì</i>	看戏		see; watch a play
<i>kǎomiànbāo</i>	烤面包	9	toast
<i>MW piàn</i>	片		

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
kě	可	21	emphasizes tone of speaker
kè	刻		quarter; carve
kě' ài	可爱		lovable
kěbúshì	可不是	21	exactly; that's just the way it is
kěkào	可靠		reliable
kěkě	可可	9	cocoa
kělián	可怜		pitiable; pitiful
kèmǎn	客满	16	sold out, full house
kěndìng	肯定	21	definite(ly); affirm
kěpà	可怕		terrifying, frightening
kèqì	客气	4	polite
kěshì	可是	8	but
kètīng	客厅	5	living-room, lounge
kèwén	课文	9	text
MW kè	课		
kěxī	可惜	10	it's a pity that
kěxiào	可笑		laughable, ridiculous
kěyǐ	可以	5	can, may
kǒngpà	恐怕		be afraid that . . .
kǒu	口	7	MW for family members
kū	哭	22	weep, cry
kuài	快	5	quick, fast
kuài	块	14	MW for money
kuàilè	快乐	22	happy, joyful
kuàizi	筷子	4	chopsticks
MW shuāng	双		
kùnnán	困难	11	difficult; difficulty
lā	拉	21	pull; to play (of stringed instrument)
là(de)	辣(的)		hot or spicy food
lái	来	4	come
lǎn	懒		lazy
làngfèi	浪费	22	waste, squander
làngmàn	浪漫	19	romantic

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>lǎngsòng</i>	朗诵	19	recite, read aloud with expression
<i>lǎo</i>	老	5	old
<i>lǎo</i>	老	22	always
<i>lǎobǎn</i>	老板		boss
<i>láojià</i>	劳驾	17	excuse me
<i>lǎorén</i>	老人	10	old people
<i>lǎoshī</i>	老师		teacher
<i>lǎoshì</i>	老式	21	old-fashioned
<i>lǎowài</i>	老外	21	'old foreigner'
<i>le</i>	了	3/4	particle <i>le</i>
<i>lěng</i>	冷	8	cold
<i>lěngpán</i>	冷盘	22	cold dish; hors d'oeuvres
<i>lí</i>	离	17	from (static)
<i>lǐ</i>	里		$\frac{1}{3}$ mile or $\frac{1}{2}$ kilometre
<i>-lǐ</i>	里	4	inside
<i>liǎ</i>	俩	3	two
<i>lián</i>	连		even (conj.)
<i>liǎn</i>	脸	22	face
<i>liáng</i>	凉	4	cool
<i>liǎng</i>	两	3	two (of a kind)
<i>liánhuānhuì</i>	联欢会	22	get together, party
<i>liànxí</i>	练习		exercise, practise (n and v)
<i>liáo tiān(r)</i>	聊天(儿)	10	chat
<i>liǎojiě</i>	了解	21	find out, understand, know
<i>líkāi</i>	离开	22	leave (place or person)
<i>lǐmào</i>	礼貌	21	courteous; manners
<i>líng</i>	零	14	zero
<i>lǐngdài</i>	领带		tie
<i>lǐngdǎo</i>	领导		leader(ship)
<i>lìng (wài)</i>	另(外)	20	another; separately
<i>(lín yù) pēntóu</i>	(淋浴)喷头	6	shower
<i>liú</i>	留	16	keep, remain; let grow; leave (behind or for somebody)
<i>liù</i>	六	14	six

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>liúli</i>	流利		fluent
<i>liúlián wàngfǎn</i>	流连忘返	22	enjoy oneself so much as to forget to go home
<i>liúxuéshēng</i>	留学生	7	student studying abroad
<i>lìwài</i>	例外		exception
<i>lǐwù</i>	礼物	22	present, gift
<i>MW jiàn/ge</i>	件/个		
<i>lìxī</i>	利息	20	interest (e.g. bank)
<i>lì(xī)lǜ</i>	利(息)率	20	rate of interest
<i>lóngtóu</i>	龙头	6	tap
<i>lóushàng</i>	楼上		upstairs
<i>lóutī</i>	楼梯	6	stairs, staircase
<i>lóuxià</i>	楼下	15	downstairs
<i>lù</i>	路		road
<i>lù yīn</i>	录音		record (v-o); recording (tape)
<i>lǜchá</i>	绿茶	6	green tea (Chinese)
<i>lǚguǎn</i>	旅馆	9	hotel
<i>Lúndūn</i>	伦敦		London
<i>lúnliú</i>	轮流	10	take turns; in turn
<i>lùrén</i>	路人	17	passerby, stranger
<i>lǚtú</i>	旅途	21	journey, trip
<i>lǚxiàngjī</i>	录像机	8	video recorder
<i>lǚxíng</i>	旅行	10	travel
<i>lǚxíng zhīpiào</i>	旅行支票	20	traveller's cheque
<i>lùyīnjī</i>	录音机	6	tape recorder
<i>lǚyóu</i>	旅游	21	tourism; to tour
<i>ma</i>	吗	2	question particle
<i>mǎ</i>	马		horse
<i>mà</i>	骂		swear at, curse
<i>máfan</i>	麻烦	5	trouble; troublesome
<i>mǎi</i>	买	14	buy
<i>mài</i>	卖	16	sell
<i>mǎi dōngxi</i>	买东西	14	go shopping
<i>māma</i>	妈妈	7	mummy, mum
<i>mǎn</i>	满	22	full; to reach the limit, expire
<i>màn</i>	慢	5	slow

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>mǎn zài ér guī</i>	满载而归	22	return with fruitful results
<i>máo</i>	毛	14	MW for money
<i>Máo Zhǔxí</i> <i>Jìniàntáng</i>	毛主席 纪念堂	17	Mao Zedong (Chairman Mao) Mausoleum
<i>máobìng</i>	毛病		defect
<i>máojīn</i>	毛巾	9	towel
<i>máojīnjià</i>	毛巾架	6	towel rail
<i>máoyī</i> MW <i>jiàn</i>	毛衣 件	14	sweater, woolly
<i>màozi</i>	帽子		hat
<i>mǎshàng</i>	马上		immediately
<i>méi</i>	没	3	not (used with <i>yǒu</i>)
<i>měi</i>	每	8	each, every
<i>méi shénme</i>	没什么	5	it's nothing
<i>méi (yǒu) guānxi</i>	没(有)关系	4	it doesn't matter
<i>Měiguó</i>	美国	18	USA, American
<i>Měiguórén</i>	美国人	11	American
<i>mèimei</i>	妹妹	7	younger sister
<i>měirén</i>	美人	21	beautiful woman
<i>méishìr</i>	没事儿	22	it's OK, it's nothing; have nothing planned
<i>Měiyuán</i>	美元	20	US dollar
<i>mén</i>	门	6	door, gate
<i>mǐ</i>	米	14	metre, rice
<i>miànfěn</i>	面粉	6	flour
<i>miànjīn</i> MW <i>tiáo</i>	面巾 条	6	face flannel
<i>miáoxiě</i>	描写	19	describe
<i>mìmi</i>	秘密		secret
<i>míngbai</i>	明白	20	understand; clear
<i>míngtiān</i>	明天	3	tomorrow
<i>míngzi</i>	名字	16	name (given)
<i>mínzu</i>	民族		nation
<i>Mòsikē</i>	莫斯科	19	Moscow
<i>mótuōchē</i> MW <i>liàng</i>	摩托车 辆		motorbike
<i>mǒu</i>	某	9	(a) certain
<i>Mòzhā tè</i>	莫扎特	22	Mozart

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>mùbiāo</i>	目标		objective
<i>mǔyǔ</i>	母语	11	mother tongue
<i>na</i>	哪	22	particle showing mood
<i>nǎ</i> (or <i>něi</i>)	哪	4	which?
<i>nà</i> (or <i>nèi</i>)	那	3	that
<i>ná chū</i>	拿出	19	take out
<i>nǎipíng</i>	奶瓶		milk bottle
<i>nàme</i>	那么	1	so, in that case
<i>nán</i>	男	3	male
<i>nán</i>	难	10	difficult
<i>nán</i>	南	17	south
<i>nánnǚ lǎoshào</i>	男女老少	10	men and women, old and young
<i>nánguài</i>	难怪	19	no wonder
<i>nàozhōng</i>	闹钟	6	alarm clock
<i>nǎr</i>	哪儿	3	where?
<i>nàr</i> (<i>nàlǐ</i>)	那儿(那里)	8	there
<i>ne</i>	呢	2	question particle
<i>néng</i>	能	16	be able to, can
<i>nénggàn</i>	能干	22	capable, competent
<i>ng</i>	嗯	4	hm, uh-huh
<i>nǐ</i>	你	1	you
<i>nián</i>	年		year
<i>niàn</i>	念	17	read aloud
<i>niánjì</i>	年纪	7	age
<i>niánqīng</i>	年轻	19	young
<i>Níkāng</i>	尼康		Nikon
<i>nǐmen</i>	你们		you (plural)
<i>nín</i>	您		you (polite form)
<i>Niújīn</i>	牛津		Oxford
<i>niúniǎi</i>	牛奶		milk
<i>nǚ</i>	女		female
<i>nǚ'ér</i>	女儿		daughter
<i>nuǎnhuo</i>	暖和	22	warm
<i>nuǎnqì</i>	暖气	6	central heating
<i>nuǎnqìpiàn</i>	暖气片		radiator
<i>nǚshēng</i>	女生	22	female student(s)
<i>ò</i>	哦	22	oh
<i>Ōuzhōu</i>	欧洲	10	Europe

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>pá</i>	爬	19	climb
<i>pà</i>	怕	21	fear, be afraid of
<i>pái</i>	排	15	row, line
<i>pái</i>	牌	20	plate; brand; card
<i>páijià</i>	牌价	20	market quotation (exchange rate)
<i>pàng</i>	胖		fat
<i>pángbianr</i>	旁边儿	21	side
<i>pǎo</i>	跑	10	run
<i>péi</i>	陪	5	accompany
<i>pèifú</i>	佩服		admire
<i>pèng(dào)</i>	碰到	20	bump (into)
<i>péngyou</i>	朋友	3	friend
<i>piānjiàn</i>	偏见	21	prejudice, bias
<i>piányi</i>	便宜	8	cheap
<i>piào</i>	票	15	ticket
<i>MW zhāng</i>	张		
<i>piàojià</i>	票价	19	ticket price
<i>piàoliang</i>	漂亮	5	beautiful, pretty
<i>píjiǔ</i>	啤酒	11	beer
<i>píng</i>	凭	9	rely on, depend on
<i>píng</i>	瓶	22	MW for bottles
<i>píngcháng</i>	平常	9	usually, ordinary, commonplace
<i>píngguǒ</i>	苹果	14	apple
<i>píngzi</i>	瓶子	6	bottle
<i>píqì</i>	脾气		temperament
<i>pòfèi</i>	破费	22	go to some expense
<i>pútáo</i>	葡萄		grape
<i>pútáojiǔ</i>	葡萄酒	22	wine
<i>pǔtōnghuà</i>	普通话	11	common spoken language (modern standard Chinese)
<i>qī</i>	七	14	seven
<i>qí</i>	骑	22	ride (as of horse, bicycle)
<i>qiān</i>	千		thousand
<i>qián</i>	钱	14	money
<i>qiān zì</i>	签字	20	sign; signature
<i>qiánbianr</i>	前边儿	17	front, in front of
<i>Qiánmén</i>	前门	17	Qianmen

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>qiānwàn</i>	千万	20	whatever you do
<i>qiánzhě</i>	前者	22	the former
<i>qiǎokèlì</i>	巧克力		chocolate
<i>MW kuài</i>	块		
<i>qìchē</i>	汽车	19	car
<i>MW liàng</i>	辆		
<i>qǐfēi</i>	起飞	22	take off (of aircraft)
<i>qíguài</i>	奇怪	10	strange
<i>qìhòu</i>	气候	10	climate
<i>qíng</i>	晴	10	fine, clear, bright (of weather)
<i>qǐng</i>	请	1	invite
<i>qǐng kè</i>	请客		invite somebody for a meal
<i>qīngchū</i>	清楚	11	clear; clearly
<i>Qīngdǎo</i>	青岛	11	Qingdao
<i>qíngkuàng</i>	情况	7	situation
<i>qīnmì</i>	亲密	21	close, intimate
<i>qióng (rén)</i>	穷(人)		poor (person)
<i>qíshí</i>	其实	9	actually, as a matter of fact
<i>qiūtiān</i>	秋天	10	autumn
<i>qǔ</i>	取	16	get, fetch
<i>qù</i>	去	3	go
<i>qǔ qián</i>	取钱	20	withdraw money
<i>quánlì</i>	权利		right(s)
<i>què</i>	却	9	however
<i>quèshí</i>	确实	22	really, indeed; true, certain
<i>qún</i>	群	10	MW for group, flock
<i>qǔqiánbiǎo</i>	取钱表	20	cash withdrawal form
<i>ràng</i>	让	22	let, to allow
<i>rè niúǎi</i>	热牛奶	9	hot milk
<i>rén</i>	人	16	person
<i>rènao</i>	热闹	10	bustling, exciting
<i>rénjiān lèyuán</i>	人间乐园	21	paradise on earth
<i>Rénmín Dàhuìtáng</i>	人民 大会堂	17	Great Hall of the People

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>Rénmín Yīngxióng</i>	人民英雄	17	Monument to the
<i>Jìniànbēi</i>	纪念碑		People's Heroes
<i>rénmínbì</i>	人民币	19	RMB (Chinese currency)
<i>rènshi</i>	认识	2	know, recognize
<i>rènwéi</i>	认为	21	think, consider
<i>rènzhēn</i>	认真	22	conscientious
<i>rèqíng</i>	热情	5	warm-hearted, enthusiastic
<i>rèshuǐpíng</i>	热水瓶	6	Thermos flask
<i>Rìběn</i>	日本	8	Japan
<i>rìchū</i>	日出	15	sunrise
<i>rìluò</i>	日落	19	sunset
<i>Rìyuán</i>	日元		yen
<i>rìzi</i>	日子	7	day; date
<i>róngyì</i>	容易	11	easy
<i>ruǎnwò</i>	软卧	19	soft sleeper
<i>ruǎnzuo</i>	软座	19	soft seat (train)
<i>rúguǒ</i>	如果	19	if
<i>rúguǒ... (de huà), jiù...</i>	如果... (的话), 就...,	9	if... then
<i>Ruìshì</i>	瑞士		Switzerland
<i>sāizi</i>	塞子	6	plug (for sink, etc.)
<i>sān</i>	三	14	three
<i>sàn bù</i>	散步	10	to take a stroll, walk
<i>sānmíngzhì</i>	三明治	21	sandwich
<i>MW kuài</i>	块		
<i>shāfā</i>	沙发	6	sofa
<i>MW tào</i>	套		suite (settee and two easy chairs)
<i>shài tàiyáng</i>	晒太阳	10	sunbathe
<i>shàng</i>	上		last; up
<i>shàng cèsuǒ</i>	上厕所	9	go to the toilet
<i>Shàngdì de</i>	《上帝的	16	'Amadeus'
<i>Chǒng'ér</i>	宠儿》		
<i>shāngdiàn</i>	商店	10	shop
<i>shānggǎnzhǔyìzhě</i>	伤感主义者	22	sentimentalist
<i>shàngjí</i>	上级		superior(s)

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>shàngpù</i>	上铺	19	upper berth
<i>shāngrén</i>	商人	9	business person
<i>shǎnguāngdēng</i>	闪光灯	22	flash (light)
<i>shàngwǔ</i>	上午	19	morning
<i>shāo</i>	烧	8	burn
<i>shǎo</i>	少	4	less, few
<i>sháozi</i>	勺子	6	spoon
<i>shèbèi</i>	设备	9	equipment, facilities
<i>shěbude</i>	舍不得	22	be unwilling to part with, grudge
<i>shéi</i> (or <i>shuí</i>)	谁	9	who?
<i>shèng</i> (<i>xiàlai</i>)	剩(下来)	19	be left (over); remain
<i>shēngchǎn</i>	生产	10	produce, manufacture
<i>Shèngdànjié</i>	圣诞节		Christmas
<i>shēngdiào</i>	声调	11	tone
<i>shēnghuó</i>	生活	4	life; to live
<i>shénme shíhou</i>	什么时候		when?
<i>shēngrì</i>	生日	22	birthday
<i>shēngyì</i>	生意	9	business
<i>shénme</i>	什么	3	what?
<i>shénmede</i>	什么的	9	and so on
<i>shēntǐ</i>	身体	7	health, body
<i>shī</i>	诗	19	poem
<i>MW shǒu</i>	首		
<i>shì</i>	是	2	be
<i>shì</i> (<i>qíng</i>)	事情	11	matter, thing
<i>MW jiàn</i>	件		
<i>shífēn</i>	十分	21	extremely, very
<i>shīgē</i>	诗歌		poetry
<i>shíjiān</i>	时间	5	time
<i>shìjiè</i>	世界	10	world
<i>shíkèbiǎo</i>	时刻表	19	timetable, schedule
<i>shíwǔ</i>	十五	14	fifteen
<i>shìyè</i>	事业	21	undertaking, cause
<i>shízài</i>	实在	22	really, honestly; true, real
<i>shōu</i> (<i>hǎo</i>)	收(好)	18	put away; receive
<i>shǒu</i>	手	21	hand

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>shòu</i>	受	21	receive, be subjected to
<i>shòu bǐ Nánshān fú rú Dōnghǎi</i>	寿比南山 福如东海	22	may you live as long as the Southern Mountain and be as blessed as the Eastern Sea.
<i>shòu bù liǎo</i>	受不了	22	be unable to bear or endure
<i>shǒudū</i>	首都		capital
<i>Shǒudū Jùchǎng</i>	首都剧场	16	Capital Theatre
<i>shōuhuò</i>	收获	22	gains, results; harvest
<i>shòuhuòyuán</i>	售货员	14	shop-assistant
<i>shōujiàn rén</i>	收件人	18	addressee, recipient
<i>shǒujīn</i>	手巾	6	hand towel
<i>shōujù</i>	收据	18	receipt
<i>shòupiàoyuán</i>	售票员	15	box office clerk; ticket seller
<i>shōushi</i>	收拾	22	pack; tidy up, put in order
<i>shǒutào</i>	手套		glove(s)
<i>shǒutíbāo</i>	手提包	22	bag, handbag
<i>shōuyīnjī</i>	收音机	6	radio
<i>MW tái/ge</i>	台/个		
<i>shū</i>	书	6	book
<i>shǔ</i>	属		belong to
<i>shù</i>	树	6	tree
<i>shù</i>	竖	16	vertical
<i>shuā yá</i>	刷牙		brush teeth
<i>shuài</i>	帅	22	handsome; beautifully (coll.)
<i>shuāngrénchuáng</i>	双人床	6	double bed
<i>MW zhāng</i>	张		
<i>shuāngrénfángjiān</i>	双人房间	9	double room
<i>shūcài</i>	蔬菜	6	vegetables
<i>shūfáng</i>	书房	8	study room (n)
<i>shūfu</i>	舒服	8	comfortable
<i>shuǐ</i>	水		water
<i>shuì (jiào)</i>	睡觉	8	sleep, go to bed
<i>shuǐdiànfèi</i>	水电费	8	water and electricity charges

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>shuǐguǒ</i>	水果	22	fruit
<i>shuǐguǒzhī</i>	水果汁	9	fruit juice
<i>shuǐpíng</i>	水平	11	level, standard
<i>shuǐtǒng</i>	水桶	6	bucket, pail
<i>shūjià</i>	书架	6	bookcase, bookshelf
<i>shuō</i>	说	15	speak, say
<i>shuō huà</i>	说话	4	speak, talk
<i>shuōfǎ</i>	说法		way of saying things
<i>shuōmíng</i>	说明		show, explain, illustrate
<i>shūzhuō</i>	书桌	8	desk
<i>shūzi</i>	梳子	6	comb, brush
<i>MW bǎ</i>	把		
<i>shùzìshìpán</i>	数字视盘	6	DVD player
<i>bōfàngjī</i>	播放机		(Note: the Chinese also use the English abbreviation 'DVD'.)
<i>sǐ</i>	死		die
<i>sì</i>	四	14	four
<i>sīchóu</i>	丝绸	14	silk
<i>Sìchuān</i>	四川	10	Sichuan
<i>sìshēng</i>	四声	11	the four tones
<i>sòng</i>	送	22	give as a present; see somebody off; send
<i>Sū, Háng</i>	苏、杭	21	Suzhou and Hangzhou
<i>suàn</i>	算	22	regard as, count as
<i>suàn le</i>	算了	20	forget it, let it pass
<i>suàn zhàng</i>	算帐	9	work out bill, make bill
<i>suān(niú)nǎi</i>	酸(牛)奶	9	yoghurt
<i>suànpan</i>	算盘	9	abacus
<i>Sūgélán</i>	苏格兰		Scotland
<i>súhuà</i>	俗话	21	common saying,
<i>MW jù</i>	句		proverb
<i>sù</i>	岁	3	year (of age)
<i>suíbiàn</i>	随便	4	do as one pleases
<i>suīrán... dànshi</i>	虽然...但是	8	although

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>suíshí</i>	随时	9	at any time
<i>Sūlián</i>	苏联		USSR
<i>suǒyǐ</i>	所以	5	therefore
<i>suǒyǒu (de)</i>	所有(的)	20	all
<i>tā</i>	他	2	he, him
<i>tā</i>	她	2	she, her
<i>tā</i>	它	21	it
<i>tài</i>	太	3	too, extremely
<i>táidēng</i>	台灯	6	table lamp
<i>tàitai</i>	太太	2	Mrs, wife
<i>tàiyángjìng</i> MW fù	太阳镜 副	21	sunglasses
<i>tāmen</i>	他们	2	they
<i>tán huà</i>	谈话	5	chat, conversation
<i>Táng</i>	唐	19	Tang Dynasty (618-907 AD)
<i>táng</i>	糖	6	sugar, sweets, candy
<i>tàngyījià</i>	烫衣架	6	ironing board
<i>tǎnshuài (de)</i>	坦率(地)	21	frank(ly)
<i>tǎnzi</i>	毯子	6	blanket
<i>tào</i>	套	14	set
<i>tèbié</i>	特别	9	especially; special
<i>tèquán</i>	特权	9	privilege
<i>tiān</i>	添	5	add, increase
<i>tiān</i>	天	8	day; sky, heaven
<i>tián</i>	甜	22	sweet
<i>tián (xiě)</i>	填(写)	18	fill in (e.g. form)
<i>Tiān'ānmén</i> Guǎngchǎng	天安门 广场	17	Tiananmen Square
<i>tiānpíng</i>	天平	18	scales (for weighing)
<i>tiānqì</i>	天气	8	weather
<i>Tiāntán</i>	天坛	17	Temple of Heaven
<i>tiāntáng</i>	天堂	21	heaven, paradise
<i>tiānxià</i>	天下	22	land under heaven - the world
<i>tiē(shang)</i>	贴(上)	18	stick (on)
<i>tīng</i>	厅	5	hall
<i>tīng</i>	听		listen

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>tǐng</i>	挺	15	very, rather
<i>tīng qǐlái</i>	听起来	21	sound (verb)
<i>tīngshuō</i>	听说	8	be told, hear of
<i>tíqián</i>	提前	22	bring forward a date
<i>tōngguò</i>	通过	20	go through
<i>tóngqíng</i>	同情	9	sympathize with
<i>tóngshí</i>	同时	8	at the same time; moreover
<i>tóngshì</i>	同事	7	colleague, fellow worker
<i>tóngxiāng</i>	同乡	21	person who was born in the same place as oneself
<i>tóngxué</i>	同学	21	fellow student
<i>tóngyì</i>	同意	21	agree with
<i>tóngzhì</i>	同志	18	comrade
<i>tóufa</i>	头发		hair (on head)
<i>tuìxiū</i>	退休	7	retire
<i>wàibì</i>	外币	20	foreign currency
<i>wàibīn</i>	外宾	9	foreign guest, visitor
<i>wàiguó</i>	外国	7	foreign (country)
<i>wàihuì (quàn)</i>	外汇(券)	20	foreign exchange (certificate)
<i>wàimiàn</i>	外面	5	outside
<i>-wán</i>	完	5	finish (doing)
<i>wán(r)</i>	玩(儿)	3	have fun
<i>wǎn</i>	晚		late
<i>wàn</i>	万		ten thousand
<i>wǎncān</i>	晚餐	22	supper, dinner
<i>wǎnfàn</i>	晚饭		evening meal, dinner
<i>wàng (jì)</i>	忘(记)	20	forget
<i>wàng</i>	往	17	towards, to
<i>wǎngqiú</i>	网球		tennis
<i>wàngǔ chángcún</i>	万古长存	22	last forever, be everlasting
<i>wǎngwǎng</i>	往往	9	more often than not, frequently
<i>wánquán</i>	完全	21	complete(ly)

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>wǎnshang</i>	晚上	3	evening
<i>wànshì rúyì</i>	万事如意	22	your heart's desire
<i>wèi</i>	位	4	MW for persons (polite)
<i>wèi</i>	喂	16	hello (on telephone)
<i>wèi</i>	为	22	for, for the sake of
<i>wèi shénme</i>	为什么	19	why?
<i>wēibōlú</i>	微波炉	6	microwave oven
<i>wèidào</i>	味道	22	flavour, taste
<i>wèihūnfū</i>	未婚夫	19	fiancé
<i>wèihūnqī</i>	未婚妻	19	fiancée
<i>wèile</i>	为了	22	for the sake of, in order to
<i>Wēinísī</i>	威尼斯	21	Venice
<i>wèishēngzhǐ</i> MW <i>juǎn</i>	卫生纸 卷	6	toilet paper
<i>wèn</i>	问	15	ask
<i>wèn lù</i>	问路	17	ask the way
<i>wěndìng</i>	稳定	22	stable, steady; to stabilize
<i>wénhuà</i>	文化		culture
<i>wénmíng</i>	闻名	21	well-known, famous
<i>wèntí</i>	问题		question, problem
<i>wénzì</i>	文字		script (writing system)
<i>wǒ</i>	我	1	I, me
<i>wòjīdàn</i>	卧鸡蛋	9	poached egg(s)
<i>wǒmen</i>	我们	2	we, us
<i>wòshì</i>	卧室	5	bedroom
<i>wūdǐng</i>	屋顶		roof
<i>wǔdǒuchú/ wǔdǒugui</i>	五斗橱/ 五斗柜	6	chest of drawers
<i>wūlǐ</i>	屋里	22	in the room
<i>xì</i>	戏		play
<i>xī yān</i>	吸烟		smoke (v-o)
<i>-xià</i>	下	8	have the capacity to (follows verb)
<i>xià</i>	下	15	next

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>xià bān</i>	下班	10	finish work
<i>xià qí</i>	下棋	10	play chess
<i>xià xuě</i>	下雪	10	snow (v-o)
<i>xià yǔ</i>	下雨	10	rain (v-o)
<i>xiàbianr</i>	下边儿	9	under(neath), below
<i>xiān</i>	先	18	first (adv)
<i>xiàndài</i>	现代		modern
<i>xiǎng</i>	想	3	feel like doing something; think
<i>xiàng</i>	象	10	resemble
<i>xiàng</i>	向	22	towards; to face
<i>xiǎng qǐlái</i>	想起来	22	remember, call to mind
<i>xiāngdāng</i>	相当	9	quite (a bit)
<i>xiāngfǎn</i>	相反		opposite, contrary
<i>Xiānggǎng</i>	香港		Hong Kong
<i>xiānghuì</i>	相会	22	meet one another
<i>xiāngjiàn shí nán</i> <i>bié yì nán</i>	相见时难 别亦难	22	meeting and parting are both difficult (quotation from poem by Li Shangyin)
<i>xiǎngshòu</i>	享受	9	enjoy rights etc; treat
<i>(xiāng) yān</i> MW <i>zhī, bāo</i>	(香)烟 支、包	14	cigarette
<i>xiāngzào</i>	香皂	6	toilet soap
<i>xiānsheng</i>	先生	1	Mr, gentleman
<i>xiànyú</i>	限于	9	be confined to
<i>xiànzài</i>	现在	7	now, at present
<i>xiǎo</i>	小	5	small
<i>xiào</i>	笑	22	smile, laugh
<i>xiǎoháir</i>	小孩儿	3	child (small)
<i>xiǎohuǒzi</i>	小伙子	21	young fellow
<i>xiǎojie</i>	小姐	4	Miss, young lady
<i>xiǎoshí</i>	小时		hour
<i>xiǎoshuō</i> MW <i>běn</i>	小说 本	6	novel
<i>xiǎoyìsi</i>	小意思	22	small token, mere trifle

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>xiàpù</i>	下铺	19	bottom berth
<i>xiàtiān</i>	夏天	10	summer
<i>xiàwǔ</i>	下午	16	afternoon
<i>xiàyìshí</i>	下意识	21	subconsciousness
<i>Xībānyáwén</i>	西班牙语文		Spanish (language)
<i>xībīanr</i>	西边儿	17	west (side)
<i>Xīcān</i>	西餐	9	Western food
<i>xié</i>	鞋		shoe(s)
<i>xiě (zì)</i>	写(字)	11	write (characters)
<i>xièxiè</i>	谢谢	1	thank; thank you
<i>Xīfāng</i>	西方	8	the West
<i>Xīfāng rén</i>	西方人	11	Westerner
<i>Xīhú</i>	西湖	21	West Lake
<i>xǐhuan</i>	喜欢	1	like (v)
<i>xǐliǎnpén</i>	洗脸盆	6	wash basin
<i>xīn</i>	新		new
<i>xìn</i>	信	18	letter
<i>MW fēng</i>	信封		
<i>xìnfēng</i>	信封		envelope
<i>xíng</i>	行	1	be all right
<i>xìngfú</i>	幸福	22	enjoy good fortune, happy
<i>xínglǐ</i>	行李	22	luggage, baggage
<i>xìngmíng</i>	姓名	18	(full) name
<i>xīngqī</i>	星期	10	week
<i>xīngqīwǔ</i>	星期五	16	Friday
<i>xīnlǐ</i>	心里	21	in the heart or mind
<i>xīnshì</i>	新式	21	latest type, new- style
<i>xīnxiān</i>	新鲜	21	fresh
<i>xīnyì</i>	心意	22	kindly feelings, regard
<i>xiōngdì</i>	兄弟	8	brothers
<i>xīshēng</i>	牺牲		sacrifice (v)
<i>xiūxi</i>	休息	8	rest (v and n)
<i>xǐwǎnchí</i>	洗碗池	6	sink (n)
<i>xīwàng</i>	希望	19	hope (v and n)
<i>xǐyījī</i>	洗衣机	5	washing machine
<i>xǐzǎojiān</i>	洗澡间	6	bathroom
<i>xǐzǎopén</i>	洗澡盆	6	bath (tub)

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>xuǎn</i>	选	19	choose
<i>xué(xí)</i>	学(习)	4	study (v)
<i>xuésheng</i>	学生	7	student
<i>xuéshēngzhèng</i>	学生证	9	student card
<i>xuéxiào</i>	学校	4	school
<i>xūyào</i>	需要	22	need, require; needs (n)
<i>ya</i>	呀	21	particle indicating surprise
<i>yágāo</i> MW <i>tǒng</i>	牙膏 筒	6	toothpaste
<i>yān</i>	烟		tobacco (cigarette)
<i>yán</i>	盐	6	salt
<i>yǎn</i>	演	16	perform, act
<i>yàng</i>	样	11	type, kind
<i>yánguǐzi</i>	洋鬼子	21	foreign devil
<i>yàngshì</i>	样式	20	form, pattern
<i>yángwèi(r)</i>	洋味(儿)	11	foreign flavour
<i>yàngzi</i>	样子		appearance, the way somebody looks
<i>yānhuīgāng</i>	烟灰缸	6	ashtray
<i>yāo</i>	么	16	<i>yī</i> in telephone and train numbers)
<i>yào</i>	要	5	want to; must, to want
<i>yào (shì) ...</i> (<i>de huà</i>), <i>jiù</i>	要(是)... (的话), 就	10	if ... then
<i>yàoshi</i>	要是	9	if
<i>yàobù(ràn)</i>	要不(然)	4	otherwise
<i>yáshuā</i> MW <i>bǎ</i>	牙刷 把	6	toothbrush
<i>Yàzhōu</i>	亚洲		Asia
<i>yě</i>	也	3	also, too
<i>yī</i>	一	2	one
<i>yǐ</i>	乙	17	B (as in B says)
<i>yī ... jiù</i>	一...就	10	no sooner ... than ... , as soon as
<i>yì</i>	亿		hundred million

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
yìbān	一般	8	generally; general
yìbān lái shuō	一般来说	21	generally speaking
yīcǐ lèitūī	依此类推	20	others can be deduced similarly
Yìdàlì	意大利		Italy
Yìdàlìrén	意大利人		Italian (person)
yìdiǎn(r)	一点(儿)	4	a little
yídìng	一定	4	certainly, definitely
yīfu	衣服	14	clothes
MW jiàn	件		
yìgòng	一共	14	altogether
yīguì	衣柜	6	wardrobe
yíhàn	遗憾	22	regret; to regret, be a pity
Yíhéyuán	颐和园	10	Summer Palace
yìhòu	以后	8	after, afterwards
yíhuìr	一会儿	10	a short while, after a moment
yìjiàn	意见		opinion
yǐjīng	已经	7	already
yīlóu	一楼	6	ground floor
yīlù píng'ān	一路平安	22	<i>bon voyage</i>
yīmó yíyàng	一模一样	20	exactly like
yīn	阴	10	cloudy, overcast
Yīngbàng	英镑	20	pound sterling
(yīng)gāi	(应)该	5	ought, should
Yīngguó	英国	4	Britain, England
Yīngguórén	英国人	4	British
yǐngjùyuàn	影剧院	15	cinema and theatre (buildings)
yìngwò	硬卧	19	hard sleeper
yíngyèyuán	营业员	18	clerk, shop employee
Yīngyǔ	英语	11	English language
yìngzuò	硬座	19	hard seat (train)
yīnlì	阴历		lunar calendar
yīnwèi (yīnwei)	因为	11	because
yīnyuè	音乐	22	music
yīnyuèhuì	音乐会	15	concert
yìqǐ	一起	10	together

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
yǐqián yíqiè	以前 一切	7	previously, before all, every, everything
yīshēng	医生	7	doctor
yìsi	意思	3	meaning
(yì)xīe	(一)些	8	some
yíyàng	一样	20	alike, the same
yīyuàn	医院	7	hospital
yízhènzǐ	一阵子	19	period of time, spell
yǐzi	椅子	6	chair
MW bǎ	把		
yòng	用	4	use
yǒngyuǎn	永远	16	forever
yǒu	有	3	have, there is/are
yǒu (de) shíhòu	有(的)时候	9	sometimes
yǒu kòng	有空	3	have free time
yǒu míng	有名		be famous
yǒu yìsi	有意思	11	be interesting
yǒu yòng	有用		useful
yòu . . . yòu	又...又	5	both . . . and
yōudài	优待	9	preferential treatment
yōudàizhèng	优待证	19	preferential card
yǒude	有的	8	some
yǒudeshì	有的是	10	have plenty of, there's no lack
yóudiànjú	邮电局	18	post and telecommunications office
yóufèi	邮费	22	postage
yóujì	邮寄	18	send by post or mail
yóukè	游客	9	tourist, sightseer
yóulǎn	游览		visit (v), sightsee
yōumògǎn	幽默感	22	sense of humour
yóupiào	邮票	14	postage stamp
MW zhāng	张		
yǒuyì	友谊	22	friendship
Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn	友谊商店	20	Friendship Store
yóuyǒng	游泳		swim (v-o)

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>yuán</i>	圆	8	round
<i>yuǎn</i>	远	17	far
<i>Yuándàn</i>	元旦		New Year's Day
<i>yuánliàng</i>	原谅	4	forgive
<i>Yuánmíngyuán</i>	圆明园	10	Old Summer Palace
<i>yuànyì</i>	愿意	5	be willing, want
<i>yuányīn</i>	原因		reason, cause
<i>yuánzhūbǐ</i>	圆珠笔	22	ballpoint pen
<i>MW zhī</i>	枝/支		
<i>yuè</i>	月	10	month
<i>yuè lái yuè</i>	越来越	9	more and more
<i>yuèbǐng</i>	月饼	19	mooncake
<i>yuèguāng</i>	月光	19	moonlight
<i>yuèliàng</i>	月亮		moon
<i>yǔfǎ</i>	语法	11	grammar
<i>yùjīn</i>	浴巾	6	bath towel
<i>MW tiáo</i>	条		
<i>yúkuài</i>	愉快	19	happy, pleased
<i>yùndǒu</i>	熨斗	6	iron
<i>yùpén</i>	浴盆	6	bath (tub)
<i>yùshì</i>	浴室	6	bathroom
<i>zài</i>	在	3	be at; at
<i>zài</i>	再	5	again
<i>zài</i>	在	16	in the middle of -ing
<i>zài shuō</i>	再说	22	not tackle a problem until some other time
<i>zàijiàn</i>	再见	5	goodbye
<i>zāng</i>	脏		dirty
<i>zánmen</i>	咱们	21	we (including listener)
<i>zǎo</i>	早	5	early
<i>zǎo . . . jiù</i>	早...就		long since
<i>zǎocān</i>	早餐	9	breakfast
<i>zǎorì</i>	早日	22	at an early date; soon
<i>zǎoshang</i>	早上	9	morning (early
<i>zázhì</i>	杂志	14	magazine
<i>MW běn</i>	本		

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>zěnmē</i>	怎么	11	how
<i>zěnmē bàn</i>	怎么办	20	what's to be done?
<i>zěnmē le</i>	怎么了	22	what's the matter?
<i>zěnmeyàng</i>	怎么样	3	what about (it)?; how?
<i>zhàn</i>	站	22	stand; station, stop (bus etc)
<i>zhāng</i>	张	14	MW for flat, rectangular objects
<i>zhànghù</i>	帐户	20	account (bank)
<i>zháo</i>	着		potential resultative verb ending
<i>zhǎo</i>	找	7	look for
<i>zhǎo (qián)</i>	找(钱)	14	give back (as of change)
<i>zhào xiàng</i>	照相	10	take a photo, have one's picture taken
<i>zhàocháng</i>	照常	10	as usual
<i>zhāodài</i>	招待	5	hospitality; entertain
<i>zhàopiàn</i>	照片		photograph
<i>MW zhāng</i>	张		
<i>zhàoxiàngjī</i>	照相机	21	camera
<i>MW tái</i>	台		
<i>-zhe</i>	着	10	verbal suffix
<i>zhè (or zhèi)</i>	这	2	this
<i>zhè yàng</i>	这样	11	this kind of
<i>zhème</i>	这么	22	so, this way, like this
<i>zhēn</i>	真	2	really; true, real
<i>zhèngfǔ</i>	政府		government
<i>zhěnggè</i>	整个	10	whole, entire
<i>zhèngcháng</i>	正常	10	normal, regular
<i>zhènghǎo</i>	正好	20	just right; to happen to
<i>zhèngmíng</i>	证明	20	certificate; to prove
<i>zhèngzài ... ne</i>	正在...呢	10	in the middle of -ing
<i>zhèngzhì</i>	政治		political
<i>zhěntào</i>	枕套	6	pillow case
<i>zhěntou</i>	枕头	6	pillow

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>zhèr (zhèlǐ)</i>	这儿(这里)	4	here
<i>zhèyàng</i>	这样	19	like this, in this way, so
<i>zhī</i>	织		knit, weave
<i>zhǐ</i>	只	5	only
<i>zhǐ</i>	指	11	refer to, point at/ to; finger
... <i>zhī jiān</i>	之间	22	between, amongst ...
... <i>zhī zhōng</i>	之中		between, amongst ...
<i>zhīdao</i>	知道	11	know (a fact)
<i>zhíde</i>	值得	17	be worth, deserve
<i>zhǐhǎo</i>	只好	5	have to
<i>zhíjiē</i>	直接	20	direct
<i>zhíyè</i>	职业	21	occupation, profession
<i>zhǒng</i>	种	7	sort, kind
<i>zhòng</i>	重	18	heavy
<i>Zhōngguó</i>	中国	1	China
<i>Zhōngguó Gémìng Bówùguǎn</i>	中国革命博物馆	17	Museum of (the Chinese) Revolution
<i>Zhōngguó Lìshǐ Bówùguǎn</i>	中国历史博物馆	17	Museum of National History (of China)
<i>Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshè</i>	中国旅行社	19	China Travel Service
<i>Zhōngguó Yínháng</i>	中国银行	20	Bank of China
<i>Zhōngguóhuà</i>	中国话	19	Chinese language (older term)
<i>Zhōngguótōng</i>	中国通	22	expert on China
<i>zhōngjiān</i>	中间	17	middle, between
<i>zhōngtóu</i>	钟头		hour
<i>Zhōngwén</i>	中文	9	Chinese language (usually written form)
<i>zhòngyào</i>	重要		important
<i>zhǒngzú</i>	种族	21	race (as in racism)
<i>zhōumò</i>	周末		week-end

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
zhǔ	煮	22	boil, cook
zhù	住	8	live in, at
zhù	祝	19	offer good wishes
zhuǎn	转	22	turn; transfer
zhuānjiā	专家	9	expert, specialist
zhuānjiāzhèng	专家证	19	expert card
zhùfáng	住房	8	housing, accommodation
zhǔjīdàn	煮鸡蛋	9	boiled egg(s)
zhǔnbèi	准备	19	prepare
zhuōzi	桌子	6	table
MW zhāng	张		
zhǔyào	主要	21	principal(ly)
zhùyì	注意	21	pay attention to, take note of
zì qī qī rén	自欺欺人	21	deceive yourself as well as others
zìdiǎn	字典	6	dictionary
MW běn	本		
zìjǐ	自己	4	oneself
zǐmèi	姊妹	8	sisters
zīwèi	滋味	22	good taste, flavour
zìxíngchē	自行车	19	bicycle
MW liàng	辆		
zìyóu	自由		free; freedom
zìzài	自在	21	at ease, comfortable
zǒng (shì)	总(是)	8	always
zǒnglǐ	总理		premier
zǒngtǒng	总统		president
zǒu	走	5	leave, walk, go
zū	租	21	rent, hire
zǔhéyīnxiǎng	组合音响	8	hi-fi
MW tào	套		
zuì	最	4	most
zuì	醉	22	drunk
zuìhǎo	最好	4	had better; best
zuìjìn	最近	22	recently; nearest, latest
zuìhòu	最后	22	the last; finally
zuò	坐	1	sit
zuò chē	坐车	17	go by transport

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>zuò</i>	做/作	4	do, to make
<i>zuòfǎ</i>	作法	9	way of doing something
<i>zuótiān</i>	昨天		yesterday

- a good many *hǎo jǐ*
 a little *yìdiǎn(r)*
 a short while, after a moment
yíhuìr
 abacus *suànpan*
 able to, can *néng*
 absolute(ly) *juéduì*
 accompany *péi*
 accomplish, get something
 done *bàn dào*
 according to, on the basis of
àn(zhào)
 account (bank) *zhànghù*
 actually, as a matter of fact
qíshí
 add, increase *tiān*
 add (on) *jiā(shang)*
 address *dìzhǐ*
 addressee, recipient
shōujiànren
 admire *pèifú*
 admit (e.g. mistake)
chéngrèn
 admit, receive *jiēdài*
 adult *chéngniánren* or
dàren
 aeroplane *fēijī*
 afraid that *kǒngpà*
 after all, still *háishi*
 after (conj.), afterwards
yǐhòu
 afternoon *xiàwǔ*
 again *zài*
 age *niánjì*
 agree with *tóngyì*
 airmail *hángkōng*
 ah, oh *à*
 airport *fēijīchǎng*
 alarm clock *nàozhōng*
 alcohol *jiǔ*
 alike, the same *yíyàng*
 all + noun *suǒyǒu (de) +*
noun
 all right *xíng*
 all, both *dōu*
 almost, nearly *chàbuduō*
 already *yǐjīng*
 also, too *yě*
 alter, change, correct *gǎi*
 although *suīrán... dānshi*
 altogether *yígòng*
 always *zǒng (shi)*
 always (doing something)
lǎo
 'Amadeus' 《*Shàngdì de*
Chǒng'ér》
 America, USA *Měiguó*
 American (person)
Měiguórén
 ancient *gǔlǎo*
 and *hé*
 and so on *shénmede*

- another, separately *líng(wài)*
 anyway, in any case *fǎnzhèng*
 appearance *yàngzi*
 apple *píngguǒ*
 army *bùduì*
 arrange for something to be done *bàn shì*
 arrest *bǔ*
 arrive, go to *dào*
 as far as . . . is concerned *duì . . . lái shuō*
 as soon as possible, at the earliest possible date *jǐnzǎo*
 as usual *zhàocháng*
 ash tray *yānhuīgāng*
 Asia *Yàzhōu*
 ask *wèn*
 ask the way *wèn lù*
 aspect, respect *fāngmiàn*
 at, in *zài*
 at an early date, soon *zǎori*
 at any time *suíshí*
 at ease, comfortable *zìzài*
 at the same time; moreover *tóngshí*
 attend, take part in, join *cānjiā*
 attend to, handle, do *bàn*
 attendant *fúwùyuán*
 autumn *qiūtiān*
 await, treat *dài*

 back, behind *hòubianr*
 bad, broken *huài*
 bag, handbag *shǒutíbāo*
 ballpoint pen *yuánzhūbǐ*
 (MW *zhī*)
 Bank of China *Zhōngguó Yínháng*
 basic(ally) *jīběn (shang)*
 bath (tub) *yùpén* or *xǐzǎopén*

 bath towel *dà máojīn* or *yùjīn* (MW *tiáo*)
 bathroom *xǐzǎojiān* or *yùshì*
 be *shì*
 beat a drum *dǎ gǔ*
 become *chéng*
 belong to *shǔ*
 berth (lower) *xiàpù*
 berth (upper) *shàngpù*
 beautiful, pretty *piàoliang*
 beautiful woman *měirén*
 because *yīnwèi (yīnwei)*
 bed *chuáng* (MW *zhāng*)
 bedroom *wòshì*
 beer *píjiǔ*
 Beethoven *Bèiduōfēn*
 begin *kāishǐ*
 Beihai Park *Běihǎi Gōngyuán*
 Beijing Hotel *Běijīng Fàndiàn*
 Beijing Languages Institute *Běijīng Yǔyán Xuéyuán*
 (now called *Běijīng Yǔyán Dàxué* Beijing Language [and Culture] University)
 Beijing University *Běijīng Dàxué*
 belch, burp, hiccup *dǎ gē(r)*
 best; had better *zuìhǎo*
 between, amongst . . . *zhī jiān* or . . . *zhī zhōng*
 bicycle *zìxíngchē*
 (MW *liàng*)
 big *dà*
 birthday *shēngri*
 black *hēi*
 black and white *hēi-bái*
 black tea (Indian) *hóngchá*
 blanket *tǎnzi*
 boat (n) *chuán*
 boil, cook *zhǔ*
 boiled water *kāishuǐ*

bon voyage, have a pleasant
 journey *yílù píng'ān*
 book *shū*
 book, reserve, subscribe to
dìng
 bookcase, bookshelf *shūjià*
 borrow; lend *jiè*
 boss *lǎobǎn*
 both, all *dōu*
 both... and *yòu... yòu*
 bother about, be in charge of
guǎn
 bottle *píngzi*
 box office clerk
shòupiàoyuán
 branch (bank) *fēnháng*
 breakfast *zǎocān*
 bring forward a date *tíqián*
 bring, take *dài*
 Britain, England *Yīngguó*
 British (person) *Yīngguó rén*
 brothers *xiōngdì/dìxiōng*
 brush teeth *shuā yá*
 bucket, pail *shuǐtǒng*
 bump (into) *pèng (dào)*
 burn *shāo*
 bus *gōnggòngqìchē*
 (MW *liàng*)
 business *shēngyì*
 business person *shānggrén*
 bustling, exciting *rènao*
 but *dànshi* or *kěshì*
 but, and *ér*
 but, however, only *búguò*
 butter *huángyóu*
 buy *mǎi*

 cadre *gànbù*
 calculating machine,
 computer *jìsuànjī*
 (MW *jià*)
 call, be called *jiào*
 calculate, count *jìsuàn*
 camera *zhàoxiàngjī*

can, know how to *huì*
 can, may *kěyǐ*
 can (physically able) *néng*
 cannot but, have to
bùde bù
 Canon *Jiānéng*
 Canton *Guǎngdōng*
 capable, competent *nénggàn*
 capital *shǒudū*
 Capital Theatre *Shǒudū*
Jùchǎng
 car *qìchē* (MW *liàng*)
 carpet *dītǎn*
 carry on, follow *jiēzhe*
 cash withdrawal form
qǔqiánbiǎo
 catty ($1/2$ kilogram) *jīn*
 central heating *nuǎnqì*
 certain (as in 'a certain
 person') *mǒu*
 certainly, definitely *yídìng*
 certainty *bǎwò*
 certificate, to prove
zhèngmíng
 chair *yǐzi* (MW *bǎ*)
 change *biàn*
 change money *huàn qián*
 chat *liáo tiān(r)*
 chat, conversation *tán huà*
 cheap *piányi*
 check; investigate *chá*
 check (e.g. money to see if
 correct) *diǎn*
 chest of drawers *wǔdǒuchú,*
wǔdǒnguì
 child *hái*
 child (small) *xiǎohái*
 China *Zhōngguó*
 China Travel Service
Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshè
 Chinese language *Hànyǔ*
 Chinese language (older
 term) *Zhōngguóhuà*
 Chinese character(s) *Hànzì*

- Chinese language (usually written form) *Zhōngwén*
 chocolate *qiǎokèlì*
 (MW *kuài*)
 choose *xuǎn*
 chopsticks *kuàizi*
 (MW *shuāng*)
 Christmas *Shèngdànjié*
 church *jiàotáng*
 cigarette (*xiāng*)*yān*
 (MW *zhūbāo*)
 cinema and theatre
yǐngjùyuán
 city, town *chéngshì*
 classical *gǔdiǎn*
 clean *gānjìng*
 clear, clearly *qīngchū*
 clerk, shop employee
yíngyèyuán
 climate *qìhòu*
 climb *pá*
 close, intimate *qīnmì*
 cloth *bù*
 clothes *yīfu* (MW *jiàn*)
 cloudy, overcast *yīn*
 club (social) *jùlèbù*
 cocoa *kěkě*
 coffee *kāfēi*
 coffee table *chájī*
 cold *lěng*
 colleague, fellow worker
tóngshì
 colour, multicoloured *cǎisè*
 comb, brush *shūzi*
 come *lái*
 come into contact with
jiēchù
 come or go out *chū*
 comfortable *shūfu*
 common saying,
 proverb *súhuà*
 common spoken language
 (Modern Standard
 Chinese) *pǔtōnghuà*
 company *gōngsī*
 compare *duìzhào*
 compared with *bǐ*
 complete(ly) *wánquán*
 complicated, complex *fùzá*
 comrade *tóngzhì*
 concert *yīnyuèhuì*
 conduct, handle, transact
bànlǐ
 confine to *xiànyú*
 conscientious *rènzhēn*
 consult a dictionary
chá zìdiǎn
 convenient *fāngbiàn*
 conversely *fǎnguòlái*
 cool *liáng*
 portion; MW for money;
 minutes *fēn*
 copy *fēn*
 correct *duì*
 count, check (e.g. money to
 see if correct) *diǎn*
 counter *guítái*
 country *guójiā*
 courteous, manners *lǐmào*
 criterion, standard *biāozhǔn*
 crowded, squeeze *jǐ*
 culture *wénhuà*
 cup *bēizi*
 cup(ful) *bēi*
 current account *huóqī*
cúnguǎn
 curtain *chuānglián*
 cut (as of hair) *jiǎn*
 daddy, dad *bàba*
 daughter *nǚ'ér*
 day after the day after
 tomorrow *dàhòutiān*
 day after tomorrow *hòutiān*
 day, date *rìzi*
 day, sky, heaven *tiān*
 deceive yourself as well as
 others *zì qī qī rén*

decorate *bùzhì*
 defect *máobìng*
 definite(ly), affirm *kěndìng*
 deposit account *dìngqī*
 cúnkǎn
 deposit money *cún qián*
 describe *miáoxiě*
 desk *shūzhuō* (MW *zhāng*)
 despite; feel free to *jǐnguǎn*
 develop *fāzhǎn*
 develop (as of film), to wash
 (*chōng*)*xǐ*
 developed, advanced *fādá*
 dial *bō*
 dictionary *zìdiǎn* (MW *běnn*)
 die *sǐ*
 different *bù tóng*
 difficult *nán*
 difficulty; difficult *kùnnan*
 dining room *fàntīng*
 direct *zhíjiē*
 dirty *zāng*
 discover *fāxiàn*
 dish, vegetable *cài*
 disturb *dǎrǎo*
 divide, distinguish *fēn*
 do as one pleases *suíbiàn*
 do taijiquan *dǎ tàijíquán*
 do the action of the verb
 satisfactorily *-hǎo*
 do, to make *zuò*
 doctor *yīshēng*
 doctor *dàifu*
 don't *bié*
 door, gate *mén*
 double bed
 shuāngrénchuáng
 (MW *zhāng*)
 double room
 shuāngrénfángjiān
 downstairs *lóuxià*
 draw, paint *huà huà*
 draw up, subscribe to,
 order *dìng*

drink *hē*
 drink a toast *gān bēi*
 drive (v-o) *kāi chē*
 driver *kāi chē de*
 drunk *zuì*
 dumpling, kind of ravioli
 jiǎozi
 duvet, quilt *bèizi*

 each, every *měi*
 each and every *gègè*
 east (side) *dōng(bianr)*
 easy *róngyì*
 eat one's fill *chī bǎo*
 eat (meal) *chī fàn*
 education, to educate
 jiàoyù
 egg(s) *jīdàn*
 egg(s) (boiled) *zhǔjīdàn*
 egg(s) (fried) *jiānjīdàn*
 egg(s) (poached) *wòjīdàn*
 egg(s) (scrambled) *chǎojīdàn*
 eight *bā*
 elder brother *gēge*
 elder sister *jiějie*
 electric cable *diànxiàn*
 electric fan *diànshàn*
 electric light *diàndēng*
 enemy *dírén*
 engaged (of people)
 dìnghūn
 English language *Yīngyǔ*
 enjoy rights, etc., treat
 xiǎngshòu
 enjoy good fortune, happy,
 well-being *xìngfú*
 enjoy oneself so much as
 to forget to go home
 liúlián wàng fān
 enquire *dātīng*
 enter *jìn*
 entertaining, enjoyable
 hǎowán(r)
 envelope *xìnfēng*

equal to, be equivalent to
děngyú

equipment, facilities

shèbèi

especially, special *tèbié*

etc. *děng*

Europe *Ōuzhōu*

even (conj.) *lián*

even if, even though *jíshǐ*

even more, still more *gèng*

evening *wǎnshang*

evening meal *wǎnfàn*

everlasting, last forever

wàngǔ chángcún

every, any, all *fánshì*

everybody *dàjiā*

everything *yíqiè*

everywhere *dàochù*

exactly like *yímó yíyàng*

exactly, that's just the way

it is *kěbúshì*

excellent (coll.) *bàng*

except, apart from

chúle . . . (yǐwài)

exception *lìwài*

exchange (money) *duìhuàn*

exchange rate (market

quotation) *páijià*

excuse me *láojià*

exercise (n and v) *liànxí*

expensive *guì*

expert, specialist *zhuānjiā*

expert card *zhuānjiāzhèng*

expire, become due *dàoqī*

explain, speak at length

jiǎng

expression, to express one's

feelings *biǎoqíng*

extremely *fēicháng* or *shífēn*

extremely (follows adjective)

-jile

face *liǎn*

face flannel *miànjin*

facing, towards *xiàng*

factory *gōngchǎng*

family, home *jiā*

famous *yǒu míng*

far *yuǎn*

fat *pàng*

father *fùqīn*

fear, be afraid of *pà*

feel *juéde*

feeling, sense *gǎnjué*

feelings *gǎnqíng*

fellow student *tóngxué*

female *nǚ*

female student(s) *nǚshēng*

few *shǎo*

fiancé *wèihūnfū*

fiancée *wèihūnqī*

fifteen *shíwǔ*

fill in (e.g. form) *tián(xiě)*

film *diànyǐng*

find out, understand, know

liǎojiě

finally, the last *zuìhòu*

fine, clear, bright (of weather)

qíng

finger *zhǐ*

finish work *xià bān*

first (adv) *xiān*

flash (light) *shǎnguāngdēng*

flavour, taste *wèidao*

floor (first) *èrlóu*

floor (ground) *yìlóu*

flour *miànfěn*

flower(s) *huā*

fluent *liúlì*

for, for the sake of *wèi*

for; give *gěi*

for example *bǐfang shuō* or

bǐrú

for the sake of, in order to

wèile

Forbidden City (Imperial

Palace) *Gùgōng*

foreign country *wàiguó*

- foreign currency *wàibì*
 foreign devil *yángguǐzi*
 foreign exchange (certificate)
wàihuì(quàn)
 foreign flavour *yángwèi(r)*
 foreign guest, visitor
wàibīn
 forever *yǒngyuǎn*
 forget *wàng(jì)*
 forget it, let it pass *suàn le*
 forgive *yuánliàng*
 form a company or
 partnership *héhuò*
 form of address, to
 address *chēnghū*
 form, pattern *yàngshì*
 former *qiánzhě*
 four *sì*
 France *Fǎguó*
 frank(ly) *tǎnshuài (de)*
 free, freedom *zìyóu*
 freeze, ice over *jié bīng*
 freezer *bīngguì*
 French (person) *Fǎguó rén*
 frequently, more often than
 not *wǎngwǎng*
 fresh *xīnxiān*
 Friday *xīngqīwǔ*
 friend *péngyou*
 friendship *yǒuyì*
 Friendship Store *Yǒuyì*
Shāngdiàn
 from (movement involved)
cóng
 from (static) *lí*
 front, in front of
qiánbian(r)
 fruit *shuǐguǒ*
 fruit juice *shuǐguǒzhī*
 full, to reach the limit;
 expire *mǎn*
 funny, laughable *hǎoxiào*
 funny (colloq.) *dòu*
 furniture *jiājù*
 gains, results, harvest
shōuhuò
 garage *chēkù*
 garden *huāyuán*
 generally speaking *yìbān lái*
shuō
 generally, general *yìbān*
 genuine *dìdào*
 geography *dìlǐ*
 Germany *Déguó*
 get, fetch *qǔ*
 get-together, party
liánhuānhuì
 give; far *gěi*
 give a farewell dinner
jiàn xíng
 give/have an injection
dǎ zhēn
 give as a present; see
 somebody off *sòng*
 give back as of change; to
 look for *zhǎo*
 glad, happy *gāoxìng*
 glass (tumbler) *bōlibēi*
 glove(s) *shǒutào*
 go *qù*
 go against (e.g. wind) *dǐng*
 go by transport *zuò chē*
 go shopping *mǎi dōngxi*
 go to some expense *pòfèi*
 go to the toilet *shàng cèsuǒ*
 go through (e.g. solicitor)
tōngguò
 go window shopping
guàng dà jiē
 go/come to, to arrive
dào ... qù(lái)
 good *hǎo*
 good taste, flavour *zīwèi*
 goodbye *zàijiàn*
 goods *huò*
 government *zhèngfǔ*
 graduate *bìyè*
 grammar *yǔfǎ*

- grape *pútáo*
 Great Hall of the People
Rénmín Dàhuitáng
 Great Wall *Chángchéng*
 green tea (Chinese) *lǜchá*
 group, crowd, flock *qún*
 grown up, big *dà*
 grudge doing something
shěbude
 guess *cāi*
- ha ha *hāhā*
 had better; best *zuihǎo*
 hair *tóufa*
 half *bàn*
 hall *tīng*
 ham *huǒtuǐ*
 hand *shǒu*
 hand towel *shǒujīn*
 (MW *tiáo*)
 handsome; beautifully
 (coll.) *shuài*
 handle, attend to, do *bàn*
 hat *màozi*
 happy, joyful, cheerful
kuàilè or *yúkuài*
 hastily *gǎnkuài*
 have *yǒu*
 have a holiday or vacation
fāngjià
 have an injection *dǎzhēn*
 have free time *yǒukòng*
 have fun *wán(r)*
 have plenty of *yǒudeshì*
 have the capacity to *-xià*
 have to, had better *zhīhǎo*
 he *tā*
 health, body *shēntǐ*
 healthy, sound *jiànkāng*
 hear of, be told *tīngshuō*
 heart's desire *wànshìrúyì*
 heaven, paradise *tiāntáng*
 heavy *zhòng*
 hello (on telephone) *wèi*
- help, do a favour (colloq.)
bāngmáng
 help *bāngzhù*
 her *tā*
 here *zhèr (zhèlǐ)*
 hi-fi *zǔhéyīnxiǎng*
 him *tā*
 hm *ng*
 holidays, vacation *jiàqī*
 home, family *jiā*
 honestly, really; true, real
shízài
 Hong Kong *Xiānggǎng*
 hope *xīwàng*
 horizontal *héng*
 hors d'oeuvres *lěngpán*
 horse *mǎ*
 hospital *yīyuàn*
 hospitality, entertain
zhāodài
 hot *rè*
 hot milk *rèniúnnǎi*
 hotel *lǚguǎn*
 hour *xiǎoshí/zhōngtóu*
 housing, accommodation
zhùfáng
 how (as in 'how do you
 know?') *zěnmē*
 how (as in 'how long?' or
 'how lovely') *duō*
 how many *duōshǎo*
 how many (less than 10)?;
 several *jǐ*
 however *què*
 hundred (yì) *bǎi*
 hundred million *yì*
 hungry *è*
 husband, wife *àiren*
- I, me *wǒ*
 ID card (employees)
gōngzuòzhèng
 identify with, become one
 with *dǎchéng yípiàn*

if *rúguǒ* or *yàoshi*
if it's not . . . , then it's . . .

bú shi . . . jiù shi

if . . . then *yào(shi)* . . .
(*de huà*), *jiù*

if . . . then *rúguǒ* . . .
(*de huà*), *jiù*

immediately *mǎshàng*

important *zhòngyào*

in, at *zài*

in person, oneself
běnrén

in the heart or mind
xīnlǐ

in the middle of -ing
zhèngzài . . . ne

in the room *wūlǐ*

include *bāokuò*

indeed, really, true, certain
quèshí

individual (person) *gèrén*

inflate, pump *dǎ qì*

inside *lǐ*

intend, to plan *dǎsuàn*

interest (e.g. bank) *lìxī*

interested in something
gǎn xìngqù

interesting *yǒu yìsi*

International Hotel

Guójì Fàndiàn

interpret *fānyì*

introduce *jièshào*

invite *qǐng*

invite somebody for a meal
qǐng kè

iron *yùndǒu*

ironing board *tàngyījià*

it *tā*

Italy *Yìdàlì*

Italian (person) *Yìdàlìrén*

it doesn't matter *méi (yǒu)*
guānxi

it's a pity that *kěxī*

it's nothing *méi shénme*

jam *guǒjiàng*

Japan *Rìběn*

jasmine tea *huāchá*

be jealous *chī cù*

join, attend *cānjiā*

joint venture *héxī qǐyè*

journey, trip *lǚtú*

just *gāng*

just now *gāngcái*

just right, to happen to
zhènghǎo

keep pace with *gēnshàng*

keep, preserve *bǎocún*

kilogram *gōngjīn*

kilometre *gōnglǐ*

kitchen *chúfáng*

knife *dāozǐ*

knit, weave *zhī*

know (a fact) *zhīdao*

know how to, can *huì*

know, recognize *rènshi*

known as *jiàozuò*

last, up *shàng*

latest type, new-style *xīnshì*

latter *hòuzhě*

laugh, smile *xiào*

laughable, ridiculous *kěxiào*

lazy *lǎn*

leader, leadership *lǐngdǎo*

learn, study *xué(xí)*

leave (place or person) *líkāi*

leave the country *chūjìng*

leave, walk, go *zǒu*

leave (behind or for

somebody) *liú*

left over, remain

shèng(xiàlai)

lend; borrow *jiè*

lens cap *jìngtóugài*

less, few *shǎo*

let, to allow *ràng*

letter *xìn*

level, standard *shuǐpíng*

life, to live *shēnghuó*

like (v) *xǐhuan*

like this, in this way

zhèyàng

listen *tīng*

live in, at *zhù*

lively *huópo*

living room, lounge

kètīng

locality, land; the earth *dì*

London *Lúndūn*

long *cháng*

long distance telephone call

chángtú diànhuà

long life *chángshòu*

look for *zhǎo*

look, see, watch, read *kàn*

lose *diū*

loudly *dàshēng(de)*

lovable *kě'ài*

luggage, baggage *xíngli*

lunar calendar *yīnlì*

made locally (here, in

China) *guóchǎn*

magazine *zázhì*

majority *duōshù*

make *zuò*

make (*jiaozi*); to wrap;

to include *bāo*

male *nán*

manage to do action of verb,

-up to; -*dào*

many, more *duō*

Mao Zedong Mausoleum

Máo Zhǔxí Jìniàntáng

map *dítú*

market quotation (exchange

rate) *páijià*

marry, get married *jié hūn*

matter, thing *shì (qíng)*

(MW *jiàn*)

mattress *chuángdiàn*

meaning *yìsi*

meet (by appointment) *jiē*

meet one another *xiānghuì*

men and women, old and

young *nánnǚ lǎoshào*

menu *càidān*

merely *jiù*

method *bànfǎ*

metre *mǐ*

microwave oven *wēibōlú*

middle, between *zhōngjiān*

milk *niúnnǎi*

milk bottle *nǎipíng*

mirror *jìngzi*

Miss, young lady *xiǎojie*

mistake, error *cuòwù*

modern *xiàndài*

money *qián*

monotonous, dull *dāndiào*

month *yuè*

Monument to the People's

Heroes *Rénmín*

Yīngxióng Jìniànbēi

moon *yuèliàng*

mooncake *yuèbǐng*

moonlight *yuèguāng*

more, many *duō*

more and more *yuè lái yuè*

more often than not,

frequently *wǎngwǎng*

moreover *érgiě*

morning (early) *zǎoshang*

morning *shàngwǔ*

Moscow *Mòsikē*

most *zuì*

mother tongue *mǔyǔ*

motorbike *mótuōchē*

(MW *liàng*)

Mozart *Mòzhātè*

Mr, gentleman *xiānsheng*

Mrs, Madam (formal)

fūrén

Mrs, wife *tàitai*

muddle-headed *hútu*

mummy, mum *māma*
 Museum of National
 History *Zhōngguó Lìshǐ*
Bówùguǎn
 Museum of Revolution
Zhōngguó Géming
Bówùguǎn
 music *yīnyuè*
 must, need *děi*
 mustard *jièmo*

name (full) *xìngmíng*
 name (given) *míngzì*
 naturally *dāngrán*
 near *jìn*
 nearby *fùjìn*
 need not *búyòng* or *béng*
 need, require, needs (n)
xūyào
 new *xīn*
 New Year's Day *Yuándàn*
 newspaper *bào(zhǐ)*
(MW zhāng)
 next *xià*
 next door *gébì*
 Nikon *Níkòng*
 nine *jiǔ*
 no matter *bùguǎn*
 no sooner ... than ..., as
 soon as *yī... jiù*
 no wonder *nánguài*
 nonsense, talk
 nonsense *húshuō*
 normal, regular *zhèngcháng*
 north *běi*
 not *bù*
 not (used with *yǒu*) *méi*
 not have to *búbì*
 not only ... but
 also *búdàn... érqiě*
 not up to much
bù zěnmeyàng
 not ... any more *bù... le*
 not ... but *bú shì... ér shì*

not ... until ... ; only *cái*
 novel *xiǎoshuō* (MW *běn*)
 now, at present *xiànzài*
 number *hào*
 number (telephone) *hàomǎ*

o'clock *diǎn zhōng*
 objective, aim *mùbiāo*
 obligatory or required
 course *bìxiūkè(chéng)*
 occupation, profession *zhíyè*
 odd, strange *guài*
 of course, naturally *dāngrán*
 offer good wishes *zhù*
 offices, organization *jīguān*
 often *cháng(cháng)*
 oh! *ò*
 oh dear *āiyā*
 old *lǎo* (of people)
 old *jiù* (of things)
 old China hand; expert on
 China *Zhōngguótōng*
 'old foreigner' *lǎowài*
 old person or people *lǎorén*
 Old Summer Palace
Yuánmíngyuán
 old-fashioned *lǎoshì*
 on business *chū chāi*
 on the contrary *fǎn'ér*
 one *yī*
 one (used in speech instead of
yi in telephone and train
 numbers) *yāo*
 oneself; own *zìjǐ*
 only *zhǐ*
 open; switch on *kāi*
 open (personality) *kāilǎng*
 open (up); switch on *dǎkāi*
 opinion *yìjiàn*
 opposite, i.e. facing *duìmiàn*
 opposite, contrary *xiāngfǎn*
 opportunity, chance *jīhuì*
 or (used in questions) *háishi*
 or, perhaps *huò(zhě)*

orange juice *jú zǐ zhī*
 order (in advance) *dìng*
 originally *běnlái*
 otherwise *yàobù(rán)*
 otherwise, or else *fǒuzé*
 ought, should (*yīng*) *gāi*
 outside *wàimiàn*
 overcoat *dàyī* (MW *jiàn*)
 overseas, abroad *guówài*
 overweight *chāozhòng*
 Oxford *Niújīn*

pack, tidy up, put in
 order *shōushi*
 pail, bucket *shuǐtǒng*
 painting *huà*
 parcel form *bāoguǒdān*
 parcel, package *bāo(guǒ)*
 parents *fùmǔ*
 park *gōngyuán*
 part, section *bùfen*
 pass, go via *jīngguò*
 pass, cross *guò*
 passerby, stranger *lùrén*
 passport *hùzhào*
 past (the) *guòqù*
 patient, sick person *bìng rén*
 pay *fù*
 pay attention to, take note
 of *zhùyì*
 pepper *hújiāo*
 per cent *bǎifēn zhī . . .*
 perform, act *yǎn*
 period of time, spell
yízhènzǐ
 person *rén*
 photograph (n) *zhàopiàn*
 pillow *zhěntou*
 pillowcase *zhěntào*
 pitiable, pitiful *kělián*
 place *dìfang*
 plate, brand; card *pái*
 play (n) *xì*
 play ball *dǎ qiú*

play cards or mahjong
dǎ pái
 play (stringed instrument)
lǎ
 play chess *xià qí*
 plenty of *yoǔdeshì*
 plug *sāizi*
 plug (electric) *chātóu*
 poem *shī* (MW *shǒu*)
 poetry *shīgē*
 point at *zhǐ*
 point, aspect *diǎn*
 police, policeman *jǐngchá*
 polite *kèqǐ*
 political *zhèngzhì*
 poor (person) *qióng(rén)*
 post and telecommunications
 office *yóudiànjú*
 post, mail (verb) *jì*
 postage *yóufèi*
 pound sterling *Yīngbàng*
 practise *liànxí*
 precisely *jiùshì*
 preferential card
yōudàizhèng or
gòuwùzhǐfùzhèng
 (new type)
 preferential treatment
yōudài
 prejudice, bias *piānjiàn*
 prepare *zhǔnbèi*
 premier *zǒnglǐ*
 present, gift *lǐwù*
 pretty, beautiful *piàoliang*
 president *zǒngtǒng*
 pretty good *búcuò*
 previously; before
 (conj.) *yǐqián*
 previously, in the past
cóngqián
 price *jiàqián*
 principal(ly) *zhǔyào*
 privilege *tèquán*
 probably *dàgài*

produce, manufacture

*shēngchǎn*product *chǎnpǐn*pronunciation *fāyīn*propose (a toast), toast *jìng*prove *zhèngmíng*public *gōnggòng*

pull, to play (of stringed

instrument) *lā*pump (v-o), inflate *dǎ qì*put (in or on) *fàng(zài)*put away, receive *shōu(hǎo)*question, problem *wèntí*quick, fast *kuài*quiet *ānjìng*quite (+adj.) *xiāngdāng*

quite a bit, quite a few

bù shǎo

RMB (Chinese currency)

*rénmínbì*race (as in racism) *zhǒngzú*radiator *nuǎnqìpiàn*radio *shōuyīnjī*railway station *huǒchēzhàn*rain (v-o) *xià yǔ*rate of interest *lì(xī)lǜ*rather, quite, enough *gòu*read *kàn*read aloud *niàn*really, true *zhēn*reason, cause *yuányīn*recall, call to mind *xiǎng**qǐlai*receipt *shōujù*receive, accept *shōu*

recently, nearest,

latest *zuìjìn*

recite, read aloud with

expression *lǎngsòng*

record (v); recording (tape)

*lù yīn*red *hóng*refer to *zhǐ*

reflections, thoughts

*gǎnxiǎng*refrigerator *bīngxiāng*regard, kindly feelings *xīnyì*regard as, count as *suàn*register *guàhào*

registration charge

guàhàofèi

regret; to regret, be a pity

yìhàn

regularly, frequently

jīngcháng

reimbursement of

expenses *bàoxiāo*relation(ship) *guānxi*relatively *bǐjiào*reliable *kěkào*rely on, depend on *píng*remark, word *huà*remember *jìde*remove, move *bān*rent (n) for house *fángzū*rent, hire (v) *zū*representative *dàibiǎo*resemble *xiàng*

reserve for someone; remain;

let grow; leave *liú*rest *xiūxi*retire *tuìxiū*return (as of money) *huán*return *huí*

return to your own

country *huí guó*rich in, full of *fùyú*ride (as of horse, bicycle) *qí*right(s) *quánlì*road *lù*romantic *làngmàn*roof *wūdǐng, fándǐng*room *fángjiān*room charge *fángfèi*round *yuán*row, line *pái*

rule, regulation *guīdìng*
run *pǎo*

sacrifice (v) *xīshēng*

salt *yán*

sandwich *sānmíngzhì*

scales (for weighing)

tiānpíng

school *xuéxiào*

Scotland *Sūgélán*

script (writing system)

wénzì

season (of year) *jìjié*

seat (in train) hard *yìngzuò*

seat (in train) soft *ruǎnzuò*

sea-water *hǎishuǐ*

secret (adj.; n) *mìmi*

see, meet *jiàn*

see, watch *kàn*

seem *hǎoxiàng*

sell *mài*

send *sòng*

send a telegram *dǎ diànbào*

send by post or mail *yóujì*

sender *jìjiàn rén*

sense of humour *yōumògǎn*

sentimentalist

shānggǎnzhǔyìzhě

serve as; be *dāng*

service, to serve *fúwù*

set (n) *tào*

set one's mind at rest

fàng xīn

seven *qī*

several *jǐ*

sew up *féng shang*

sewing-machine *féngrènjī*

she *tā*

sheet *chuángdān*

shirt, blouse *chènshān*

shoe(s) *xié*

shop *shāngdiàn*

shop-assistant *shòuhuòyuán*

short (in length) *duǎn*

shout, cry out *hǎn*

show, produce *chūshì*

show, explain, illustrate

shuōmíng

shower *(línyù)pēntóu*

sick person *bīng rén*

side *pángbianr*

sign, signature *qiān zì*

silk *sīchóu*

simple *jiǎndān*

single bed *dānrénchuáng*

single room *dānrénfángjiān*

sink *chízi* or *xǐwǎnchí*

sisters *jiěmèi/zǐmèi*

sit *zuò*

situation *qíngkuàng*

six *liù*

skate (v) *huá bīng*

ski (v) *huá xuě*

sleep, go to bed *shuì (jiào)*

sleeper (in train) hard

yìngwò

sleeper (in train) soft

ruǎnwò

slow *màn*

small *xiǎo*

small token, mere trifle

xiǎoyìsì

smile, laugh *xiào*

smoke (v-o) *chōu yān* or *xī*

yān

snore (v-o) *dǎ hān*

snore (colloq.) (v-o)

dǎ hū(lu)

snow (v-o) *xià xuě*

so, in that case *nàme* or

zhème

soap *féizào (MW kuài)*

soap (toilet) *xiāngzào*

socket *chāzuò*

sofa, settee *shāfā*

sold out, full house *kè mǎn*

soldier *bīng*

some (yì) *xiē*

some (subject or topic position only) *yǒude*
 sometimes *yǒu(de) shíhou*
 son *érzi*
 soon *zǎorì*
 sorry, excuse me *duibuqǐ*
 sort, kind *zhǒng*
 sound (v) *tīng qīlai*
 south *nán*
 soya sauce *jiàngyóu*
 Spanish language

Xībānyáwén

spank (v-o) *dǎ pìgu*
 speak *shuō*
 speak, talk (v-o) *shuō huà*
 spend *huā*
 spicy or hot (food) *là(de)*
 spoon *sháozi*
 spot *diǎnr (coll.)*
 spring (season) *chūntiān*
 stable, steady, to stabilize
wěndìng
 stairs, staircase *lóutī*
 stamp (postage) *yóupiào*
 stand *zhàn*
 start, to open; to drive *kāi*
 stay *dāi*
 steady boy- or girlfriend
duìxiàng
 stick (on) *tiē(shang)*
 still, in addition *hái*
 stop (bus etc) *zhàn*
 street *jiē*
 strange *qíguài*
 strenuous, energy
 consuming *fèijìn(r)*
 student *xuésheng*
 student card
xuéshēngzhèng
 student studying abroad
liúxuéshēng
 study (v), learn *dú shū* or
xuéxí
 study (n) *shūfáng*

stupid *bèn*
 subconsciousness *xiàyìshí*
 subject to; receive *shòu*
 sugar, sweets, candy *táng*
 suitable *héshì*
 suite, (settee and two easy
 chairs) *shāfā (MW tàò)*
 summer *xiàtiān*
 Summer Palace *Yíhéyuán*
 sunbathe *shài tàiyáng*
 sunglasses *tàiyángjìng*
 sunrise *rìchū*
 sunset *rìluò*
 superior(s) *shàngjí*
 supper, dinner *wǎncān*
 suspect *huáiyí*
 swear at, curse *mà*
 sweater, woolly *máoyī*
 sweet *tián*
 sweets, sugar *táng*
 swim (v-o) *yóuyǒng*
 switch (n) *kāiguān*
 Switzerland *Ruìshì*
 sympathize with *tóngqíng*

table *zhuōzi (MW zhāng)*
 table lamp *táidēng*
 take a photo *zhào xiàng*
 take a stroll, walk *sàn bù*
 take hold of, receive, to
 meet *jiē*
 take leave of *gàobié*
 take off (of aircraft) *qǐfēi*
 take out *ná chū*
 take turns, in turn *lúnliú*
 tall, high *gāo*
 tap *lóngtóu*
 tape *cídài*
 tape recorder *lùyīnjī*
 tasty, delicious *hǎo chī*
 tea *chá*
 tea (Chinese) *lùchá*
 tea (Indian) *hóngchá*
 tea (jasmine) *huāchá*

tea (leaves) *cháyè*
 teach *jiāo*
 teacher *jiàoyuán* or *lǎoshī*
 teacup *chábēi*
 teahouse *cháguǎn*
 technique *jìshù*
 telegram (n) *diànbào*
 telephone (n) *diànhuà(jī)*
 telephone (v-o) *dǎ diànhuà*
 telephone number *diànhuà hàomǎ*
 television *diànshì(jī)*
 (MW *tái*)
 tell, let know *gàosu*
 temperament *píqì*
 Temple of Heaven *Tiāntán*
 ten thousand (yí) *wàn*
 tennis *wǎngqiú*
 terrifying, frightening *kǐpà*
 text *kèwén* (MW *kè*)
 thank, thank you *xièxie*
 that *nà* (or *nèi*)
 that is, viz. *jí*
 the same as ...
gēn ... yíyàng
 theatre and cinema
yǐngjùyuàn
 then *jiù*
 there *nàr* or *nàlǐ*
 there is/there are *yǒu*
 therefore *suǒyǐ*
 Thermos flask *rèshuǐpíng*
 they *tāmen*
 thick *hòu*
 thing(s) *dōngxi*
 think; feel like doing
 something *xiǎng*
 think, consider *rènwéi*
 this *zhè* (or *zhèi*)
 this kind of *zhè yàng*
 this locality *běndì*
 this year *jīnnián*
 thousand (yì) *qiān*
 three *sān*

Tiananmen Square
Tiān'ānmén Guǎngchǎng
 ticket *piào*
 ticket price *piàojià*
 ticket seller *shòupiàoyuán*
 tie *lǐngdài*
 time (length of) *shíjiān*
 time, occasion *cì*
 timetable, schedule
shíkèbiǎo
 tin, can *guàntóu*
 to *dào*
 toast *kǎomiànbāo*
 tobacco, cigarette *yān*
 today *jīntiān*
 together *yìqǐ*
 toilet *cèsuǒ*
 toilet paper *wèishēngzhǐ*
 toilet soap *xiāngzào*
 tomato juice *fānqiézhī*
 tomorrow *míngtiān*
 tone *shēngdiào*
 too, extremely *tài*
 toothbrush *yáshuā*
 (MW *bǎ*)
 toothpaste *yágāo*
 (MW *tǒng*)
 top, peak; MW for hat *dǐng*
 tourism; to tour *lǚyóu*
 tourist, sightseer *yóukè*
 towards, to, in the direction
 of *wàng*
 towel *máojīn* (MW *tiáo*)
 towel rail *máojīnjià*
 town, city *chéngshì*
 train *huǒchē*
 translate *fānyì*
 travel *lǚxíng*
 traveller's cheque *lǚxíng zhīpiào*
 tree *shù* (MW *kē*)
 trouble, troublesome *máfan*
 turn, transfer *zhuǎn*
 two *liǎ*

two (number) èr
 two (of a kind) liǎng
 type (v-o) dǎ zì
 type, kind yàng

US dollar Měiyuán
 uh-huh m
 unbearable shòu bù liǎo
 uncover, open jiēkāi
 under(neath), below
 xiàbianr
 understand dǒng
 understand, clear míngbai
 undertaking, cause shiyè
 unit dānwèi
 unless chǔfēi
 up, last shàng
 upper berth shàngpù
 upstairs lóushàng
 us wǒmen
 use yòng
 useful yǒu yòng
 USSR Sūlián
 usually, ordinary píngcháng

vase huāpíng
 vegetables shūcài
 Venice Wēinísī
 vertical shù
 very hěn
 very many duō dehěn
 very, rather tǐng
 video recorder lùxiàngjī
 vigour hǔqì
 vinegar; jealousy (as in love
 affairs) cù
 visit, sightsee yóulǎn

wages gōngzī
 wait děng
 walk zǒu
 want to, must yào
 wardrobe yīguì
 warm nuǎnhuo

warm-hearted,
 enthusiastic rèqíng
 washbasin xǐliǎnpén
 washing machine xǐyījī
 waste, squander làngfèi
 watch, see kàn
 water shuǐ
 water and electricity
 charges shuǐdiànfei
 way of saying something
 shuōfǎ
 way of doing something
 zuòfǎ
 we wǒmen
 we (including listener)
 zánmen
 we'll meet again some day
 hòuhuì yǒu qī
 wear (clothes) chuān
 wear (hat, gloves, glasses,
 etc) dài
 weather tiānqì
 week xīngqī
 weekend zhōumò
 weep, cry kū
 welcome huānyíng
 well-being, happy xìngfú
 well-known, famous
 wénmíng
 West, the West Xīfāng
 West Lake Xīhú
 west (side) xī(bianr)
 Western food Xīcān
 Westerner Xīfāngrén
 what/what? shénme
 what about (it)?; how?
 zěnmeyàng
 whatever you do qiānwàn
 what one sees and hears
 jiànwén
 what's the matter?
 zěnlme le
 what's to be done?
 zěnlme bàn

when *de shíhou*
 when? *shénme shíhou*
 where? *nǎ*
 which? *nǎ (or něi)*
 white *bái*
 who? *shéi (or shuí)*
 whole, entire *zhěnggè*
 why? *wèi shénme*
 will (showing possibility)
 huì
 willing *yuànyì*
 wind *fēng*
 window *chuānghu*
 wine *pútáojiǔ*
 wine bottle *jiǔpíng*
 winter *dōngtiān*
 with, and *gēn*
 withdraw money *qǔ qián*
 woman *fùnǚ*
 work out bill, make bill
 suàn zhàng
 work, to work *gōngzuò*
 worker *gōngrén*

world *shìjiè*
 worry about *cāo xīn*
 worth, deserve *zhíde*
 wrap up *bāo shang*
 write (characters) *xiě (zì)*

yawn (v-o) *dǎ hāqian*
 year *nián*
 year (of age) *sui*
 year after next *hòunián*
 yen *Rìyuán*
 yesterday *zuótiān*
 yoghurt *suān (niú)nǎi*
 you *nǐ*
 you (plural) *nǐmen*
 you (polite form) *nín*
 you flatter me *guòjiǎng*
 young *niánqīng*
 young fellow *xiǎohuǒzi*
 younger brother *dìdi*
 younger sister *mèimei*

zero *líng*

1 Making friends (i)**第一课 交朋友(1)**

李 王先生，你好！

王 李先生，你好！

李 请坐。

王 谢谢。

李 请喝咖啡。

王 谢谢，我不喝咖啡。

李 那么，中国茶行不行？

王 行，谢谢你！我很喜欢喝中国茶。

2 Making friends (ii)**第二课 交朋友(2)**

李 王先生，我给你介绍一下，这是我爱人，周德津。

王 李太太，您好！

李太太 王先生，您好！认识您，我真高兴。

王 请坐，请坐。喝一杯酒吧。

李 谢谢，我喝一杯。

王 李太太呢?
 李太太 谢谢,我不会喝酒。
 王 那么,桔子汁好吗?
 李太太 好,谢谢您。

3 Making friends (iii)

第三课 交朋友(3)

王 李先生,你们有小孩儿吗?
 李 有,我们有两个,一个男孩儿,一个女孩儿。
 王 男孩儿几岁?女孩儿几岁?
 李 男孩儿十四岁,女孩儿九岁。
 李太太 王先生结婚了吗?
 王 没有。
 李太太 有对象吗?
 王 ‘对象’是什么意思?
 李 ‘对象’是女朋友的意思。你有女朋友吗?
 王 有。
 李太太 她在哪儿?她也在中国吗?
 王 对,她也在中国。
 李 我想请你们去我们家玩儿,好吗?
 王 那太好了。
 李太太 你们明天晚上有空吗?
 王 有空。
 李 那么,请你们俩明天晚上去我们家吃饭吧。

王 那太谢谢你们了！几点钟去呢？

李太太 六点怎么样？

王 行，就六点吧。

4 At the Lis' (i)

第四课 在李先生家(1)

王 我给你们介绍一下，这位是我的女朋友，史爱理。这位是李先生，这位是李太太。

李 史小姐，您好！

李太太 李先生、李太太，你们好！

史 请随便坐吧。

李太太 史小姐，您也是从英国来的吗？

史 是，我也是从英国来的。

李 啊，你们俩都是英国人。

李太太 史小姐，您在这儿作什么？

史 我在这儿学习汉语。

李 您在哪个学校学习汉语？

史 我在北京大学学习汉语。

李 学校里生活怎么样？

史 很不错。

李太太 你们一定很饿了。我们吃饭吧。

今天晚上吃中国菜行吗？

王 好极了！

李 别客气，自己来吧。你们会用筷子吗？

王 会用，但是用得不好。

- 李 没关系……嗯，你们都用得不错啊！
- 李太太 我做菜做得不好，请原谅。
- 史 您做菜做得很好。
- 李太太 史小姐会做菜吗？
- 史 会一点儿，但是技术不高。
- 王 她英国菜做得非常好。
- 李 中国菜做得怎么样？
- 史 我中国菜做得不怎么样。
- 李太太 你们最好少说话，多吃饭吧，要不然菜都凉了！

5 At the Lis' (ii)

第五课 在李先生家(2)

- 李 别客气，再多吃一点儿。
- 王 吃饱了，菜都很好吃。
- 李太太 你们愿意喝咖啡还是喝茶？
- 王 我随便。
- 史 喝茶吧。
(喝完了茶)
- 李太太 史小姐，看一看我们的小房子吧？
- 史 好，谢谢您。永寿，你陪李先生谈话吧。
- 李太太 这是厨房，地方很小，所以冰箱、洗衣机都放在外面厅里。我们只有三个房间，儿子一间，女儿一间。

- 史 孩子们有自己的房间可以安安静静地读书。
- 李太太 我和老李的房间只好又当卧室又当客厅。
- 史 你们的客厅布置得很漂亮。电视是彩色的还是黑白的？
- 李太太 是彩色的。要不要看一下？
- 史 不用了。时间不早了，我们(应)该回去了。
- 王 时间过得真快。李先生、李太太，我们得走了，谢谢你们的热情招待。我们玩儿得非常高兴，给你们添了不少麻烦。
- 李 没什么，欢迎你们再来玩儿。
- 王/史 一定来，谢谢你们。再见。
- 李 慢走，慢走。

7 My family

第七课 我的家庭

我叫张占一。我家在北京。我家有五口人——爸爸、妈妈、哥哥、姐姐和我。我没有弟弟，也没有妹妹。

我姐姐三十岁，还没有找到对象呢(还没有结婚呢!)，这种情况在中国很少。哥哥比姐姐小两岁，比我大一岁半。

爸爸、妈妈年纪比较大了。爸爸今年六十一岁，是(一)个老教员，在北京语言学院教外国留学生汉语。

妈妈比爸爸小三岁，以前是个工人，现在已经退休了。他们俩身体非常好。

姐姐在医院当医生，哥哥在部队当兵，所以他们不常在家。

我在北京饭店当服务员，工作有一点儿单调，但是我和同事们的关系很好，所以还过得去。

我们一家人感情也都很好，日子过得还不错。

8 My home

第八课 我的家

我们住得很简单，只有三间房加上厨房和厕所。父母的卧室同时也当客厅。

我和哥哥睡(在)一个房间，我们每(个)人(都)有一张书桌，在那儿读书总(是)比在客厅里安静得多。

姐姐的房间比我们兄弟俩的那间还小，只放得下一张床、一张小小的桌子和一把椅子。

我们兄弟、姊妹参加工作以后，除了休息那天以外，很少在家，所以住得没有以前那么挤，父母也比以前住得舒服一些。

我想在西方一般住房比我们大些。你们除了卧室以外还有客厅，有的有书房，有的还有饭厅，听说有花园的也很多。

我们家家具不多，客厅里有一张双人床、一个沙发、一个衣柜、一台电视(机)。

还有一套组合音响，是日本货。缝纫机是国产货。

吃饭的时候，大圆桌和椅子都搬进来。冬天天气冷的时候，单位给我们烧暖气。虽然你们发达国家工资比我们高得多，但是我们房租、水电费等都比你们便宜多了。

我们家地方不大，可是按中国现在的标准，我们过得还不错。

9 Hotels

第九课 旅馆

北京的旅馆单人房间特别少。多数是双人房间。

要是你愿意一个人住双人房间，当然也可以，但是往往要付双人房间的房费。

外国专家和留学生凭工作证或(者)学生证，平常可以享受优待。

住外宾的大部分房间都包括浴室和厕所。浴室里有浴盆和淋浴喷头，也都有毛巾、浴巾、肥皂、卫生纸、玻璃杯等。

每个房间里都有电话、电视、热水瓶、茶叶、茶杯、凉开水什么的。(大)多数住我们饭店的外宾早上吃西餐。

有的人想用汉语订菜。您以前见过中文菜单没有？如果没见过的话，就看看课文下边的菜单吧。服务员从前用算盘算帐，但是现在用计算机的越来越多了。

北京的饭店很多。除了成千上万的游客以外，一部分外国公司的代表(即商人)也住饭店，所以饭店的生意总是很不错的。价钱却越来越贵了，而且服务、设备还不一定跟得上。

我在北京饭店工作，接触过的外国人很多。我们中国人不得不承认他们在某些方面享受一定的特权，即使这些特权有(的)时候只限于随时都可以进饭店上厕所！其实谁用过中国公共厕所，谁都会同情他们这种作法的！

10 Weather, dates and seasons 第十课 气候、日期和四季

今年北京的天气很不正常。冬天不冷，夏天也不热。应该下雪的时候并没有下，应该下雨的时候也没有下，真奇怪！

是不是整个世界的气候正在变呢？欧洲平常没有北京那么冷，但是今年反而有的时候比北京还冷。

春天、秋天是北京最好的季节，可惜太短了。要是在中国旅行的话，五月和九月天气最好，晴天多，阴天少。天气一好，公园里的人就很多。老人下棋的下棋，打牌的打牌，聊天儿的聊天儿，早上打太极拳的有的是。中国有些地方比如四川、广东等地在茶馆里坐着喝茶的也很多。

中国人一般一个星期工作五天，象大部分欧洲国家星期六也休息。虽然机关干部星期天休息，有的工厂星期天也照常生产，工人轮流休息。

今天是星期天，天气特别好，男女老少一群一群都出去玩儿。公园里散步的散步，照相的照相，有的喜欢逛大街，商店里总是很挤，整个北京热闹极了。

在中国要(是)想找一个安静的地方，一个人呆一会儿，是很难办到的。你要想晒太阳，就得跟成千上万的人一起晒！反正星期天到处都是人！

今年冬天结冰以后，我经常去滑冰，一下班就跑到北海公园去滑。如果在家就到附近的圆明园或颐和园去滑。

11 In the restaurant 第十一课 在饭馆里

张 你们菜订好了没有？

史 订好了，谢谢你。啤酒来了。啊！不是北京啤酒而是青岛啤酒。

张 没关系，青岛啤酒更好喝。您普通话说得真好。

史 过奖，过奖，说得不好。

张 说得很好。您是哪国人？

史 你猜猜吧。

张 不是美国人就是英国人。

- 史 我是英国人。你怎么知道呢？
- 张 因为刚才您是跟您朋友说英语！您朋友也会说汉语吗？
- 史 也会说。
- 王 说得没他好。
- 张 啊！你们俩的汉语真棒，学了几年了？
- 史 学了两年了。
- 张 您呢？(指的是王永寿)
- 王 学了四年了。
- 张 你们在中国待了很长时间了吧？
- 王 不长，来了三个多月了。
- 张 这是你们第一次来中国吗？
- 王 不，她是第一次，我是第二次。
- 张 你们真行，发音很清楚，没什么洋味儿，很标准的普通话。学中文不是很难学吗？
- 王 难是难，可是也有它容易的地方，比方说中文发音、语法都并不难，难的是声调。对我们西方人来说，中文的四声还是相当困难的。
- 张 写汉字呢？
- 史 写汉字很不容易，因为我们外国人一般是成年人才开始学中文，不象你们六、七岁就开始了。当然还有一点，中文就是你们的母语。
- 张 那倒是。象你们这样的水平，报纸看得懂吗？

史 看得懂。

张 小说呢？

史 也行，但是不认识的字还要查字典。
啊！菜来了，真漂亮啊！看起来一定很好吃。

张 那么，你们慢慢儿吃吧，不再打扰你们了。有什么事，随时可以叫我。

王 好的，谢谢你，有什么事一定找你。
跟你聊天儿很有意思。

The first number in each entry refers to the chapter, the second to the section within the Grammar of the chapter.

- abbreviations, **4.5, 21.3**
- adjectives
 - as verbs, **1.2**
 - plus *dehěn*, **22.4**
 - reduplication of, **5.8**
 - with or without *de*, **5.7**
- adverb (adv. phrase of)
 - order of, **8.1**
 - place, **4.3**
 - plus *de*, **5.6**
 - position of, **1.6**
 - 'time how long', **10.12**
 - 'time when', **3.8**
- auxiliary verbs, **5.14, 12**

- ba*, **2.7**
- bǎ*, **18.1**
- bèi*, **21.6**
- bǐ*, **7.5**
- bié*, **4.7**
- bìng*, **10.1**
- bù*, **1.4**
 - tones on, **1.7**
 - plus verb plus *le*, **5.13**
- bú shì* . . . *ér shì*, **11.1**
- bú shì* . . . *jiù shì*, **11.2**
- bú shì* . . . *ma?*, **11.7**
- bùguǎn* . . . *dōu/yě*, **20.6**
- búlùn* . . . *dōu/yě*, **20.6**

- cái*, **11.9**
- chéngyǔ*, **21.2**

- Chinese language, **9.3**
- chuān*, **21.8**
- chúfēi* . . . *cái*, **20.7**
- comparative
 - with *bǐ*, **7.5, 8.3**
 - with *gēn* . . . *yíyàng*, **19.1**
 - with *yǒu*, **8.3**
- compass, points of, **17.1**
- complement, of degree, **4.8**
- cóngqián*, **9.5**
- conjunctions, position of, **10.15, 12**

- dǎ*, plus object, **10.9**
- dà*, with ages, **7.6**
- dài*, **21.8**
- dào* . . . *qù/lái*, **10.17**
- dates, **15.1**
- days, of the week, **10.13**
- de*
 - linking clauses, **9.7**
 - linking two nouns, **3.5**
 - nominalizer, **5.12, 20.8**
- de shíhou*, position of, **8.4**
- děng*, plus noun, **10.10**
- dì*, plus number, **11.6**
- directional endings
 - compound, **8.9, 11.13**
 - simple, **5.1 (II)**
- duō*
 - plus noun, **5.15**
 - plus verb, **4.9**
- dynasties, **15**

Earthy Branches, 22

ér, 19.3

èr, compared with liǎng, 3.2

exclamations, 22.1

expressions, colloquial, 19.8

fàng, plus zài, 5.4

fánshì . . . dōu, 20.1

fēi . . . bùkě, 20.3

Festivals, 19

'foreign devils', 21

FEC, 19.2, 20

fractions, 19.4

gěi, 2.1

gēn . . . yìqǐ, 10.16

gòu, 19.6

guānxi, 11

guo, verbal suffix, 9.2

hái méi yǒu . . . ne, 7.4

háishi, in questions, 5.2

hǎoxiàng, 21.4

hé, 5.9

Heavenly Stems, 22

huì, 2.9

huì . . . de, 9.11

huòzhě, 9.1

indirect object, position of, 7.9

jiǎ, 17.3

jiào, 21.6

jiù, 3.11, 11.9

jiùshì, 11.10

job description, 7.8

kěxī, 10.4

kuài, plus yào . . . le, 16.4

lǎo, 5.10

le

change of state, 4.6

more on, 11.4

sentence final particle, 7.10

verbal suffix, 3.4

with kuài plus yào, 16.4

with tài, 3.7

lí, 17.4

lián yìdiǎn . . . yě/dōu bù, 21.11

liǎng, compared with èr, 3.2

ma, question form with, 2.10

measure words, 2.6, 3.1, 4.1, 12

reduplication of, 10.14

měi . . . dōu, 8.2

money, 14.1

months, of the year, 10.5

mǒu, 9.9

names, 1.1, 7.1

foreign, 4.2, 19.9

ne, 2.8

negative, double, 9.8

nián, 8.5

nín, 2.4

numbers, 2.11

approximate, 11.5

telephone, 16.1

opposites, balance with, 21.5

passive, the, 21.6

percentages, 19.2

place-words, 17.2

extensions of, 19.5

pluralizer suffix *men*, 5.5

poetry, 22

progressive aspect, 10.3

proverbs, 21.2, 22.5

punctuation, 5.16

qǐng, 1.3

question, answering of, 3.6

question form, positive and
negative, 1.5

question words

their position, 3.3

used in a non-question way, 9.10

ràng, 21.6

receipts, 18

resultative verbs, 5.1, 11.12, 12

potential, 7.13

rúguǒ (*de huà*), jiù . . . , 9.4

RMB, 19, 20

shàng

adj./noun plus *shàng*, 20.4
resultative verb ending, 18.3

shǎo

plus noun, 5.15
plus verb, 4.9

shì, 2.3

shì bu shì, 10.2

shì . . . de, 4.4

shòu, used in the passive, 21.6

sūirán . . . dànshi, 8.12

telephone numbers, 16.1

tiān, 8.5

time,

telling the, 3.10

when, 3.8, 12

how long, 10.12, 12

titles, 15.2

tóng, 21.7

topic construction, 2.5, 7.11

trains, 19

verb

plus *chéng*, 20.2

plus object, 3.9

plus object *de*, v-o, 10.8

reduplication of, 5.3

verbal suffix

guo, 9.2

zhe, 10.11

voice, 8.10

work unit, 8

wúlùn . . . dōu, 20.6

xiān V₁, zài V₂, 18.4

xiàng, 21.4

xiǎo, 5.10

with ages, 7.6

yāo, one, 19

yě, 7.3

yě . . . yě, 21.10

yī + measure word, 7.7

yī + noun, 7.14

yī . . . jiù, 10.7

yǐ, 17.3

yibiān . . . , yibiān . . ., 21.1

yīhòu, position of, 8.4

yīn and *yáng*, 21.9

yīqián,

comparison with *cóngqián*, 9.5

position of, 8.4

yíxià, 2.2

yìxiē, 8.6

yòu, 19.4

yǒu yídiǎn plus adj., 7.12

yòu . . . yòu . . ., 5.11

yǒude, 8.7

yuè lái yuè . . ., 9.6

zánmen, compared with *wǒmen*,
21.12

zěnmē, 11.3

zěnmeyàng, 11.3

zhe, verbal suffix, 10.11

zhě, as nominalizer, 22.3

zhè zhǒng, compared with *zhè yàng*
de, 11.11

zodiac, the Chinese, 22

teach
yourself

beginner's chinese script

elizabeth scurfield & song lianyi

- Are you interested in the Chinese script?
- Are you planning a business trip or holiday?
- Do you want to understand simple signs and notices in China?

Beginner's Chinese Script will help you get to grips with reading and writing simple Chinese, whether you are studying the language or planning a trip for business or pleasure. The step-by-step approach will build your confidence to read and write mainly simplified characters in a variety of real contexts.

teach
yourself

world cultures: china

kenneth wilkinson

- Are you interested in the story of China and the Chinese?
- Do you want to understand how the country works today?
- Are you planning a visit to China or learning Chinese?

World Cultures: China will give you a basic overview of China – the country, its language, its people and its culture – and will enrich any visit or course of study. Vocabulary lists and ‘Taking it Further’ sections at the end of every unit will equip you to talk and write confidently about all aspects of Chinese life.

teach
yourself

mandarin chinese conversation

elizabeth scurfield & song lianyi

- Do you want to talk with confidence?
- Are you looking for basic conversation skills?
- Do you want to understand what people say to you?

Mandarin Chinese Conversation is a 3-hour, all-audio course to use at any time, whether you want a quick refresher before a trip or you are a complete beginner. The 20 dialogues on CDs 1 and 2 will teach you the Chinese you will need to speak and understand, without getting bogged down with grammar. CD 3, uniquely, teaches skills for listening and understanding. The perfect accompaniment to **Beginner's Chinese** and **Chinese** in the **teach yourself** range.